Tues. 6 ...
Wed. 11 ...
Thur. 6 ...
Fri. 1 ...
Sat. 9 ...
... 6 ...
Mon. 4 ...

Mamie E. Ticknor.

Jan. 1894.

High School.

Helena. Mont.

life = vita, *[illegible]*
amm*[illegible]*

diar = ch*[illegible]*, d*[illegible]*

[illegible] = *[illegible]*
last *[illegible]* proxim*[illegible]*.
[illegible]
[illegible]

FIRST LESSONS IN LATIN:

ADAPTED TO THE

LATIN GRAMMARS

OF
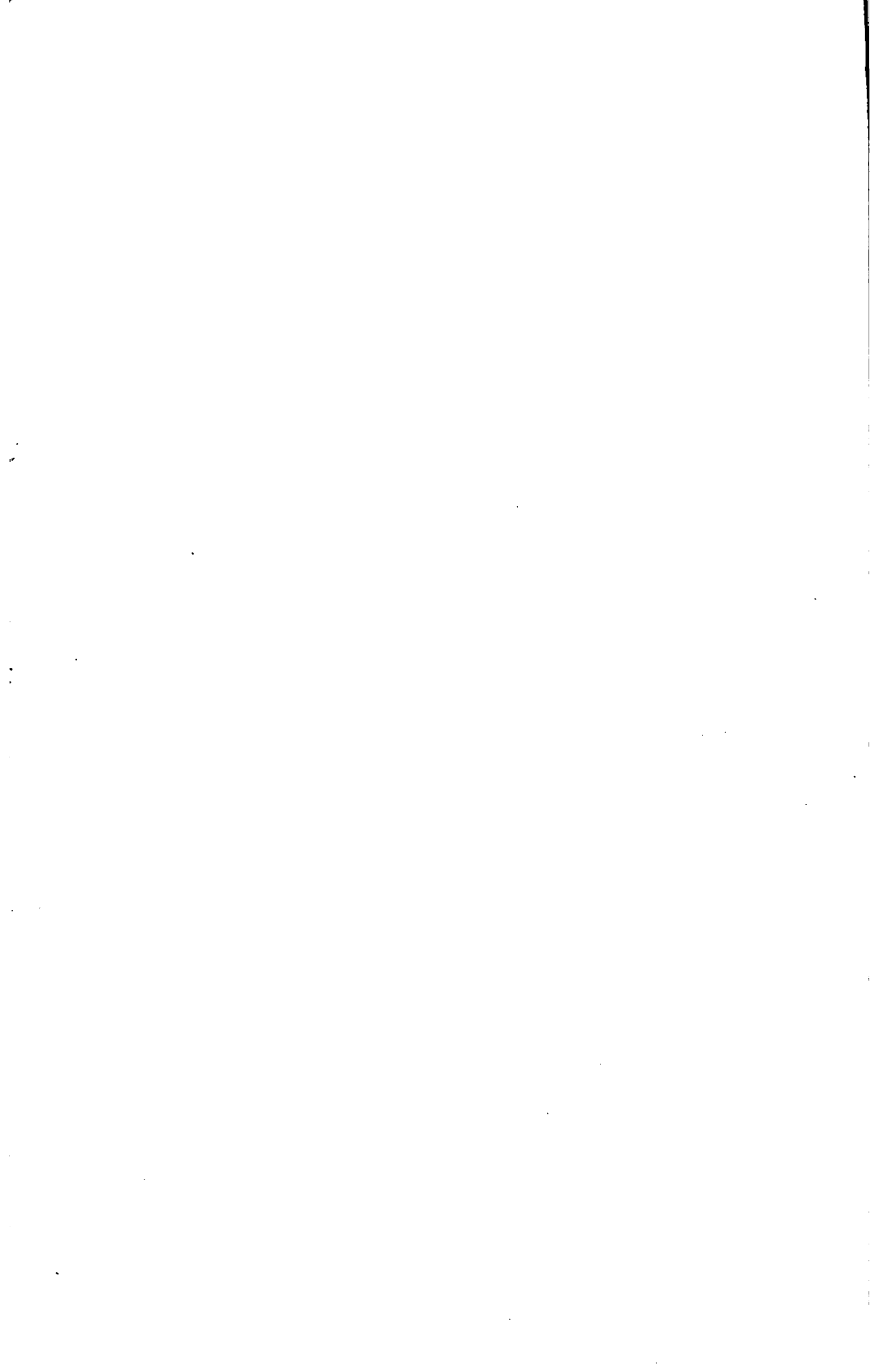
ALLEN AND GREENOUGH, ANDREWS AND STODDARD, BARTHOLOMEW,
BULLIONS AND MORRIS, CHASE AND STUART,
GILDERSLEEVE, AND HARKNESS,

AND PREPARED AS AN

INTRODUCTION TO CÆSAR'S COMMENTARIES ON THE GALLIC WAR.

BY

ELISHA JONES, M. A.,

AUTHOR OF "EXERCISES IN LATIN PROSE COMPOSITION" AND " EXERCISES IN
GREEK PROSE COMPOSITION."

CHICAGO:

S. C. GRIGGS AND COMPANY.

1892

PREFACE.

———◦◦◦———

THESE Lessons are intended as a practical drill-book for the beginner in Latin. They aim to make him familiar with the ordinary Latin inflections and the simpler principles of Latin syntax; to teach him as many words and expressions from Cæsar's Commentaries as he can learn with profit, and thus prepare him for the successful study of that work.

References are made to seven of our best Latin grammars, with any one of which the book may be used. In the part devoted to inflection, the learner's attention is directed, as far as thought practicable, to the elements of words declined and conjugated, — to stems, endings, signs, and connecting vowels. The root and formation of stems are not referred to; these subjects belong more properly to a later stage of the study. In syntax, the principal rules only are introduced, and these are illustrated by numerous examples. Of the latter, translations are given which the learner may imitate in rendering the parallel exercises that follow; these exercises are taken chiefly from the Commentaries and accompanied by explanatory notes. English exercises to be turned into Latin are also added; these are so formed that the Latin sentences immediately preceding furnish models for their construction:

A few pages of fables and selections from early Roman his-
tory, together with the necessary annotations, follow the lessons.
Complete vocabularies are added; in the Latin-English part,
such derivations of Latin words as can be most readily under-
stood are given, and also some English derivatives. Of these
others will suggest themselves. With neither, however, should
the mind of the beginner be much burdened. Their main use
at this time is to aid him in fixing the meanings of words.
*The chief work of the first year in Latin is to master the inflec-
tions and build up a vocabulary.*

The order of the grammars has not been followed. The verb
is introduced early and made to alternate with the declensions,
so as to give greater variety to the character of the sentences.
No effort has been made to adapt the length of the lessons to
the capacity of all classes; such an attempt would be futile.
It will often be found necessary to devote two or more recita-
tions to a single lesson. Some teachers may think it expedient
to omit a few sentences from many of the exercises. To in-
sure a good preparation for Cæsar, however, nothing should be
omitted. It is believed that for classes in general the book con-
tains matter sufficient for a year's labor.

The use of blackboards sufficiently extensive for an entire
class cannot be too urgently recommended. The practice of
requiring inflections and translations to be written *every day*
upon the blackboard, and subjected to the criticism of the class,
is most excellent. It not only adds great interest to the recita-
tion, but also secures an accuracy and readiness which cannot be
as easily attained, perhaps, by any other means.

The plan of the book was formed for the most part during a
seven years' experience with beginners. It does not seem to me

necessary to give a list of the introductory books, grammars, editions of Cæsar, and lexicons — American, English, and German — which have been consulted in its preparation. Some things which appear to be common property have been adopted without credit. I may here express my sincere thanks to kind friends for encouragement and practical suggestions; to the University Press of Cambridge for great patience and pains in securing typographical excellence; and especially to my publishers, Messrs. S. C. Griggs & Co. of Chicago, for sparing no expense to produce a school-book unsurpassed in mechanical execution.

These Lessons are offered to the public with much hesitation, but with the hope that they may prove serviceable to some teachers and beginners.

ELISHA JONES.

UNIVERSITY OF MICHIGAN, August, 1877.

CONTENTS.

TABLE showing the Changes made in Moods and Tenses when Direct Discourse becomes Indirect.

I. Moods.

1. Principal Clauses : Statements.

DIRECT DISCOURSE.		INDIRECT DISCOURSE.
Indicative	becomes	*Infinitive.*
Active Subjunctive in the apodosis of a conditional sentence	becomes	{ *Future Active Participle* with esse or fuisse.
Passive Subjunctive in the apodosis of a conditional sentence	becomes	{ fore, or futûrum esse or fuisse, with ut and the *subjunctive.*

2. Principal Clauses : Questions.

Indicative, 1st or 3d person, .	becomes	*Infinitive.*
Indicative, 2d person, . . .	becomes	*Subjunctive.*
Subjunctive	remains	*Subjunctive.*

3. Principal Clauses : Commands or Prohibitions.

Imperative	becomes	*Subjunctive.*
Subjunctive.	remains	*Subjunctive.*

4. Subordinate Clauses of All Kinds.

Indicative	becomes	*Subjunctive.*
Subjunctive.	remains	*Subjunctive.*

II. Tenses.

1. When an Indicative or a Subjunctive of Direct Discourse passes into a Subjunctive of Indirect Discourse.

Present } *Future* } . .	become	{ *Present,* often *Imperfect,* when made dependent upon a Principal Tense ; *Imperfect,* sometimes *Present,* when made dependent upon an Historical Tense.
Perfect } *Future-Perfect* }	become	{ *Perfect,* often *Pluperfect,* when made dependent upon a Principal Tense ; *Pluperfect,* sometimes *Perfect,* after an Historical Tense.
Imperfect	remains	*Imperfect.*
Pluperfect	remains	*Pluperfect.*

2. When an Indicative of Direct Discourse passes into an Infinitive of Indirect Discourse.

Present	remains	*Present.*
Future or *Future-Perfect* . .	becomes	*Future Participle* with esse.
Perfect } *Imperfect* } *Pluperfect* }	become	*Perfect.*

ABBREVIATIONS.

A. & G., Allen and Greenough's Latin Grammar, revised edition.
A. & S., Andrews and Stoddard's Latin Grammar, revised edition.
abl., ablative.
acc., accusative.
act., active.
adj., adjective.
B., Bartholomew's Latin Grammar.
B. & M., Bullions and Morris's Latin Grammar.
C., Chase's Latin Grammar.
cf., *confer*, compare.
comp., comparative.
conj., conjunction.
dat., dative.
dem., demonstrative.
dep., deponent.
Ex., Example.
f., feminine.
fr., from.
G., Gildersleeve's Latin Grammar.
gen., genitive.
H., Harkness's Latin Grammar, revised edition of 1881.
ind., indicative.

indecl., indeclinable.
indef., indefinite.
interrog., interrogative.
lit., literal, literally.
Ln., Lesson.
m., masculine.
n., neuter.
num., numeral.
part., participle.
pass., passive.
perf., perfect.
pers., person.
pl., plural.
poss., possessive.
prep., preposition.
pres., present.
pron., pronoun.
Ref., Reference.
rel., relative.
sc., *scilicet*, understand.
sing., singular.
subst., substantive.
voc., vocative.
Vy., Vocabulary.
w., with.

N. B.— The different sections of this book are marked by italicized numerals. The numerals in the notes printed thus (*4*) refer to such sections.

References to the revised edition of Allen and Greenough's Latin Grammar are now given in the body of the book.

The references to the Grammars of Harkness, Gildersleeve, Allen and Greenough, and Andrews and Stoddard, have been adapted to the latest editions, and references to Chase and Stuart's Latin Grammar have been added.

April 20, 1889.

INTRODUCTORY PRINCIPLES AND DEFINITIONS.

THE following numerals and letters refer to such portions of the grammar as are to be committed to memory. When two are joined by a dash the intermediate sections or paragraphs are also included: e. g. 2 – 4 or *a* – *c* signifies that the parts designated by 2, 3, and 4, or by *a*, *b*, and *c* are to be committed to memory. Only the coarse print is to be learned unless a special reference is made to the fine.

1. Alphabet. A. & G. **1**, *a;* **2; 3:** A. & S. **3–7; 9–12:** B. **3–10**, *w. fine print under* **6** *and* **7:** B. & M. *8; 5; 6; 7:* G. **1; 2; 6:** H. **2–4**, *w. fine print under* **3** *and* **4:** C. **1, 2.**

2. Pronunciation and Syllables. (*a*) *Roman Method.* A. & G. **14**, *a–d;* **16:** A. & S. **15–22:** B. **11–15; 16–21:** G. **3; 4; 7; 8; 9:** H. **5–8:** C. **3,** I. ; **4; 5.**

(*b*) *English Method.* A. & G. **17**, *a–c, and* NOTE: B. **377**, *the whole:* B. & M. *11; 12; 13,* 1–6 : H. **9–14**, *w. fine print:* C. **3,** II. ; **5.**

(*c*) *Continental Method.* B. & M. *14,* 1–5 ; **13**, 1–6: H. **15:** C. **3,** III. ; **5.**

3. Quantity. A. & G. **18**, *a–f;* **5**, *fine print:* A. & S. **26–29; 37** NOTE 1 : **38–44:** B. **12**, *a–c:* B. & M. *8; 16–19:* G. **2,** 2 ; **10–13,** REMARK 1: H. **16**, I.–III., *and* NOTES 2–4 : C. **7; 8.**

4. Accent. A. & G. **19**, *a–c, w. Def. :* A. & S. **25** NOTE 1 ; **30–35:** B. **22–25:** B. & M. *20, w. fine print:* G. **14:** H. **17; 18:** C. **9; 11.**

5. Parts of Speech and Inflection. A. & G. **20 ; 21 ; 25**, *a–i;* **26 ; 27:** A. & S. **54 ; 55; 73; 74:** B. **26–33; 34–40 ; 115:** B. & M. *24; 25,* 1, 2 ; *26,* 1, 2, *Obs.* 1–2 ; *27–30:* G. **15 –17,** *the whole:* H. **37–40:** C. **12.**

6. Gender. A. & G. **28**, *a, b ;* **29 ; 30:** A. & S. **78–83:** B. **116–118,** I.–III. : B. & M. *32–35:* G. **18 ; 19,** I.–III. ; **20**, 1–3 : H. **41; 42,** I., II. : C. **13.**

7. Person, Number, and Case. A. & G. 31, *a–g*, NOTE, *h:*
A. & S. 85–88, *a:* B. 119–120, *w. fine print:* B. & M. *81, 42,* 4.
Case; *43, w. fine print:* G. 21–24: H. 44; 45, *w. fine print:* C. 14.

8. Declension. A. & G. 32, *a, b;* 33, *a–g:* A. & S. 89; 90,
b: B. 121; 122, REM. 1–5; 123: B. & M. *44–46, w. fine print;*
47; 50, Dec. I.: G. *25–26, the whole:* H. *46, w. fine print; 47,*
with NOTE 3 : C. 15; 17.

Note.

The division of the above introductory matter into suitable lessons is left
to the teacher. He may find it necessary at first to go over each lesson in
advance with the class and point out the portions designated. The follow-
ing suggestion is offered. Each definition should be made practical by
application. E. g., as soon as the learner has committed to memory the
portions of grammar referred to under "*1. Alphabet,*" he should turn to
"LESSON I." and classify the letters of the Latin words there found. After
learning "*2,*" he should pronounce the same letters in accordance with the
rules under "*2,*" and divide the words which they form into syllables.
Learn thoroughly; review often; use the blackboard.

FIRST LESSONS IN LATIN.

LESSON I.

NOUNS: FIRST DECLENSION.

9. Learn the *declension* of the model noun, the *stem* and *case-endings*, the *meaning* of each case, and the *rule of gender* for nouns of the First Declension. A. & G. Note, **35** ; **36**, *c :* A. & S. **91–93:** B. **121** ; **123** ; **124** : B. & M. *46* ; *48, First* ; *51* ; *53 :* G. **24** ; **27,** Remark 2 ; **28** : H. **46**, 1 ; **48**, 1, 2, 4 : C. **19** ; **18**, I.

10. The learner should make the words of the Vocabularies so familiar that when the Latin is pronounced, he can give promptly the English equivalent, or when the English is pronounced, he can give promptly the Latin equivalent. Not only the Nominative, but also the *Genitive* and *Gender* of each Latin noun should always be learned.

VOCABULARY.

causă, ae,[1] f.[2]	*cause, reason.*
Gĕnāvă, ae, f.	*Geneva.*[8]
glōriă, ae, f.	*glory.*
linguă, ae, f.	*tongue, language.*
mĕmŏriă, ae, f.	*memory.*
rīpă, ae, f.	*bank* (of a stream).
viă, ae, f.	*way, road.*

[1] **ae** is the case-ending of the Genitive. To form the Genitive of **causă,** substitute **ae** for final **ă**: e. g. Nom. causă, Gen. causae.

[2] In the Vocabularies, f. stands for *feminine gender,* m. for *masculine,* and n. for *neuter.*

[8] For a fuller description of Proper Names given in the special Vocabularies, see Vocabulary at end of the book.

N. B.   Careful attention should be given to the pronunciation of each syllable; the rules for *quantity* and *accent* will need to be called to mind very often.   Remember that *the final syllable of a Latin word is never accented.*

Pronounce; translate; decline and describe[1] each word.

1. Causă.[2]   2. Glōriārŭm.[3]   3. Rīpae.   4. Linguā.[4]
5. Mĕmŏriā.[5]   6. Linguās.   7. Viā.   8. Rīpās.   9. Mĕmŏriae.   10. Glōriae.   11. Causās.   12. Viăm.   13. Mĕmŏriās.   14. Viă.   15. Glōriăm.   16. Linguārŭm.   17. Causīs.   18. Rīpā.   19. Gĕnāvae.[6]

Write in Latin.

1. Of a[2] cause.   2. Of the causes.   3. With glory.
4. For glory.   5. With tongues.   6. In the language.
7. O Memory.   8. In memory.   9. Of the banks.   10. By the way.

Notes and Questions.

[1] To describe a noun is to tell its case, number, and gender, its stem and case-ending (termination).

[2] The Latin language has no article.   In translating Latin nouns into English, *a, an,* or *the* may be supplied according to the sense.   E. g. **causă** may be rendered *a cause, the cause,* or simply *cause.*

[3] Which syllable of **glōriārŭm** is accented ?   Why ?   (4) — *Numerals printed thus (4) refer to sections of this book.*

[4] What is the quantity of the penult of **linguă** ?   Why ?   (3)

[5] The Ablative may often be rendered by the preposition *in* and the noun : e. g. **mĕmŏriā,** *in memory;* **linguā,** *in the language.*

[6] Locative Case; translate by the preposition *at* or *in* and the noun : e. g. **Rōmae,** *at Rome,* or *in Rome.*

———oo○○○oo———

LESSON II.

NOUNS : FIRST DECLENSION. — PREPOSITIONS.

11. Declension of deă ***and*** fīliă.   A. & G. **36,** *e* : A. & S. **93** *e :* B. **124,** REM 1 : B. & M. **57 :** G. **27,** REMARK 3 : H. **49,** 4 : C. **19,** 6.

12. Use of Prepositions. A. & G. **260**: A. & S. **428**: B. **329**, RULE LXXX.; B. & M. **981**: G. **417**: H. **432**: C. **131**.

VOCABULARY.

ăd, prep. w. acc.[1]	*to.*
angustiae,[2] **ārum, f.**	*narrow pass.*
circŭm, prep. w. acc.	*around.*
deă, ae, f.	*goddess.*
fīliă, ae, f.	*daughter.*
Mātrŏnă, ae, m.	*the Marne.*
pĕr, prep. w. acc.	*through.*
prōvinciă, ae, f.	*province.*
silvă, ae, f.	*forest.*
trans, prep. w. acc.	*across.*

[1] "prep. w. acc." signifies that **ăd** is a preposition used with the Accusative.

[2] **angustiae** is rarely used in the singular. Notice that it is equivalent to two English words, *narrow*, an adjective, and *pass*, a noun.

Pronounce; translate; decline and describe each noun.

1. Ad rīpăm.[1] 2. Ad rīpăm Matrŏnae.[2] ·3. Trans Matrŏnăm. 4. Deă.[3] 5. Deae. 6. Deārŭm. 7. Deābŭs. 8. Trans viăm. 9. Pĕr angustiās.[4] 10. Pĕr silvās. 11. Pĕr prōvinciăm. 12. Cĭrcŭm Gĕnāvăm. 13. Silvārŭm. 14. In silvīs.[5] 15. Ad fīliās deārŭm.

Write in Latin.

1. The daughter. 2. A daughter. 3. O daughter. 4. To the daughter of a goddess. 5. To[6] the Marne. 6. To[6] the banks of the Marne. 7. For the daughters. 8. Through the provinces. 9. Through the forest. 10. In[5] the forest. 11. In[7] the memory of the daughters.

Notes and Questions.

[1] When a noun is governed by a preposition, give the rule referred to under **12.**

² Give the rule for gender of **Matrŏnī**. (*6*)

⁸ See LN. I., NOTE 2.

⁴ What is the quantity of the penult of **angustias?** Why? (*3*) Which syllable then has the accent? (*4*)

⁵ See LN. V., *19* and VY. Which cases of the First Declension are alike in the singular? Which in the plural? What is the difference between **silvă** and **silvā?** In Latin the prep. **in** usually precedes the place *where.*

⁶ Translate by the proper preposition.

⁷ See LN. I., NOTE 5.

————∘⊙∶⊙∶∘⊙∘———

LESSON III.

NOUNS: SECOND DECLENSION.

13. *Nouns in* ŭs. A. & G. **38,** servŭs ; **40,** *a:* A. & S. **95,** dŏmĭnŭs; **97** (3): B. **126; 127,** dŏmĭnŭs, REM. 4 : B. & M. *59; 61,* dŏmĭnŭs : G. **29,** hortŭs, REMARK 4 : H. **51,** servŭs, 1, 2, 1)–3), 8 : C. **21** (dŏmĭnŭs), 1 ; **18,** II.

14. *Gender.* A. & G. **39:** A. & S. **95:** B. **127,** REM. 3 : B. & M. *71:* G. **30:** H. **51:** C. **21; 24.**

VOCABULARY.

antĕ, prep. w. acc.	*before.*
ămīcĭtĭă, ae, f.	*friendship.*
ămīcŭs, ī, m.	*friend.*
carrŭs, ī, m.	*cart, wagon.*
contrā, prep. w. acc.	*against.*
Germānī, ōrŭm, m.	*the Germans.*
lēgātŭs, ī, m.	*legate, lieutenant.*
nŭmĕrŭs, ī, m.	*number.*
ŏcŭlŭs, ī, m.	*eye.*
pŏpŭlŭs, ī, m.	*people.*
Rhēnŭs, ī, m.	*the Rhine.*
Rhŏdănŭs, ī, m.	*the Rhone.*

Pronounce; translate; decline and describe each noun.

1. Pŏpŭlī.¹ 2. Pŏpŭlĕ. 3. Pŏpŭlīs. 4. Amīcĭtĭă pŏpŭlī. 5. Antĕ ŏcŭlōs pŏpŭlī. 6. Nŭmĕrŭs carrōrŭm. 7. Nŭmĕ-

rŭs Germānōrŭm.   8. Nŭmĕrŭs ămīcōrŭm.   9. Nŭmĕrŭs
filiárŭm.   10. Fīliă lēgáti.[2]   11. Ámīcó pŏpŭlī.   12. Contrā
ămīcŭm pŏpŭlī.   13. Contrā lēgátōs pŏpŭlī.   14. Trans
Rhŏdănŭm.   15. Pŏpŭlī[3] ămīcīs.   16. Ad Germānōs.

Write in Latin.

1. Of a friend.   2. To a friend.   3. O friend.   4. Against
a friend.   5. Of friends.   6. The friends of the Germans.
7. Against the friends of the Germans.   8. Before the eyes
of the Germans.   9. Across the Rhine.   10. Before the
lieutenant's[2] eyes.   11. The friendship of the Germans.

Notes and Questions.

[1] What is the stem of **pŏpŭlī** ? What are the case-endings of the Second
Declension ? Which cases are alike in the singular ? Which in the plural ?
Which cases are like the same cases of the First Declension ? What is the
rule of gender for the Second Declension ? (**14**) What is the rule of gender
for the First Declension ! What are the general rules for gender ? (**6**)

[2] The Latin Genitive is often equivalent to the English possessive case :
fīliă lēgáti is best rendered *the lieutenant's daughter.*

[3] The Genitive usually stands after the noun which it limits, but often
before it. In the latter case the Genitive is made emphatic : e. g., **fīliă ămīcī,**
the friend's daughter; but **ămīcī fīliă,** *the* FRIEND's *daughter.*

———○○⟨Ｏ⟩○○———

LESSON IV.

NOUNS : SECOND DECLENSION. — PREPOSITIONS.

15. Nouns in **r** *and* **um.**   A. & G. **38**: A. & S. **95**: B. **127**,
a, b, REM. 1, 2 : B. & M. **60; 61; 63:** G. **29**; **31**: H. **51**, 2, 3)–6),
4, 1) : C. **21**, 1, 2 ; **22.**

16. Prepositions used with the Ablative.   A. & G. **152,** *b:*
A. & S. **430** : B. **178**: B. & M. **470:** G. **418** : H. **434** : C. **186.**

N. B.   The list of prepositions used with the Ablative should be com-
mitted to memory.

VOCABULARY.

ā, ăb,[1] prep. w. abl.	*from, by.*
ăgĕr, ăgrī, m.	*field, territory.*
bĕllŭm, ī, n.	*war.*
cŭm, prep. w. abl.	*with.*
ē, ex,[1] prep. w. abl.	*out of.*
frūmĕntŭm, ī, n.	*corn.*
gĕnĕr, gĕnĕrī, m.	*son-in-law.*
Helvĕtiī, ōrum, m.	*the Helvetii.*
puĕr, puĕrī, m.	*boy.*
regnŭm, ī, n.	*sovereignty, kingdom.*
sĭnĕ, prep. w. abl.	*without.*
tĕmplŭm, ī, n.	*temple.*
vĭr, vĭrī, m.	*man.*

[1] **ā** and **ē** are used only before words beginning with a consonant; **ăb** and **ex** before either a vowel or consonant.

Pronounce; translate; parse[1] the nouns governed by prepositions.

1. Puĕrī,[2] puĕrōrum.   2. Gĕnĕrō, gĕnĕrīs.   3. Agrī Helvĕtiōrŭm.   4. Cŭm vĭrīs.   5. Sĭnĕ vĭrīs.   6. Ex templō.[3]
7. Cŭm Helvĕtiīs.   8. Sĭnĕ regnō.   9. Sĭnĕ frūmĕntō.[4]
10. Bĕllŭm cŭm Germānīs.   11. Ex prōvinciā.   12. Ab Helvĕtiīs.   13. Pĕr agrōs Helvĕtiōrŭm.   14. Ē Rhŏdănō.[5]
15. Cŭm ămīcō Helvĕtiōrŭm.   16. Regnŭm Germānōrŭm.

Write in Latin.

1. Of the war, of the wars.   2. For the war, for the wars.   3. The wars with the Helvetii.   4. By the Germans.
5. Without friendship.   6. With the man's[6] daughters.
7. Without the boys.   8. O boys.   9. Before the war with the Germans.   10. Without wagons.   11. Out of the Rhine.
12. Out of the temples of the Germans.

Notes and Questions.

[1] *Form for parsing a noun.—***cŭm vĭrīs: vĭrīs** a masculine noun of the Second Declension; stem, *vĭro;* declined, *vĭr, vĭrī, vĭrō, vĭrŭm, vĭr, vĭrō;*

plural, *virī, virōrŭm, virīs, virōs, virī, virīs;* it is in the Ablative plural and governed by the preposition **cŭm**; rule (*16*). Repeat the rule giving the list of prepositions used with the Ablative.

² Which endings do nouns in r drop? Ans. The Nominative **ŭs** and the Vocative **ĕ**. To which declension does **pŭĕrī** belong? Why? **prōvinciā?** Why? How many declensions are there and how distinguished from one another? (*8*)

⁸ Notice that the Nominative, Accusative, and Vocative of neuter nouns are alike and end in the plural in **ā**.

⁴ What is the quantity of the penult of **frūmentō?** Why? Which syllable then is accented? (*3* and *4*)

⁵ Which syllable of **Rhŏdănŭs** takes the accent?

⁶ See Ln. III., Note 2.

————∘∘⦂⦿⦂∘∘————

LESSON V.

NOUNS : SECOND DECLENSION. — PREPOSITIONS.

17. Nouns in **iŭs** or **iŭm** generally form the Genitive Singular with one **ī,** while the accent remains unchanged : **Cassī,** *of Cassius;* **fīlī,** *of the son;* **consĭlī,** *of counsel.*

18. *Vocative of* **fīliŭs** *and proper names in* **iŭs.** A. & G. 40, *c:* A. & S. 97 (5): B. **128,** *a:* B. & M. *65:* G. 29, 2: H. **51,** 5: C. **23,** 3.

19. *Use of* **ĭn** *and* **sŭb.** A. & G. **152,** *c:* A. & S. **431** : B. **179** : B. & M. *987; 988:* G. **419** : H. 435, I. : C. **131,** 3.

20. **deŭs** — stem **DEO** — is declined as follows :

	Singular.	Plural.
Nom.	deŭs,	deī, diī, dī.
Gen.	deī,	deōrŭm, deūm.
Dat.	deō,	deīs, diīs, dīs.
Acc.	deŭm,	deōs.
Voc.	deŭs,	deī, diī, dī.
Abl.	deō,	deīs, diīs, dīs.

VOCABULARY.

Cassiŭs, ī, m.	*Cassius.*
castrŭm, ī, n.	*fort;* pl. *camp.*

concĭlĭŭm, ĭ, n.	*council, assembly.*
consĭlĭŭm, ĭ, n.	*counsel, plan.*
deŭs, ĭ, m. (see *20*),	*god.*
ĕquŭs, ĭ, m.	*horse.*
ĕt, conj.	*and.*
fīlĭŭs, ĭ, m.	*son.*
ĭn, prep. w. acc. *or* abl.	*into, in.*
jŭgŭm, ĭ, n.	*yoke.*
Lūcĭŭs, ĭ, m.	*Lucius.*
oppĭdŭm, ĭ, n.	*town.*
sŭb, prep. w. acc. *or* abl.	*under.*

Pronounce; translate; parse the nouns governed by prepositions.

1. Ad deōs ĕt[1] deās.   2. Cŭm deīs ĕt deābŭs.   3. Antĕ ŏcŭlōs deōrŭm ĕt deārŭm.   4. In[2] oppĭdō.   5. In[2] oppĭdŭm. 6. In castră[3] Germānōrŭm.   7. Consĭlĭō[4] deōrŭm.   8. Sĭnĕ consĭlĭīs.   9. In concĭlĭō Helvētĭōrŭm.   10. Sŭb jŭgŭm. 11. Cŭm ĕquīs ĕt carrīs.   12. Cŭm ĕquīs ĕt carrīs Lūcī. 13. Fīlĭŭs Lūcī Cassī.   14. Fīlī[5] Lūcī Cassī.   15. Pĕr oppĭdă Germānōrŭm.[6]   16. Germānōrŭm[6] oppĭdă.   17. Trans Rhēnŭm ĕt Rhŏdănŭm.   18. Gĕnĕr Lūcī.   19. Cassī.[5]

Write in Latin.

1. To sons and daughters.   2. With sons and daughters. 3. Before the eyes of sons and daughters.   4. Into[2] the towns of the Germans.   5. In[2] the Germans' camp.[3]   6. Into the council of the Germans.   7. By the plans of the gods.   8. O son[5] of Cassius.   9. O Cassius.[5]   10. Under the yoke.

Notes and Questions.

[1] ĕt is a conjunction; conjunctions connect words and clauses in Latin as in English. ĕt connects similar constructions; hence deās is governed the same as deōs by ăd.

[2] Observe carefully the difference in meaning between ĭn used with the Accusative and ĭn used with the Ablative.

[3] Observe that castrŭm means in the Singular *a fort*, but in the Plural *a camp* (military camp); a Roman camp was surrounded by a trench and a rampart.

⁴ See *17.*

⁵ See *18* and A. & G. **241:** A. & S. **402:** B. **210**, RULE VI.: B. & M. *974:* G. **194**, REM. 3: H. **369:** C. **120**, 2.

⁶ What is the difference between **oppĭdă Germānōrŭm** and **Germānōrŭm oppĭdă?** LN. III., NOTE 3.

————⚬⟐⟐⚬⟐⚬————

LESSON VI.

ADJECTIVES: FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS.

21. *Learn the declension of* **bŏnŭs** (**cārŭs**). A. & G. **81:** A. & S. **143:** B. **154; 155**, 1: B. & M. *189; 190*, 1: G. **15**, I., 2; **33:** H. **146–148:** C **39**.

22. *Agreement of Adjectives.* A. & G. **186:** A. & S. **332:** B. **266**, RULE LI.: B. & M. *650:* G. **285:** H. **438:** C. **113**, 1.

VOCABULARY.

bŏnŭs, ă,¹ ŭm,¹	*good.*
cārŭs, ă, ŭm,	*dear, beloved.*
exemplŭm, ī, n.	*example.*
lăcrĭmă, ae, f.	*tear.*
magnŭs, ă, ŭm,	*great, big, large.*
mălŭs, ă, ŭm,	*bad.*
multŭs, ă, ŭm,	*much;* pl. *many.*
parvŭs, ă, ŭm,	*small.*
rĕlĭquŭs, ă, ŭm,	*remaining.*
Rōmānŭs, ă, ŭm,	*Roman.*

¹ **ă** and **ŭm** are the feminine and neuter endings: recite as if it were printed **bŏnŭs, bŏnă, bŏnŭm.**

Pronounce; translate; parse the adjectives.¹

1. Vĭr bŏnŭs,¹ fīlĭă bŏnă,² exemplŭm bŏnŭm. 2. Vĭrī mălī, fīliae³ mălae, exemplă mălă. 3. Cŭm fīlĭā cārā. 4. Cŭm fīliīs⁴ cārīs. 5. Glōrĭă magnă Lūcī Cassī.⁴ 6. Exemplō pŏpŭlī Rōmānī. 7. Multīs cŭm lacrĭmīs. 8. Puĕrī

multī ĕt parvī.⁵   9. Oppĭdă multă ĕt magnă.   10. Pĕr mul-
tōs agrōs.   11. In rĕlĭquă oppĭdă.   12. Amīcŭs pŏpŭlī
Rōmānī.   13. Cŭm amīcīs pŏpŭlī Rōmānī.   14. In prōvin-
ciăm magnăm.   15. Carrī multī ĕt parvī.   16. In templīs
magnīs Germānōrŭm.

Write in Latin.

1. Through small⁶ fields.   2. Through small towns.
3. Through a small province.   4. Through the remaining
towns.   5. The friendship of the Roman⁷ people.   6. Many
good boys.⁵   7. Many beloved daughters.   8. Many bad
men.   9. In a large temple.   10. With many friends.

Notes and Questions.

¹ *Form for parsing an adjective.* — **vĭr bŏnŭs** : **bŏnŭs** is an adjective of
the First and Second Declensions ; Stems, BŎNO and BŎNA ; declined, *bŏ-
nŭs, bŏnă, bŏnŭm ; bŏnī, bŏnae, bŏnī ; bŏnō, bŏnae, bŏnō ; bŏnŭm, bŏnăm,
bŏnŭm ; bŏnĕ, bŏnă, bŏnŭm ; bŏnō, bŏnā, bŏnō ;* Plural, *bŏnī, bŏnae, bŏnă ;
bŏnōrŭm, bŏnārŭm, bŏnōrŭm ; bŏnīs, bŏnīs, bŏnīs ; bŏnōs, bŏnās, bŏnă ;
bŏnī, bŏnae, bŏnă ; bŏnīs, bŏnīs, bŏnīs ;* it is in the Nominative Singular
Masculine to agree with its noun **vĭr** ; rule (*22*).   Repeat the rule.

² The adjective like the Genitive follows its noun unless emphatic.

³ What irregularity in declension have **deă** and **fīliă** ?

⁴ What irregularities in declension have **fīliŭs** and **Cassiŭs** ? (*17* and *18*)

⁵ The Romans wrote **multī ĕt parvī**, *many* AND *small;* the English write
many small, without the conjunction.

⁶ Notice that the adjective has the same number, gender, and case as its
noun (see *22*).

⁷ In the Latin expression equivalent to *Roman people,* the adjective
always follows its noun.

---oo⦂o⦂oo---

LESSON VII.

ADJECTIVES : FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS (*continued*).

23. A. & G. 82 : A. & S. **143** : B. **155**, 2, 3 : B. & M. *190*, 2, 3 :
G. 34 : H. 149, 150 : C. 39.

24. *Genitive in* īus *and Dative in* ī.　A. & G. 83, a: A. & S. 145 ; 146 : B. 155, 4, REM. 1 : B. & M. *191:* G. 35, REMARK : H. 155, 1 : C. 41.

The list of adjectives having their Genitive in ius and Dative in i should be committed to memory.

VOCABULARY.

aegĕr, aegră, aegrŭm,	*sick.*
ălĭŭs, ălĭă, ălĭŭd,	*other, another.*
lībĕr, lībĕră, lībĕrŭm,	*free.*
mĭsĕr, mĭsĕră, mĭsĕrŭm,	*wretched.*
nullŭs, ă, ŭm,	*none, no.*
pulchĕr, pulchră, pulchrŭm,	*beautiful.*
sōlŭs, ă, ŭm,	*alone.*
tĕnĕr, tĕnĕră, tĕnĕrŭm,	*tender, delicate.*
tōtŭs, ă, ŭm,	*whole, entire.*
ullŭs, ă, ŭm,	*any.*
ūnŭs, ă, ŭm,	*one.*

Pronounce ; translate ; parse the adjectives.

1. Cŭm fīliīs tĕnĕrīs.　2. Ad vĭrōs aegrōs.[1]　3. Ad ălĭōs vĭrōs aegrōs.　4. Pĕr agrōs pulchrōs.　5. Ab Helvētĭīs lībĕrīs. 6. Contrā lēgātŭm mĭsĕrŭm.　7. Fīliae multae ĕt pulchrae.[2] 8. Fīliārŭm pulchrārŭm.　9. Fīliīs ĕt fīliābŭs pulchrīs. 10. Vĭrī multī ĕt mĭsĕrī.　11. Tōtīs castrīs.[3]　12. Pĕr Helvētĭōs sōlōs.　13. Unā pĕr Helvētĭōs viă.　14. Alĭă[4] viă nullă.　15. Ullā sĭnĕ causā.　16. Aliī ămīcō.　17. Aliī ămīcī.　18. Alius ămīcī.　19. Unŭs ē fīliīs[5] Cassī.　20. In[6] ălĭŭd[7] oppĭdŭm.

Notes and Questions.

[1] How does fīliŭs Cassī differ from Cassī fīliŭs ? (LN. III., NOTE 3). How does ad vĭrōs aegros differ from ăd aegros vĭros ? (LN. VI., NOTE 2).

[2] See LN. VI., NOTE 5.　　　　　[3] See LN. I., NOTE 5.

[4] What is the Nominative Neuter Singular of ălĭŭs ?　The Genitive Singular ?　The Dative Singular ?

[5] Translate ūnŭs ē fīliĭs as if it read ūnŭs fīliōrŭm.

[6] How is ĭn to be rendered when used with the Ablative ?

[7] What adjectives have their Genitive in īŭs and Dative in ī ?

LESSON VIII.

ADDITIONAL EXERCISES. — APPOSITION.

25. Appositives. A. & G. 183 : A. & S. 324 : B. 265, RULE L. :
B. & M. *622 ;* G. 318 ; 319 ; H. 359, NOTE 2 ; 363 : C. 112.

EXAMPLES.

1. ăd oppĭdŭm Gĕnăvăm (appositive), *to the town of Geneva.*
2. Tĭtŭs Lăbĭēnŭs lēgātŭs (appositive), *Titus Labienus the lieutenant.*

VOCABULARY.

aedĭfĭcĭŭm, ĭ, n.	*building, edifice.*
armă,[1] ōrŭm, n.	*arms, weapons.*
Belgae, ārŭm, m.	*the Belgae.*
cōpĭă, ae, f.	*plenty ; pl. troops.*
Gallĭă, ae, f.	*Gaul.*
Lăbĭēnŭs, ĭ, m.	*Labienus.*
lŏcŭs,[2] ĭ, m.	*place.*
mātūrŭs, a, um,	*ripe.*
pĕrīcŭlŭm, ĭ, n.	*danger.*
prīvātŭs, a, um,	*private.*
Sēquănī, ōrŭm, m.	*the Sequani.*
Tĭtŭs, ĭ, m.	*Titus.*
victōrĭă, ae, f.	*victory.*

[1] armă, like the English *arms*, is used only in the plural.

[2] lŏcŭs is both masculine and neuter in the plural and is declined in that number as follows : Nom., *lŏcī* and *lŏcă ;* Gen., *lŏcōrŭm ;* Dat., *lŏcīs ;* Acc., *lŏcōs* and *lŏcă ;* Voc., *lŏcī* and *lŏcă ;* Abl., *lŏcīs.*

Pronounce; translate; parse the nouns which are in apposition or governed by prepositions, and the adjectives.

1. Ad Tĭtŭm[1] Lăbĭēnŭm lēgātŭm.[7] 2. Cŭm fīlĭābŭs[2] pulchrīs Tĭtī Lăbĭēnī lēgātī. 3. Pĕr agrōs magnōs Tĭtī Lăbĭēnī lēgātī. 4. Ex oppĭdō Gĕnāvā.[8] 5. In oppĭdŭm Gĕnāvăm. 6. Magnō cŭm pĕrīcŭlō. 7. Rĕlĭquă prīvātă aedĭfĭcĭă. 8. Frūmentŭm mātūrŭm ĭn agrīs. 9. Cōpĭă frūmentī mātūrī

in agrīs. 10. In Galliăm, in Galliā. 11. Ex⁴ Galliā, ā⁴ Galliā. 12. Victoriă magnă Sēquănōrŭm. 13. Cŭm cōpiīs Belgārŭm. 14. Trans Rhŏdănŭm⁵ ĭn Galliăm. 15. Pĕr multă lŏcă. ˙ 16. Pĕrīcŭlŭm deōrŭm ĕt deārŭm. 17. Nullă victōriă sĭnĕ armīs.

<div align="center">**Write in Latin.**</div>

1. Through the entire town. 2. Through the entire town of Geneva.³ ˙ 3. Into the province of Gaul. 4. With the troops of Titus Labienus the lieutenant. 5. The remaining private wagons. 6. Into no place. 7. In one place. 8. With many dangers. 9. With many sons and daughters. 10. The Sequani alone.

<div align="center">**Notes and Questions.**</div>

¹ What are the general rules for gender? (*6*) What is the gender of nouns of the First Declension ? (*9*) Of the Second Declension ? (*14*)

² What irregular case-endings have deă and fīliă ? (*11*)

³ See *25* and EXAMPLE 1.

⁴ ĕ, ex signifies *out of, from*, in the sense of *from within* a place ; ă, ăb, *from*, in the sense of *from near* a place.

⁵ Which syllable of Rhŏdănŭs takes the accent ? Why? (*4*) Which of Sēquănī ?

⁶ With which cases are prepositions used in Latin ? Which prepositions are used only with the Ablative ? Which with both the Ablative and Accusative ? When are ĭn and sŭb used with the Ablative ? When with the Accusative ? (*16, 19*)

⁷ See A. & G. **184.**

<div align="center">——•o⁘o•——</div>

<div align="center">

LESSON IX.

VERBS : PRELIMINARY DEFINITIONS.

</div>

26. Learn the following definitions when they are given in the grammar : Use of the Verb ; Transitive and Intransitive Verbs ; Active Voice ; Use of the Indicative Mood ; Use of the Present Tense ; Person and Number ; Conjugation.

A. & G. 108, *a–d;* 111; 121; 122, *a;* 264; 276.

A. & S. 190–193; 198 (1); 201; 208; 217, *a, b;* 461.

B. 26; 41, *b:* 43; 44; 57; 63; 68; 292, RULE LVI.

B. & M. *258; 259,* 1–3; *262; 266; 270; 271; 272; 1079; 1080.*

G. 15, III.; 109; 204; 245; 246; 218; 116; 117.

H. 192; 193; 194; 195, I.; 474; 466; 199; 201.

C. 64; 188; 66, 1, or 189.

—•◦○◦•—

LESSON X.

VERBS : FIRST CONJUGATION.

27. *Personal Endings of the Active Voice and Stem.*
A. & G. 21; 116, SING., PLUR. : A. & S. 55; 209; 213 (1) : B.
64, *a;* 69: B. & M. *333,* ACTIVE VOICE; *274:* G. 111: H. 247,
PERSON., ACT., MEANING ; 250 : C. pp. 102, 104.

28. *The Present Stem*[1] is found in the Present Infinitive Active by dropping the ending rĕ in the First, Second, and Fourth Conjugations, and ĕrĕ in the Third : e. g. PUTĀrĕ is a Present Infinitive Active and PUTA its Present Stem ; so DIC from DĪCĕrĕ.

29. Learn the *conjugation*[2] and *meanings* of the Present Indicative Active of ămŏ. A. & G. 128: A. & S. 222: B. 74: B. & M. *282:* G. 119: H. 205; 247, 1 : C. 74.

30. Observe that the Present Indicative Active of the First Conjugation is conjugated by annexing the Personal Endings (**27**) to the Present Stem (**28**); also that the *first person singular* takes the termination ŏ, which absorbs the final stem-vowel **a.**

VOCABULARY.

ămŏ, ămārĕ,	*love.*[3]
convŏcŏ, convŏcārĕ,	*call together, summon.*
confĭrmŏ, confĭrmārĕ,	*establish, strengthen.*
importŏ, importārĕ,	*bring in, import.*
occŭpŏ, occŭpārĕ,	*seize, occupy.*
vastŏ, vastārĕ,	*lay waste, devastate.*

Pronounce; translate; inflect the verbs and give their elements.⁴

1. Importās,⁵ importātĭs, importāmŭs.   2. Amāmŭs, ămant, ămăt.   3. Convŏcŏ, convŏcās, convŏcăt.   4. Convŏcāmŭs, convŏcātĭs, convŏcant.   5. Confirmant, confirmātĭs, confirmāmŭs.   6. Confirmăt, confirmās, confirmŏ.   7. Occŭpŏ, ămās, importăt.   8. Importŏ, ămātĭs, occŭpant.   9. Occŭpāmŭs, importātĭs, ămŏ.   10. Occŭpās, occŭpăt, occŭpātĭs.

Write in Latin.

1. I am importing, you are establishing, he is loving.   2. We occupy, you summon, they devastate.   3. We do import, you do devastate, they do summon.   4. I devastate, you devastate, he devastates.   5. We are devastating, you are devastating, they are devastating.

Notes and Questions.

[1] The Present Stem is named *The First Stem* in some grammars; in others, *The First Root.*

[2] The *conjugation* of a verb is the change made in its ending to express voice, mood, tense, person, and number.

[3] Only the *general* meaning of the verb, without reference to person, number, mood, tense, or voice will be given in the Vocabularies. The *special* meanings can be learned with aid of the grammar.

[4] The elements of a verb in the present tense are *the stem* and *personal ending :* e. g. **ămāmŭs** has the stem **ămā**, signifying *love*, and the personal ending **mŭs**, signifying *we.*

[5] **importās** may be rendered *you are importing, you do import,* or *you import ;* translate each verb the three ways.

[6] What is the Present Stem of **pŭtārĕ?** What does the personal ending **nt** signify? **mŭs?** **s?** **tĭs?** Define the Indicative Mood. The Active Voice. The Present Tense. How is the Present Stem found? (**28**)

LESSON XI.

THE SIMPLE SENTENCE.

31. A. & G. **171; 172; 180; 181**: A. & S. **309–311**: B. **203,**
a–g: B. & M. **616,** 1, 4–10; **618–620:** G. **192; 193**: H. **346;**
347; 350; 356, 1, 2 ; **358; 360**: C. **107; 108; 108,** 1, 2, 3, 6.

32. Subject Nominative. A. & G. **173**: A. & S. **316**: B. **205,**
RULE I. : B. & M. **633:** G. **194**: H. **368**: C. **109.**

33. Agreement of Verb. A. & G. **204**: A. & S. **316**: B. **287,**
RULE LV. : B. & M. **634:** G. **202**: H. **460**: C. **110,** 1.

34. Direct Object. A. & G. **237**: A. & S. **392**: B. **212,**
RULE VII. : B. & M. **712:** G. **329**: H. **371**: C. **121,** 1.

EXAMPLES.

1. **Puĕr** (subject) **ămăt** (predicate), *the boy loves.*
2. **Tītŭs concĭlĭŭm**[1] (direct object) **convŏcăt,** *Titus summons a council.*

VOCABULARY.

dē, prep. w. abl.,	*down from, concerning, for.*
expugnŏ, expugnārĕ,	*storm, capture.*
Gallŭs, ī, m.	*a Gaul.*
impĕrĭŭm, ī, n.	*empire, supreme power.*
pugnŏ, pugnārĕ,	*fight, contend.*
Rōmānŭs, ī, m.	*a Roman.*
servŭs, ī, m.	*slave.*
vexŏ, vexārĕ,	*disturb, harass.*

Pronounce; translate; name the subject and predicate; conjugate the verbs; parse the nouns and adjectives.

1. Cassĭŭs[2] oppĭdŭm[3] expugnăt.[4] 2. Helvētĭī oppĭdŭm
expugnant. 3. Gallī tōtŭm[5] oppĭdŭm occŭpant. 4. Gallī
multă oppĭdă occŭpant. 5. Sēquănī agrōs vastant. 6. Agrōs
pulchrōs vastāmŭs.[6] 7. Agrōs magnōs vastās. 8. Cassĭŭs
concĭlĭŭm[7] convŏcăt. 9. Germānī Gallōs vexant. 10. Rō-

mānī oppĭdŭm Gĕnāvăm[8] expugnant. 11. Tĭtŭs Lăbiēnŭs lēgātŭs oppĭdŭm occŭpăt. 12. Rōmānī dē impĕriō[9] pugnant. 13. Dē impĕriō pugnāmŭs. 14. Dē impĕriō pugnātĭs.

Write in Latin.

1. The slave fights. 2. The slaves are fighting.[10] 3. The Gauls are storming the town.[1] 4. The Gauls storm many towns. 5. The Helvetii are laying waste the fields. 6. The Gauls fight for empire. 7. The Germans occupy the town of Geneva. 8. Cassius the legate summons a large council. 9. We occupy the entire town.

Notes and Questions.

[1] Observe that in a Latin sentence the subject stands first, the verb last, and the object between.

[2] See *39* and Ln. IV., Note 1.   [3] See *34.*

[4] Why is **expugnăt** in the third person singular ? (*33*)

[5] See *94* and *99.* Which adjectives have their Genitive in īŭs and Dative in ī ?

[6] The subject of a verb in the *first* and *second* person is generally expressed by the personal ending alone ; hence **vastāmŭs** includes both the simple subject and the simple predicate : $\dfrac{devastate \quad we.}{\text{vastā - mŭs.}}$

[7] See *17.*   [8] See *95.*

[9] See *16.*   [10] See Ln. X., Note 5.

LESSON XII.

VERBS : FIRST CONJUGATION. — IMPERFECT AND FUTURE TENSES.

35. Learn the Imperfect and Future Indicative Active of **ămŏ**. A. & G. **118** (*for endings*) ; **128** (*for conjugation*) : A. & S. **222**; **224** 1, 2 : B. **72**, *Indicative ;* **74**: B. & M. *282:* G. **111**, 1–3; **119**: H. **205**; **247**, 1 ; **243**: C. p. **102** (*for endings*) ; p. **76** (*for conjugation*).

36. Use of the Imperfect and Future Tenses. A. & G. 277; 278: A. & S. 461; 464: B. 57: B. & M. *1087; 1090:* G. 222; 234: H. 468; 470: C. 66, 2, 3.

37. Observe that the same Stem and Personal Endings are used in the conjugation of the Imperfect and Future as in the Present; that between these, however, there is a Tense-Sign, **ba** in the Imperfect and **bĭ** in the Future; that the first singular of the Future has the termination **o,** like the Present; that in the third plural of the Future **u** takes the place of **ĭ.**

VOCABULARY.

Aquīlēĭă, ae, f.	*Aquileia.*
Aquĭtānĭă, ae, f.	*Aquitania.*
Aquĭtānī, ōrŭm, m.	*the Aquitani.*
circŭm, prep. w. acc.	*around, near.*
Helvētĭŭs, ă, ŭm,	*of the Helvetii.*
hĭĕmŏ, hĭĕmārĕ,	*pass the winter.*
sŭpĕrŏ, sŭpĕrārĕ,	*overcome.*

Pronounce; translate; conjugate the verbs and give their elements.¹

1. Tĭtus regnum occŭpăt.   2. Tĭtus regnum occŭpābăt. 3. Tĭtus regnum occŭpābĭt.   4. Regnum occŭpābāmŭs. 5. Regnum occŭpābĭmŭs.   6. Regnum occŭpābŏ.   7. Cōpiae² circŭm Aquilēiam³ hĭĕmābant.   8. Aquĭtāni circŭm Gĕnāvam hĭĕmābunt.   9. Aquĭtānos sŭpĕrābĭs.   10. Rōmāni Helvētios sŭpĕrābunt.   11. Galli multa lŏca⁴ ĭn Aquĭtānĭă⁵ occŭpant.   12. Multi Germāni agros Helvētios vastābant.

Write in Latin.

1. We are overcoming, we were overcoming, we shall overcome.   2. You are storming, you were storming, you will storm.   3. Titus will storm the town.   4. Titus was storming the town.   5. Titus storms many towns.   6. The Romans will pass the winter near Aquileia.   7. The Aquitani are passing the winter near Geneva.   8. The Gauls were fighting for⁶ empire.   9. The Romans fight for glory.

¹ The elements of a verb in the Imperfect and Future Tenses are *the stem*, *tense-sign, personal ending :* e. g. $\frac{love\ will\ you}{ama - bi - tis}$ has the Stem **âmâ**, *love ;* the Future Tense-Sign **bi**, *will ;* the Personal Ending **tis**, *you.*

² What meaning has **cópias** in the Singular ? LN. VIII., Vy.

³ See *19*. ⁴ Decline **lóci**. LN. VIII., Vy., 2.

⁵ See *19*.

⁶ *For*, in the sense of *concerning, about*, is to be rendered by **dē**.

⁷ How is the Present Stem found ? (*28*) Remember that the Present Stem and the tenses formed upon it — Present, Imperfect, Future — denote *incomplete* action.

————∞○◦○◦∞————

LESSON XIII.

MODIFIERS OF THE SUBJECT AND PREDICATE ; DATIVE OF INDIRECT OBJECT ; GENITIVE WITH NOUNS.

38. Modifiers. A. & G. 178, *a, b ;* 179 : B. 288, *a :* B. & M. *1401*, 1–4 ; *1405*, II., 1–4 : H. 357, 1 ; 359, NOTE 1 ; 361, 1 : C. 108, 5.

39. Indirect Object. A. & G. 224 : A. & S. 374, (2) : B. 239, RULE XXVIII. : B. & M. *818 ; 819 :* G. 344 : H. 384, I., II. : C. 149 ; 150.

40. Genitive with Nouns. A. & G. 213 : A. & S. 351 : B. 226 ; 230, RULE XIX. : B. & M. *751 :* G. 357 ; 358 ; 360 : H. 395 : C. 133.

EXAMPLES.

1. **Titus Lăbiēnus lēgātus consīlia Gallōrum ēnunciăt,¹** *Titus Labienus the lieutenant reports the plans of the Gauls.*

2. **Cassius Tìto fìliam in mātrimōnium dăt,²** *Cassius gives to Titus a daughter in marriage.*

Notes on the Examples.

¹ Of this sentence, **Titus Lăbiēnus** is *the subject* and is modified by **lēgā-tus**, *an appositive ;* **consīlia Gallōrum ēnunciăt** is *the predicate* and is made up of *the verb* **ēnunciăt** and its *modifier* **consīlia**, *a direct object ;* **consīlia** is modified by **Gallōrum**, *a genitive.* G. 284, I., II., REM. ; 326, I., II.

² Of this sentence, **Cassius** is the subject and is not modified ; **Tīto fīliam in mātrimōnium dăt** is the predicate, and is made up of the verb **dăt** and its modifiers, viz : **Tīto**, an indirect object ; **fīliam**, a direct object ; and **in mātrimōnium**, a phrase.

VOCABULARY.

dŏ, dărĕ,	*give.*
ēnunciŏ, ēnunciărĕ,	*report.*
mātrĭmōnium, i, n.	*marriage.*
in mātrĭmōnium dărĕ,	*to give in marriage.*

Pronounce; translate; analyze;¹ conjugate the verbs; parse the nouns and adjectives.

1. Cassius² consĭlia Belgārum³ ēnunciābĭt.   2. Rōmānis⁴ consĭlia Belgārum ēnunciābĭt.   3. Tĭtus fīliam ĭn⁵ mātrĭmōnium dăbĭt.⁶   4. Lēgātō fīliam ĭn mātrĭmōnium dăbĭt. 5. Lēgātis fīlias ĭn mātrĭmōnium dămŭs.   6. Helvētii multa lŏca ĭn Aquītānia occŭpant.   7. Cassius concĭlium Rōmānōrum convŏcăt.   8. Deos⁷ et deas⁸ ĭn templa convŏcăt. 9. Rōmāni oppĭda multa et magna⁹ expugnābant.   10. Amīcĭtiam cŭm Helvētiis confirmant.   11. Tōtum¹⁰ oppĭdum ullo¹⁰ sĭnĕ pĕrīcŭlo occŭpābĭtĭs.   12. Galli agros multos et pulchros⁹ ĭn Aquītānia vastābunt.

Notes and Questions.

¹ To analyze a simple sentence is to name its subject and predicate; the modifiers of the subject, if any ; the verb, and its modifiers, if any; SEE NOTES ON THE EXAMPLES.

² What is the Genitive and Vocative of **Cassius** ? (*17* and *18*)

³ See *40*.   ⁴ See *39*.

⁵ A preposition with its noun is a *Phrase ;* when the *Phrase* limits a verb, as in this sentence, it is an *Adverbial Phrase ;* when it limits a noun, as in sentence 6, it is an *Adjective Phrase.*

⁶ Observe that in **dŏ** the characteristic a is short ; in the other verbs of the First Conjugation it is long.

⁷ See *30*.   ⁸ See *11*.

⁹ See LN. VI., NOTE 5.   ¹⁰ See *24*.

LESSON XIV.

VERBS: FIRST CONJUGATION: PERFECT, PLUPERFECT, AND
FUTURE PERFECT TENSES.

41. Learn the Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future Perfect Indicative
Active of ămŏ. A. & G. **118**; **128**: A. & S. **210**; **213** (2); **222**;
224 (5): B. **75**: B. & M. *282*: G. **120**: H. **205**; **243**, TENSE-
SIGNS of PLUP. and F. PERF.; **247**, 1, 2: C. p. 102; pp. 76, 77.

42. Use of the Pluperfect and Future Perfect Tenses.
A. & G. **280**; **281**: A. & S. **462** (2), (3): B. **57**: B. & M. *1096;
1098:* G. **233**; **236**: H. **472**; **473**: C. **194**; **195**.

43. What are the two uses of the Perfect Indicative ?
A. & G. **115**, *c;* **279**: A. & S. **462** (1): B. **60**: B. & M. *1092;
1093:* G. **226**; **227**; **231**: H. **471**, I., II.: C. **66**, 4.

44. The Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future Perfect Indicative Active
of every verb, whatever its conjugation may be, are conjugated like
the same tenses of ămŏ. These tenses are formed on the Perfect Stem
and denote *completed action.*

45. The Perfect Stem is found in the Perfect Indicative Active
by dropping the ending ī: e. g. Perfect Indicative VASTĀVĪ, Perfect
Stem VASTĀV.

VOCABULARY.

confirmŏ,	confirmāre,	confirmāvī,[1]	*establish, strengthen.*
convŏcŏ,	convŏcāre,	convŏcāvī,	*call together, summon.*
dŏ,	dărĕ,	dĕdī,[4]	*give.*
expugnŏ,	expugnārĕ,	expugnāvī,	*storm, capture.*
hiĕmŏ,	hiĕmāre,	hiĕmāvī,	*pass the winter.*
occŭpŏ,	occŭpāre,	occŭpāvī,	*seize, occupy.*
Rōmă, ae, f.			*Rome.*
sŭpĕrŏ,	sŭpĕrārĕ,	sŭpĕrāvī,	*overcome, subdue.*
vastŏ,	vastārĕ,	vastāvī,	*lay waste, devastate.*
vexŏ,	vexārĕ,	vexāvī,	*disturb, harass.*

[1] In this Vocabulary the First Person Singular of the Present Indicative
Active, the Present Infinitive Active, and the First Person Singular of the
Perfect Indicative Active are given.

**Pronounce; translate; conjugate and give a synopsis¹ of the Indicative
Mood of each verb.**

1. Cassius multos agros vastāvĭt.² 2. Concĭlium Gallōrum
convŏcāvĕrŏ.³ 3. Galli tōtum oppĭdum occŭpāvĕrant. 4. Hel-
vētii castra occŭpāvĕrint. 5. Rōmānī agrum Helvētium vas-
tāvērunt.² 6. Amīcĭtiam cŭm Rōmānis confirmāvĕrĭt. 7. Cō-
piae circŭm Rōmam hiĕmāvērĕ.² 8. Cassius Tĭto fīliam ĭn
mātrĭmōnium dĕdĭt.² 9. Rōmānī Helvētios vexāvērunt.²
10. Sēquāni Germānos sŭpĕrāvērunt.² 11. Circŭm Rōmam
hiĕmāvĕrant. 12. Oppĭdum Aquĭlēiam occŭpāvī.

Write in Latin.

1. The Aquitani have stormed the town. 2. The Aquitani
will have stormed the town. 3. The Aquitani had stormed
the town. 4. I have given a daughter in marriage. 5. I had
given a daughter in marriage. 6. I shall have given a
daughter in marriage. 7. I gave a daughter in marriage to
the son of Cassius. 8. You have summoned a council of
Romans. 9. You had summoned a council of Romans.

Notes and Questions.

¹ A *Synopsis* of the Indicative Mood consists of the *First Person Singular
of each tense :* e. g. the synopsis of **vastāvĭt** is *vastŏ, vastābăm, vastābŏ, vas-
tāvī, vastāvĕrăm, vastāvĕrŏ.*

² Translate each Perfect in accordance with both its uses : **Cassius vas-
tāvĭt,** *Cassius has laid waste,* and *Cassius laid waste.* (See **43**)

³ Which tenses are formed on the *Perfect Stem* and what action do they
denote ? (**44**) Which are formed on the *Present Stem* and what action do
they denote ? (LN. XII., NOTE 7.) The Pluperfect denotes that an action
is completed in what time ? (**42**) The Future Perfect ? The Present Tense
denotes that an action *is going on* in what time ? (**26**) The Imperfect
Tense ? (**36**) The Future Tense ? Give the elements of each verb in the
Pluperfect and Future Perfect Tenses : e. g. $\overset{loved\ had\ they}{\text{āmāv - ĕra - nt}}$ has the Perfect
Stem **āmāv,** *loved ;* the Pluperfect Tense-Sign **ĕra,** *had ;* the Personal End-
ing **nt,** *they.*

⁴ See LN. XIII., NOTE 6 ; observe that the *Perfect stem* of **dŏ** is **dĕd,** not
dăv.

LESSON XV.

VERBS: FIRST CONJUGATION: IMPERATIVE MOOD.

46. Learn the Imperative Mood, Active Voice, of **ămŏ** and its meanings. A. & G. **128**; **118**, *for personal endings:* A. & S. **213** (3); **222**: B. **74**, a; **64**, *b, for pers. endings:* B. & M. **282**: G. **119**: H. **205**; **247**, 3, *for pers. endings:* C. p. 77; p. 104 *for pers. endings.*

47. *Use of the Imperative.* A. & G. **269**: A. & S. **527**: B. **312**, RULE LXXI.: B. & M. **1110**: G. **259**: H. **487**: C. **247**, 1, 2.

VOCABULARY.

ăvŭs, ī, m.	*grandfather.*
Dīvĭtĭăcŭs, ī, m.	*Divitiacus.*
jŭvŏ, jŭvārĕ, jūvī,	*help, aid.*
mātūrŏ, mātūrārĕ, mātūrāvī,	*make haste, hasten.*
nātūră, ae, f.	*nature.*
nunciŏ, nunciārĕ, nunciāvī,	*announce.*
proeliŭm, ī, n.	*battle.*
sŏcĕr, sŏcĕrī, m.	*father-in-law.*
vītŏ, vītārĕ, vītāvī,	*avoid, shun.*
vŏcŏ, vŏcārĕ, vŏcāvī,	*call.*

Pronounce; translate; parse the Nouns; conjugate the Imperatives and give the rule for their use. (47)

1. Jŭvā,[1] mātūrā, nunciā. 2. Jŭvātŏ, mātūrātŏ, nunciātŏ.
3. Jŭvātĕ, mātūrātĕ, nunciātĕ. 4. Vītā, Dīvĭtĭăcĕ,[2] proeliŭm.
5. Vītā, O ăvĕ,[3] pĕrīcŭlŭm. 6. Dătĕ, vĭrī, Rōmānīs[4] armă.[5]
7. Vŏcā, sŏcĕr, pŭĕrōs. 8. Mātūrā, Cassī,[6] Tītō[4] nunciārĕ.
9. Mātūrātĕ, vĭrī, oppĭdŭm expugnārĕ. 10. Vastātĕ agrōs.
11. Vastātĕ multōs agrōs. 12. Vastātĕ tōtăm prōvinciăm.

Write in Latin.

1. Call the men. 2. Help the boys. 3. Shun the danger.
4. Avoid a battle, Divitiacus. 5. Summon a council, Cassius.
6. Call the men, my grandfather. 7. Announce to Cassius.
8. Make haste to announce to Divitiacus. 9. Men, give arms to the Belgae. 10. Import corn.

Notes and Questions.

[1] Observe that the Personal Endings are added to the Present Stem (*28*); that the Second Person Singular of the Present is the same in form as the Present Stem ; that, like the English, the Latin Imperative has no First Person.

[2] See Ln. V., Note 5.

[3] O ăvĕ, *O grandfather*, or *my grandfather*.   [4] See *39*.

[5] See Ln. VIII., Vy.   [6] See *18*.

What is the Present Stem of each verb in the lesson ? The Perfect Stem ? Which Stem is used in the Imperative ? Does the Imperative then denote *incomplete* or *completed* action ? What are the Personal Endings of the Imperative ?

————◦○●○○●————

LESSON XVI.

VERBS : INFINITIVES, PARTICIPLES, GERUND, AND SUPINE.

48. Learn the Active Infinitives and Participles, the Gerund and Supine of **ămŏ**. A. & G. **118** ; **128**, page 93 ; **289** : A. & S. **214** ; **222**, page 108 : B. **51** ; **53**, *a – d ;* **65** ; **66** ; **72** ; **74**, a ; **75** : B. & M. **264**, IV. ; **265** ; **282 :** G. **110** ; **119** ; **120** : H. **200**, I. – IV. ; **205** ; **248**, Active : C. p. 104 ; pp. 77, 78.

49. Principal Parts (*Stem Forms*). A. & G. **122**, *b :* A. & S. **220**, Note : B. **73** : B. & M **275 :** G. **118** : H. **202** ; **203** ; **220**, Conj. I. : C. **69**.

50. The Supine Stem is found in the Supine in **ŭm** by dropping the **ŭm** : e. g. cūrātŭm is a Supine in **ŭm** and cūrāt its Supine Stem.

51. Each Verb has regularly three Stems, the Present (*28*), the Perfect (*45*), and the Supine (*50*). Name the three Stems of each verb in the following Vocabulary.

VOCABULARY.[1]

ămŏ,	ārĕ,	āvī,	ātŭm,[2]	*love.*
cūrŏ,	ārĕ,	āvī,	ātŭm,[2]	*care for.*
dŏ,	dărĕ,[3]	dĕdī,	dătŭm,[3]	*give.*
jŭvŏ,	jŭvārĕ,	jūvī,	jūtŭm,	*help, aid.*

nĕgŏ,	ārĕ,	āvī,	ātŭm,	*deny.*
pugnŏ,	ārĕ,	āvī,	ātŭm,	*fight.*
vastŏ,	ārĕ,	āvī,	ātŭm,	*lay waste, devastate.*
vexŏ,	ārĕ,	āvī,	ātŭm,	*disturb, harass.*
vŏcŏ,	ārĕ,	āvī,	ātŭm,	*call.*

Notes and Questions.

[1] The Principal Parts (*49*) will be given hereafter in the Vocabularies; these Parts should always be learned.

[2] Most verbs of the First Conjugation form their Perfect and Supine like ămŏ. To form the Principal Parts let ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm take the place of final ŏ in the Present Indicative Active : e. g. cūrŏ, cūrārĕ, cūrāvī, cūrātŭm.

[3] See Ln. XIII., Note 6.

How many Infinitives has each verb in the Active Voice ? On which Stem is each formed ? Name the Infinitives of dŏ, cūrŏ, jŭvŏ, and vastŏ. What is the Ending of each Infinitive ? On which Stems are the Active Participles formed ? What is the Ending of each Participle ? What is the Future Active Participle of dŏ, nĕgŏ, pugnŏ ? What is the Present Participle of each ? On which Stem is the Gerund formed ? Form and decline the Gerund of dŏ and cūrŏ. What are the Endings of the Supine ?

⸻⸻

LESSON XVII.

USE OF THE INFINITIVE.

52. Infinitive as Object. A. & G. 272 : A. & S. 533 (1) : B. **315,** *f:* B. & M. *1148:* G. 527 : H. 534 : C. 237.

53. Subject of the Infinitive. A. & G. 240, *f:* A. & S. 530 : B. 225, Rule XVI. : B. & M. *1136:* G. 526, *second part:* H. 536 : C. 109, 3.

EXAMPLES.

1. **Dīcĭt Rōmānōs[1] oppĭdŭm[2] expugnārĕ,[3]** *he says (that[4]) the Romans[4] are storming[4] the town.*

2. **Dīcĭt Rōmānōs oppĭdŭm expugnāvĭssĕ,** *he says (that) the Romans have stormed the town; or he says (that) the Romans stormed the town.*

3. **Dīcĭt Rōmānōs oppĭdŭm expugnātūrōs⁵ essĕ,** *he says* (*that*)
the Romans are about to storm the town; or *he says* (*that*) *the*
Romans will storm the town.

<div align="center">

Notes on the Examples.

</div>

¹ See *53.*   ² See *34.*

⁸ The whole expression **Rōmānōs oppĭdŭm expugnārĕ** is the Direct Ob-
ject of **dīcĭt** (see *52*).

⁴ Observe that the Infinitive **expugnārĕ** is translated by the Indicative
are storming; the Subject Accusative **Rōmānōs,** by the Subject Nomina-
tive *the Romans;* and the Conjunction *that* is supplied.

⁵ Observe that the Participle of the Future Infinitive Active agrees with
the Subject of the Infinitive in gender, number, and case.

<div align="center">

VOCABULARY.

</div>

Aeduī, ōrŭm, m.				*the Aedui.*
Ariovistŭs, ī, m.				*Ariovistus.*
dēmonstrŏ,	ārĕ,	āvī,	ātŭm,¹	*show, declare.*
dīcĭt,				*he says.*
existĭmŏ,	ārĕ,	āvī,	ātŭm,	*think, suppose.*
nĕgŏ,	ārĕ,	āvī,	ātŭm,	*deny.*
nunciŏ,	ārĕ,	āvī,	ātŭm,	*announce.*
pŭtŏ,	ārĕ,	āvī,	ātŭm,	*think.*

<div align="center">

Pronounce; translate; parse the Nouns and Infinitives.

</div>

1. Dīcĭt² Rōmānōs Helvētiōs vexārĕ.³   2. Pŭtăt Rōmānōs
Helvētiōs vexāvissĕ.   3. Nunciăt Rōmānōs Helvētiōs vexā-
tūrōs essĕ.   4. Existĭmăt Ariovistŭm regnŭm in Galliā occŭ-
pātūrŭm essĕ.   5. Tĭtŭs existĭmăt Ariovistŭm regnŭm ĭn
Galliā occŭpāvissĕ.   6. Ariovistŭs nunciăt Germānōs agrŭm
Helvētiŭm vastātūrōs essĕ.   7. Dīcĭt Rōmānōs frūmentŭm
importārĕ.   8. Existĭmăt Helvētiōs frūmentŭm importātūrōs
essĕ.   9. Dīcĭt Gallōs frūmentŭm Rōmānīs⁴ dătūrōs essĕ.
10. Dīcĭt Aeduōs Rōmānīs⁴ armă dătūrōs essĕ

<div align="center">

Write in Latin.

</div>

1. He says² (that⁵) the Sequani are about to harass the
Helvetii.   2. He says (that) the Germans are laying waste

the Helvetian territory. 3. Titus thinks (that) the Romans
will give corn to the Aedui. 4. Titus thinks (that) the
Romans are importing corn. 5. He says (that) Cassius has
summoned a council of Romans. 6. He announces (that) the
Aquitani have stormed the towns.

Notes.

¹ The verbs in this VY. may have as Object an Infinitive with its Sub-
ject Accusative.

² Study carefully the EXAMPLES and NOTES ON THE EXAMPLES before
attempting to translate the sentences.

⁸ *Form for parsing an Infinitive.* — **vexārĕ** is a Transitive (*26*) Verb;
Principal Parts (*49*), vexŏ, vexārĕ, vexāvī, vexātŭm; Stems, VEXA (*28*),
VEXĀV (*45*), VEXĀT (*50*); Infinitives of the Active Voice, vexārĕ, vexāvissĕ,
vexātūrŭs essĕ; it is made in the Present Infinitive Active and with its
Subject **Rōmānŏs** is the Object of **dīcĭt**; rule (see *52*).

⁴ See *39*.

⁵ Words in parentheses are not to be translated; see also Notes on the
Examples, 4.

—◦◦⟩◦⟨◦◦—

LESSON XVIII.

GENERAL EXERCISE. — ABLATIVE.

54. Ablative of Means. A. & G. **248,** *c* 1: A. & S. **407:**
B. **258,** RULE XLIII.: B. & M. *873:* G. **403:** H. **420:** C. **166.**

VOCABULARY.

anĭmŭs, ī, m.	*mind.*
concĭlĭŏ, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm,	*win, conciliate.*
confĭrmŏ, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm,	*establish, encourage.*
intĕr, prep. w. acc.	*between, among.*
Nŏrēĭă, ae, f.	*Noreia.*
oppugnŏ, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm,	*attack, besiege, assault.*
proptĕr, prep. w. acc.	*on account of.*
Trēvĭrī, ōrum, m.	*the Treviri.*
verbŭm, ī, n.	*word.*

Pronounce; translate; analyze;[1] parse.

1. Intĕr[2] Sēquănos ĕt Helvĕtios.   2. Proptĕr[2] angustias.
3. Nŏrēiam oppugnāmŭs.[3]   4. Nŏrēiam oppugnābant.   5. Rŏ-
māni Nŏrēiam oppugnāvērunt.[4]   6. Trēvĭri Nŏrēiam oppug-
nābunt.   7. Dīcĭt Trēvĭros[5] Nŏrēiam oppugnātūros[6] essĕ.[7]
8. Nŏrēiam oppugnātĭs.   9. Nŏrēiam oppugnātĕ.[8]   10. Di-
vitiăcus Gallōrum anĭmos verbis[9] confirmāvĭt.   11. Divitiăcus
Gallōrum anĭmos verbis confirmābĭt.   12. Tĭtus pŭtăt Diviti-
ăcum Gallōrum anĭmos verbis confirmātūrŭm esse.   13. Cassius
regnum concĭliāvĭt.   14. Cassius regnum cōpiis concĭliābăt.
15. Cassius regnum cōpiis Divitiăco[10] conciliābĭt.   16. Nĕgăt
Cassium regnum cōpiis Divitiăco concĭliātūrŭm essĕ.   17. Tĭtus
Divitiăco[10] fīliam in mātrĭmōnium[11] dĕdĭt.

Notes and Questions.

[1] See Ln. XIII., Note 1.   [2] See Ln. XIII., Note 5.

[3] *Form for parsing a verb in the Indicative Mood.* — oppugnāmus is a
Transitive (*26*) Verb ; Principal Parts (*49*), *oppugnŏ, oppugnārĕ, oppugnāvī,
oppugnātŭm;* it is of the First Conjugation, because the characteristic
vowel is ă ; Stems, OPPUGNA, OPPUGNĀV, OPPUGNĀT ; Synopsis (LN.
XIV., NOTE 1), *oppugnŏ, oppugnābăm, oppugnābŏ, oppugnāvī, oppugnāvĕ-
răm, oppugnāvĕro;* conjugated, *oppugnŏ, oppugnās, oppugnăt, oppugnāmŭs,
oppugnātĭs, oppugnant;* it is made in the First Person Plural of the Present
Indicative Active to agree with its Subject, a pronoun (nos, *we*) under-
stood ; rule (*33*).

[4] What are the two uses of the Perfect Indicative ? (*43*)

[5] See *53*.   [6] See Ln. XVII., Notes on the Examples, 5.

[7] See *52*.   In what two ways may the Future Infinitive be translated ?
See Ln. XVII., Example 3.

[8] See *47*. How does this form differ from the Second Person Plural of the
Present *Indicative ?*

[9] verbis, *with words,* or *by means of words;* it is a modifier (*38*) of con-
firmāvĭt.

[10] See *39*.   [11] See *19*.

LESSON XIX.

THIRD DECLENSION : NOUNS.

55. Stem and Declension. A. & G. **32,** *a, b ;* **33,** *a–g* : A. & S. **89 ; 90,** *a, b :* B. **36 ; 121** : B. & M. ***44–47 :*** G. **16 ; 25 ; 26** : H. **46–47,** *including fine print.*

56. A. & G. **48,** *a–d ;* **49,** *w. declension of* consŭl, nōmĕn, hŏnŏr, leo, frātĕr, virgŏ, corpŭs : A. & S. **103,** *a–f ;* **104,** decl. of consul, leo, virgo, nomen, pater ; **107,** honor : B. **130 ; 135,** *w. declension of* consŭl, virgŏ, leō, nōmĕn, ămŏr, pătĕr : B. & M. **73 –77 ; 90–97,** *including the Paradigms :* G. **36–39 ; 40 ; 42 ; 43 ; 44–46 ; 47** : H. **55 ; 56 ; 57,** *Case-Suffixes ;* **60,** *Paradigms,* 1, 3, 4 : C. **26,** *declension of* rēx, nōmĕn, leo, pătĕr, virgŏ, corpŭs.

VOCABULARY.

accŭso, āre, āvi, ātum,	*accuse, censure.*
Caesăr, Caesăris, m.	*Caesar.*
consŭl, consŭlis, m.	*consul.*
citrā, prep. w. acc.	*this side of.*
flūmĕn, flūmĭnis, n.	*river.*
frātĕr, frātris, m.	*brother.*
hŏnŏr, hŏnōris, m.	*honor.*
mātĕr, mātris, f.	*mother.*
pătĕr, pătris, m.	*father.*
Sēquănă, ae, m.	*the Seine.*
sŏrŏr, sŏrōris, f.	*sister.*
uxŏr, uxōris, f.	*wife.*

Pronounce; translate; decline each noun and give its Stem and End-ings; parse the verbs.

1. A[1] flūmĭnĕ Rhŏdăno.[2] 2. E[1] flūmĭnĕ Rhŏdăno. 3. Ad flūmĕn Sēquănam. 4. Citrā flūmĕn Rhēnum. 5. Pătĕr sŏrōrĕm in mātrĭmōnium dat. 6. Mātĕr sŏrōrĕm in mātrĭmōnium dăbit. 7. Caesăr sŏrōrĕm in mātrĭmōnium dĕdit. 8. Tĭtus dīcĭt Caesărĕm sŏrōrĕm in mātrĭmōnium dĕdisse. 9. Caesăr uxōrĕm accūsāvit. 10. Caesăr consŭl[2] Tĭtum lēgā-tum[2] accūsāvĕrat. 11. Nĕgat Caesărĕm consŭlĕm Tĭtum

lēgātum accūsāvisse.   12. Caesărĭs³ uxōrĕm accūsābĭmus.
13. Pătrĕm et mātrĕm et frātrĕm accūsant.

Write in Latin.

1. To the river Rhone.   2. This side of the river Seine.
3. Across the river Rhine.   4. Caesar gives a sister in mar-
riage.   5. Caesar has given to the consul a daughter in mar-
riage.   6. He thinks (that) Caesar has given a daughter in
marriage.   7. We shall accuse Caesar the consul.   8. Brothers
accuse sisters.

Notes and Questions.

[1] See Ln. IV., Vy., and Ln. VIII., Note 4.
[2] See *25*.   [3] See Ln. III., Notes 2 and 3.

How is the Stem of a noun found ?   What are the Case-Endings of the
Third Declension ?   Which Case-Endings do nouns with *liquid* Stems omit ?
How does the Stem of *flūmĭnĭs* differ in form from the Nominative Sin-
gular ?

————o◦ᠼᠵ◦o————

LESSON XX.

THIRD DECLENSION (*continued*).

57. A. & G. **21**; **32,** *a,* *b*; **33,** *a–g;* **44**; **45,** *a–c;* **46**: A. &
S. **55**; **101,** *a, c;* **102**; **104,** decl. of **caput**: B. **130–134,** *includ-
ing the Paradigms:* B. & M. *all of* **86–88***:* G. **37**; **39**; **51**; **54**;
56; **57**: H. **24,** 1 ; **30**; **36,** 2; *all of* **56–59**: C. Remainder of
26; **27.**

VOCABULARY.

atquĕ[1] *or* **ăc,**[1] conj.		*and.*
căpŭt,	**căpĭtĭs,** n.	*head.*
custōs,	**custōdĭs,** m.	*guard.*
Dumnŏrix,	**Dumnŏrĭgĭs,** m.	*Dumnorix.*
Jūra, ae, m.		*the Jura.*
mīlĕs,	**mīlĭtĭs,** m.	*soldier.*
mons,	**montĭs,** m.	*mountain.*

pars,	partĭs, f.	*part.*
princeps,	princĭpĭs, m.	*chief.*
rādĭx,	rādīcĭs, f.	*root.*
rex,	rēgĭs, m.	*king.*
urbs,	urbĭs, f.	*city.*

Pronounce; translate; decline each noun, give its Stem and form its Nominatives.

1. Ad rēgĕm Germānōrum.　2. Ad princĭpĕm Galliae prōvinciae.　3. Ad montĕm[2] Jūram.　4. Sŭb[3] montĕ Jūrā. 5. Intĕr montĕm Jūram et flūmĕn Rhŏdănum.　6. Circŭm urbĕm[2] Rōmam.[4]　7. In urbĕ Rōmā.　8. Proptĕr hŏnōrēs Caesărĭs.　9. In partēs Galliae.　10. Cŭm Dumnŏrĭgĕ fratrĕ Divitiăci.　11. Rex atquĕ ămīcus.　12. Sĭnĕ rēgĕ atquĕ sĭnĕ ămīcis.　13. Căpĭtă mīlĭtŭm.　14. Ad rādīcēs montĭs. 15. Cum princĭpĕ tōtīus Galliae.　16. Urbēs multaę et magnae.[5]

Notes.

[1] atquĕ is used before vowels and consonants; ăc, only before consonants.

[2] A. & G. **47** *a*, page 27 : A. & S. **109**, *a:* B. **137**, *a*, 1 : B. & M. **116; 119:** G. **54**, Remark : H. **64**, urbs : C. p. 26, dens.

[3] See sŭb, in General Vocabulary at end of the book.

[4] Words not given in the Special Vocabularies can be found in the General Vocabulary.

[5] See Ln. VI., Note 5.

────ᵒᵒ⟅❂⟆ᵒᵒ────

LESSON XXI.

THIRD DECLENSION. — TWO ACCUSATIVES.

58. *Two Accusatives of the same Person or Thing.* A. & G. **239**, 1 : A. & S. **394** (1) : B. **216**, Rule VIII. : B. & M. **715:** G. **334:** H. **373** : C. **126.**

EXAMPLES.

1. **Caesărĕm consŭlĕm creāvērunt,** *they elected Caesar consul.*
2. **Oppĭdum appellant Gĕnăvam,** *they call the town Geneva.*

VOCABULARY.

appellŏ, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm,	*name, call.*
cīvĭtās, cīvĭtātĭs, f.	*state.*
creŏ, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm,	*elect, appoint.*
lēgătio, lēgătiōnĭs, f.	*embassy.*
lex, lēgĭs, f.	*law.*
mors, mortĭs, f.	*death.*
pax, pācĭs, f.	*peace.*
post, prep. w. acc.	*after.*
proxĭmŭs, ă, ŭm,	*nearest.*
Pȳrēnaeŭs, ă, ŭm,	*Pyrenean.*
sĕnātŏr, sĕnātōrĭs, m.	*senator.*
suŭs, ă, ŭm,	*his, their.*
virtūs, virtūtĭs, f.	*valor, virtue.*

Pronounce; translate; analyze;[1] parse.

1. Pŏpŭlus Caesărĕm[2] cōnsŭlĕm[2] creāvĭt.   2. Ancum Marcium rēgĕm pŏpŭlus creāvit.   3. Nunciat Ancum Marcium rēgĕm pŏpŭlum[3] creāvisse.[4]   4. Pŏpŭlus Rōmānus sĕnātōrēs pătrēs appellat.   5. Rōmānī suam[5] urbĕm Rōmam appellāvērunt.   6. Dumnŏrix, frătĕr[6] Divitiăci,[7] regnum in suā[5] cīvĭtātĕ occŭpāvit.   7. Helvētii cŭm proxĭmis cīvĭtātĭbŭs pācĕm et ămīcĭtiam confirmant.   8. Caesăr oppĭdum virtūtĕ[8] suōrum mīlĭtŭm expugnāvĭt.   9. Ex oppĭdo Gĕnāvā[6] pons[11] ad Helvētios pertĭnet (*extends*).   10. Aquītānĭă ā Garumnā[9] flūmĭnĕ ad Pȳrēnaeos[9] montes pertĭnet.   11. Lēgātiōnĭs prin-cĭpĕm Dumnorĭgĕm creāvērunt.   12. Belgae et Galli linguā[10] et lēgĭbŭs[10] diffĕrunt (*differ*).   13. Post mortĕm Caesărĭs.

Write in Latin.

1. After the death of Dumnorix.   2. After the death of his brother Divitiacus.   3. The Romans elected the man consul.   4. The Romans call their city Rome.   5. The Gauls will appoint Dumnorix chief.   6. He says that the Gauls will appoint Dumnorix chief.   7. Dumnorix will seize the royal power in his state.   8. We shall take the town by means of the soldiers' valor.[8]

¹ See Ln. XIII., Note 1.   ² See *58* and Examples.
³ See *53*.   ⁴ See Ln. XVII., Note 3.

⁵ When **suūs** refers to a noun in the Plural, as in sentence 5 it refers to **Rōmāni**, render it *their :* when it refers to a noun in the Singular, as in sentence 6 it refers to **Dumnŏrix**, render it *his, her,* or *its.* It generally refers to the subject of its clause.

⁶ See *25*.   ⁷ See *40*.
⁸ See *54*.   ⁹ See General Vocabulary.
¹⁰ See Ln. I., Note 5.   ¹¹ **pons, pontis,** m. *bridge.*

———∞◦≫◦∞———

LESSON XXII.

THIRD DECLENSION (*continued*).

59. A. & G. *Review* 44; 45; 46; 47; 48; 49, *including all Paradigms under these references :* A. & S. 105; 106, *a, b, d, e ;* 107, *and the decl. already learned :* B. 136 : B. & M. *all the Paradigms under* 88-97, III. : G. 48-50 : H. *all of* 61 : C. 26 to 1. — *nouns.*

60. Rules of Gender. A. & G. 65, *a–c :* A. & S. 118 : B. 140 : B. & M. *152; 159; 168 :* G. 40; 44; 47; 50; 57; 61, 1, 2 : H. 99; 105; 111 : C. 30.

VOCABULARY.

corpŭs,	**corpŏris,** n.	*body.*
crūs,	**crūris,** n.	*leg.*
flōs,	**flōris,** m.	*flower.*
frīgus,	**frīgŏris,** n.	*cold, frost.*
fūnŭs,	**fūnĕris,** n.	*funeral procession.*
gĕnŭs,	**gĕnĕris,** n.	*kind.*
jūs,	**jūris,** n.	*right, law.*
mōs,	**mōris,** m.	*custom, manner.*
ŏnŭs,	**ŏnĕris,** n.	*load, burden.*
ŏpŭs,	**ŏpĕris,** n.	*work.*
scĕlŭs,	**scĕlĕris,** n.	*crime, guilt.*
tempŭs,	**tempŏris,** n.	*time.*
vulnŭs,	**vulnĕris,** n.	*wound.*

Decline each noun, name its Stem, form its Nominative, and give its Rule of Gender.[1]

1. Jūs[2] belli; jūră pŏpŭli Rōmāni.   2. Gĕnŭs prŏeli;[3] multa gĕnĕră fūnĕrŭm.   3. Tempŏrĕ[4] pătrŭm; tempŏră ĕt mōrēs.   4. Vulnĕră mīlĭtŭm.   5. Flōrēs pulchri.[5]   6. Proptĕr frīgŏră.   7. In[6] rĕlĭquum tempŭs.   8. Mōrĕ ĕt exemplō pŏpŭli Rōmāni.   9. Mīlĭtēs multă vulnĕră accēpērunt (*have received*).   10. Scĕlĕră virōrum sunt (*are*) multa.   11. Crūră ĕqui sunt magna.   12. Corpŭs vĭri est (*is*) parvum.   13. Gĕnĕră flōrŭm sunt multa.   14. Nullum[7] ŏnŭs aliud.   15. Nulla ŏnĕră alia.   16. Onĕră multa ĕt magna.   17. Facta[9] mălă[8] scĕlĕră[9] appellāmus.   18. Rex jūră et mōrēs vĭris[10] dăbăt.[11]   19. Multa gĕnĕră frūmenti importābĭmus.   20. Dīcit Rōmānos multa gĕnĕră frūmenti importāre.[12]

Notes and Questions.

[1] All Exercises are to be pronounced and translated, whether the direction "pronounce; translate," is given or not.

[2] Which cases of *Neuter* nouns are alike in form? What is the Plural Ending of these cases?

[3] See *17*.   [4] See Ln. I., Note 5.

[5] How does **flōrēs pulchri** differ from **pulchri flōrēs**? (Ln. VI., Note 2.)

[6] In, *for*.

[7] Name the adjectives with Genitive in **īŭs** and Dative in **ī**. (*24*)

[8] **mălă** modifies **facta**.   [9] See *58*.

[10] See *39*.

[11] What does the Imperfect Tense denote? (*36*)

[12] See Ln. XVII.

—◦◦°◦◦°◦◦—

LESSON XXIII.

THIRD DECLENSION (*continued*).

61. A. & G. 51, *c*; 52; 53, *a–c*; 54; 55, *a–e*: A. & S. 108, *a, b*; 109, *a*: B. 130; 137, *a, b*, 1–2, Remark : B. & M. *all of* 98, I., and 99, II.; *100*: G. 58–61: H. 62, 1, 2; 63, 1; 64, 1; 65, 1–3: C. I. — *nouns*, pp. 25–27.

VOCABULARY.

Allobrŏgēs, Allobrŏgŭm, m.	*the Allobroges.*
ănĭmăl, ănĭmālĭs, n.	*animal.*
collĭs, collĭs, m.	*hill.*
crĕmŏ, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm,	*burn.*
fīnĭs, fīnĭs, m.	*limit;* pl. *territory.*
hostĭs, hostĭs, m. *and* f.	*enemy.*
✗ĭgnĭs, ĭgnĭs, m.	*fire.*
✗mărĕ, mărĭs, .n.	*sea.*
nāvĭs, nāvĭs, f.	*ship.*
nūbēs, nūbĭs, f.	*cloud.*
quĕ,[1] conj.	*and.*
rūpēs, rūpĭs, f.	*rock, cliff.*
terră, ae, f.	*earth, land.*
✗turrĭs, turrĭs, f.	*tower.*

[1] quĕ is appended to the second of the connected words : e. g. rūpĕs turrisquĕ, *cliff and tower.* Words thus appended are called *enclitics.*

Decline each noun, name its Stem, and form its Nominatives.

1. In nāvĭbŭs. 2. In[1] collĕ et in montĕ. 3. In hostĭum nŭmĕrō. 4. Gĕnĕră ănĭmālĭŭm multa sunt. 5. Terrā mărīquĕ.[2] 6. Vĭros ignī[3] crĕmant. 7. Allobrŏgēs vĭrum ignī crĕmant. 8. Nunciat Allobrŏgēs[4] vĭrum ignī crĕmāre. 9. In turrĭbŭs et in[1] rūpĭbus. 10. In nūbĭbŭs. 11. Intĕr fīnēs Helvĕtiōrum et Allobrŏgŭm[5] Rhŏdănus fluit (*flows*). 12. Helvĕtii pĕr angustias et fīnēs Sēquănōrum suas[6] cōpias trāduxĕrant (*had led across*). 13. Mons Jūra fīnēs Sēquănōrum ăb Helvētiis dīvĭdit (*separates*).

Write in Latin.

1. On[1] the cliffs. 2. Out of the ships. 3. Through the territory of the Aedui. 4. Into the territory of the Sequani. 5. On the hills and mountains. 6. In the number of animals. 7. Men will burn the tower with fire.[3] 8. He says that men will burn the tower with fire. 9. Many kinds of towers. 10. The dangers of land and sea.

[1] **in,** *on.*

[2] A. & G. **156,** *a:* A. & S. **563** (2): B. **330,** *a:* G. **477; 478; 479:**
H. **554,** I., 2 : C. **183,** 2.

[3] See **54.**   [4] See **53.**

[5] What does **Allobrŏgŭm** modify ?

[6] See Ln. XXI., Note 5.   To what noun does it refer ?

[7] What is the rule of gender for **mărĕ, rūpĕs, mīlĕs, nāvĭs, tempŭs,**
hŏnŏr, cĭvĭtăs, lēgātĭo ? (60). See H. **100,** 3, for **lēgātĭo.**

————oo❀oo————

LESSON XXIV.

THE VERB SUM.

62. Learn the entire conjugation of **sum.** A. & G. **119 :** A. & S.
215 : B. **71 :** B. & M. **277 :** G. **112 :** H. **204 :** C. **70.** -

63. What is an Irregular Verb ? A. & G. **137 :** A. & S. **239 :**
B. & M. **410 :** H. **289.** What are the Stems of **sŭm ?** What are the
Personal Endings ? What are the Principal Parts of **sum ?** Where
are the following forms made : **ĕrăm, est, fŭĕrunt, sīmŭs, ĕrunt,**
fŭĕrant, estŏ, fuĭssĕm, fŭĕrŏ ?

————oo❀oo————

LESSON XXV.

PREDICATE NOUN AND ADJECTIVE.

64. A. & G. **176,** *a, b ;* **183 ; 185 ; 186,** *b :* A. & S. **327–329 ;**
334 : B. **206,** Rule II. : B. & M. **666 :** G. **202 :** H. **362 ; 438,**
2 : C. **111.**

VOCABULARY.

Ărăr, Ărărĭs, acc. **Ărărĭm,** m.	*the Saône,* pronounced *Sōne.*
Dīvĭco, ŏnĭs, m.	*Divico.*
extrēmŭs, ă, ŭm,	*furthermost.*
hŏmŏ,[1] **ĭnĭs,** m. *and* f.	*man.*
impĕrātŏr, ŏrĭs, m.	*commander-in-chief, general.*

lĕgio, ōnĭs, f.	*legion.*
mŭlĭĕr, ĕrĭs, f.	*woman.*
obsĕs, ĭdĭs, m. *and* f.	*hostage.*
pŏtestās, ātĭs, f.	*power.*
testĭs, ĭs, m. *and* f.	*witness.*

Pronounce; translate; analyse; parse.

1. Oppĭdum est magnum.[2]   2. Anĭmăl fuĭt parvum.
3. Pŭtat suam sŏrōrĕm essĕ pulchram.[3]   4. Hŏmĭnēs fuērunt
aegri.   5. Sēquăni sōli ĕrŭnt lībĕri.   6. Cæsăr ĕrăt impĕrātŏr.
7. Mŭlĭĕr est bŏna.   8. Dīcĭt Sēquănos sōļos fŭtūros essĕ
lībĕros.   9. Estĕ,[4] O puĕri, bōni.   10. Ariovistus fuĭt rex
Germānōrum.   11. Divĭco dux Helvētiōrum fuĕrăt.   12. Le-
gātiōnĭs Divĭco princeps fuĭt.   13. Extrēmum oppĭdum Allo-
brŏgum est Gĕnēvă.   14. Pōpŭlus[5] Rōmānus est testĭs.
15. Ĕrăt in Galliă lĕgio ūnă.   16. Pars cĭtrā flūmĕn Arărĭm[6]
rĕlĭquă est.   17. Flūmĕn[7] est /Arăr quŏd (*which*) pĕr fīnēs
Aeduōrum et Sēquănōrum in Rhŏdănum influĭt (*flows*).
18. Mons Jūră[8] est inter Sēquănos ĕt Helvētios.   19. Prop-
ter frīgŏra frūmenta[9] in agris mātūra non ĕrant.   20. Aedui
Sēquănis[10] obsĭdēs dĕdērunt.

Notes and Questions.

[1] **hŏmo** means a *human being*, man or woman ; **vĭr** means *man, hero*,
never woman.

[2] **oppĭdum est magnum** may be rendered *the town is large ; it is a large
town ;* or *there is a large town :* the word *there* as used in the last rendering
has no equivalent in Latin.

[3] See Ln. XVII. and Examples.   [4] See **47.**

[5] **pŏpŭlus** takes a *Singular verb ; people,* its English equivalent, usually
takes a *Plural verb.*

[6] What is the rule of gender for **Arăr** ? (**6**)

[7] See **64.**   [8] See **25.**

[9] Translate **frŭmenta** as if it were Singular.

[10] See **39.**

LESSON XXVI.

THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

65. A. & G. **265**, *a*, *b* : A. & S. **472** ; **476** (2) : B. & M. *1161* : G. **247 - 249** : H. **196**, II., 1 - 4 : C. **201**.

EXAMPLES.

1. **Sī Liscus sit dux,** *if Liscus* SHOULD BE *leader;* or, *if Liscus* BE *leader.*
2. **Sī Liscus esset dux,** *if Liscus* WERE *leader.*
3. **Sī Liscus fuĕrit dux,** *if Liscus* SHOULD HAVE BEEN *leader;* or, *if Liscus* SHOULD BE *leader.*
4. **Sī Liscus fuisset dux,** *if Liscus* HAD BEEN *leader.*
5. **Sīmus dŭcēs,** LET US BE *leaders.*

VOCABULARY.

cŭpĭdĭtās, ātis, f.	*desire.*
dux, dŭcĭs, m. *and* f.	*leader, guide.*
Liscŭs, ī, m.	*Liscus.*
multĭtūdo, ĭnis, f.	*multitude.*
nōn, adv.	*not.*
ōrātio, ōnĭs, f.	*speech, oration.*
sī, conj.	*if.*
vectīgăl, ālĭs, n.	*tax, revenue.*

Conjugate and give a synopsis[1] of each Subjunctive ; parse the nouns and adjectives.

1. Sī[2] Caesar sit[3] consul.[4]　2. Sī Caesar esset consul. 3. Sī Caesar fuĕrit consul.　4. Sī Caesar fuisset consul. 5. Sīmus consŭles.　6. Sī frūmentum esset mātūrum.　7. Sī propter frīgŏra frūmentum in agris sit nōn[5] mātūrum.　8. Sī vectīgālia fuissent magna.　9. Sī vectīgālia essent parva. 10. Sī Divĭco princeps lēgātiōnis fuisset.　11. Sī nōn[5] bŏnus sis.　12. Sī ōrātiōnes Caesăris fuissent multae.　13. Sī multĭtūdo mīlĭtum sit magna.　14. Sī cŭpĭdĭtās regni esset magna.

15. Sī rex fuisses. 16. Mīlĭtes sīmus. 17. Sī mīles essem.
18. Sī sis impĕrātor.

Write in Latin.

1. If Ariovistus should be king. 2. If Ariovistus were
king. 3. If Ariovistus had been king. 4. Let us be kings.
5. Let us be good. 6. If the mountain were large. 7. If
the boys had been bad. 8. If we were not free. 9. If the
furthermost town had been Geneva. 10. If the corn had not
been ripe. 11. If Divitiacus were leader of the Helvetii.
12. If the danger had been great.

Notes.

[1] A Synopsis of the Subjunctive includes the First Person Singular of
each tense : e. g. sim, essem, fuĕrim, fuissem.

[2] sī is a *conditional conjunction ;* the sentence which it introduces is a
conditional sentence.

[3] Before translating the sentences observe carefully how each tense of the
Subjunctive is rendered in the EXAMPLES.

[4] See *64.*

[5] A. & G. *207* : A. & S. *74* (5) : B. *30* : B. & M. *460 :* G. *440*, 1, 2 :
H. *551* : C. *255.* What does nōn modify ?

————∘⦂⦂∘————

LESSON XXVII.

COMPOUNDS OF SUM. — DATIVE WITH COMPOUNDS.

66. Compounds of sŭm. A. & G. 137, *a :* A. & S. 215, *d :*
B. 109, I., *a :* B. & M. *279 ; 411 :* G. 113 ; 114 : H. 289 ; 290,
I., III. : C. 71.

67. Dative with Compounds. A. & G. 228 : A. & S. 377 (1) :
B. 242, RULE XXX. : B. & M *326 :* G. 346 : H. 386 : C. 154.

EXAMPLES.

1. Paucī[1] sŭperfuērunt, *few survived.*

2. Dux suīs mīlĭtĭbus (*67*) ădĕrat, *the leader* WAS ASSISTING *his
soldiers.*

3. **Caesar prŏvinciae (67) praefuit,** *Caesar* RULED OVER *the province.*

4. **Sī Liscus multis[1] prŏdesset,** *if Liscus* WERE USEFUL *to many.*

5. **Sī consĭlium dēfuisset,** *if counsel* HAD BEEN WANTING.

6. **Tĭtus lĕgiōni (67) praeĕrat,** *Titus* WAS IN COMMAND OF *the legion.*

VOCABULARY.

ăb-sŭm,	ăb-essĕ,	ăb-fui,	*be away, be absent, be distant.*
ăd-sŭm,	ăd-essĕ,	ăf[2]-fui,	*be present, assist.*
dē-sŭm,	dē-essĕ,	dē-fui,	*be wanting.*
hūmānĭtās, ātis, f.			*refinement, humanity.*
longissĭmē, adv.			*very far.*
paŭci,[1] ae, a,			*few.*
prae-sŭm,	prae-essĕ,	prae-fui,	*be over, rule over, be in command of.*
prŏ-sŭm,	prŏd-essĕ,	prŏ-fui,	*be for, be useful.*
sŭper-sŭm,	sŭper-essĕ,	sŭper-fui,	*be over, survive.*

Conjugate and give a synopsis of each verb; parse the nouns and adjectives.

1. Multi[1] sŭperfuērunt. 2. Multi[3] sŭpersŭmus. 3. Pauci sŭpĕrĕrĭmus. 4. Caesar suis mīlĭtĭbus[4] ădĕrit. 5. Sī Caesar suis mīlĭtĭbus nōn adsit.[5] 6. Consul urbi praeĕrat. 7. Lăbiēnus oppĭdo[6] Gĕnāvae[7] praeĕrit. 8. Consul lĕgiōni praeest. 9. Sī Caesar multis[1] prŏfuisset. 10. Multis prōsimus.[8] 11. Nōn deest consĭlium. 12. Consŭles[9] dēsŭmus. 13. Belgae a hūmānĭtāte prŏvinciae[10] longissĭme[11] absunt. 14. Sī deus[12] adsit.

Write in Latin.

1. Many[1] will survive. 2. Few[3] (of us) survive. 3. The consul will assist his soldiers. 4. If the consul should not assist his soldiers. 5. Let[8] us assist the soldiers. 6. Labiēnus was in command of the legion. 7. If Labiēnus were[13] in command of the legion. 8. If we consuls[9] had been wanting.

Notes.

¹ **pauci** and **multi**, like the corresponding English words *few* and *many*, are often used substantively, i. e. as nouns. Parse them, however, as adjectives modifying either the omitted subject of the verb, as in Example 1, or its omitted object, as in Example 4. **Pauci** is rarely used in the Singular.

² Observe that in **ad-sum** the d of ad becomes f before f.

² **multi** modifies **nos** (*we*), the omitted subject of **sŭpersŭmus** ; render, *many of us survive*.

⁴ See **67** and Example 2 ; translate as if it were an Accusative.

⁵ See Ln. XXVI., Example 1.   ⁶ See **67**.

⁷ See **25**.   ⁸ See Ln. XXVI., Example 5.

⁹ **consŭles** is an appositive to **nos** (*we*), the omitted subject of **dĕsŭmus**.

¹⁰ See **40**.   ¹¹ See Ln. XXVI., Note 5.

¹² See **20**.   ¹³ See Ln. XXVI., Example 2.

LESSON XXVIII.

CONJUGATION OF POSSUM. — USE OF THE INFINITIVE.

68. Possŭm. A. & G. **137,** *b :* A. & S. **216 :** B. **109,** I., *b :* B. & M. **412 :** G. **115 :** H. **290,** II., *including fine print :* C. **72.**

69. *Infinitive without Subject Accusative.* A. & G. **271 :** A. & S. **532 :** B. **315,** *c :* B. & M. **1133 :** G. **424 :** H. **533 :** C. **241.**

EXAMPLES.

1. **Milites pugnāre (69) possunt,** *the soldiers* ARE ABLE *to fight ;* or *the soldiers* CAN *fight.*

2. **Milites pugnāre pŏtĕrant,** *the soldiers* WERE ABLE *to fight ;* or *the soldiers* COULD *fight.*

3. **Milites pugnāre pŏtĕrunt,** *the soldiers* WILL BE ABLE *to fight.*

4. **Milites pugnāre pŏtuērunt,** *the soldiers* HAVE BEEN ABLE *to fight ;* or *the soldiers* COULD HAVE *fought.*

5. **Si milites pugnāre possint,** *if the soldiers* SHOULD BE ABLE *to fight.*

6. **Si milites pugnāre possent,** *if the soldiers* WERE ABLE *to fight.*

7. **Sī mīlĭtes pugnāre pŏtuĭssent,** *if the soldiers* HAD BEEN ABLE *to fight.*

8. **Dīcĭt mīlĭtes (53) pugnāre (69) potuĭssĕ (52),** *he says that the soldiers* WERE ABLE *to fight.*

Conjugate and give a synopsis[1] of each form of POSSŬM; parse the Infinitives.[2]

1. Consul oppĭdum expugnāre pŏtest.[3] 2. Consul oppĭdum expugnāre pŏtĕrăt. 3. Consul oppĭdum expugnāre pŏtĕrĭt. 4. Consul oppĭdum expugnāre pŏtuĭt. 5. Dīcĭt consŭlem[4] oppĭdum expugnāre pŏtuĭssĕ.[5] 6. Sī consul oppĭdum expugnāre possĭt. 7. Sī consul oppĭdum expugnāre possĕt. 8. Sī consul oppĭdum expugnāre pŏtuĭssĕt. 9. Pŏpŭlus Rōmānus Cassium[6] consŭlem[6] creāre non pŏtĕrĭt. 10. Tĭto[7] fīliam meam (*my*) in mātrĭmōnium dăre non possŭm. 11. Consŭli[8] adessĕ pŏtĕrĭs. 12. Mīlĭtes agros hostium vastāre pŏtĕrunt. 13. Amīcis prōdessĕ possŭmŭs. 14. Nēmo (*no one*) sĭne virtūte bonus essĕ pŏtest.

Notes and Questions.

[1] See LN. XIV., NOTE 1 and LN. XXVI., NOTE 1.

[2] See LN. XVII., NOTE 3.

[3] Observe carefully how each tense of **possŭm** is translated in the EXAMPLES. What two words unite to form **possŭm?** Which part of **pŏtis** is used? What does the final **t** become before **s?** What becomes of **f** in the Perfect Tenses?

[4] See *53.*   [5] See *52.*

[6] See *58.*   [7] See *39.*

[8] See *67.*

————oo◦◦◦oo————

LESSON XXIX.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD OF **AMO.**

70. Learn the Subjunctive Active of ămŏ. A. & G. **118,** ACTIVE VOICE, *for the Verb-Endings of the Subjunctive;* **128:**

A. & S. **213** (1); **222; 224, 4,** *b:* B. **72; 74,** a ; **75** : B. & M.
282: G. **119; 120** : H. **205; 243; 245** : C. p. 104 ; pp. 76, 77.

Observe that the *Stems* and *Personal Endings* are the same as those of
the Indicative.

EXAMPLES.

1. **Sī urbem occŭpēmus,** *if* WE SHOULD OCCUPY *the city.*
2. **Sī urbem occŭpārēmus,** *if* WE OCCUPIED *the city.*
3. **Sī urbem occŭpăvĕrīmus,** *if* WE SHOULD HAVE OCCUPIED
   the city; or *if* WE SHOULD OCCUPY *the city.*
4. **Sī urbem occŭpăvissēmus,** *if* WE HAD OCCUPIED *the city.*
5. **Ut**[1] **urbem occŭpēmus,** *that* WE MAY OCCUPY *the city.*
6. **Ut urbem occŭpārēmus,** *that* WE MIGHT OCCUPY *the city.* .
7. **Urbem occŭpēmus,** LET US OCCUPY *the city.*

Conjugate, analyze, and give a synopsis of each verb.

1. Sī Sēquăni Helvētios jŭvent.[2] 2. Sī Rōmāni Germānos
jŭvārent. 3. Sī rex Helvētios jŭvĕrit. 4. Sī Aquītāni Sē-
quănos jūvissent. 5. Ut[1] consul Helvētios jŭvet. 6. Ut
păter suos fīlios jŭvāret. 7. Allobrŏges jŭvēmus. 8. Pueros
vŏcēmus. 9. Concĭlium Gallōrum convŏcēmus. 10. Sī
Caesări[3] fīliam suam in mātrĭmōnium det. 11. Sī cum prox-
ĭmis cīvĭtātĭbus[4] pācem et ămīcĭtiam confirmes. 12. Ut mī-
lĭtes circum Rōmam hiĕmārent. 13. Ut pŏpŭlus Ariovistum[5]
rēgem[5] creāret. 14. Ut consul oppĭdum Gĕnāvam[6] occŭpāret.
15. Ut mīlĭtes Rōmāni agros Gallōrum vastent. 16. Ut suis
cōpiis[7] regna concĭliāret.

Write in Latin.

1. If we should love (our) friends. 2. If we loved (our)
friends. 3. If we had loved (our) friends. 4. That we may
harass the enemy. 5. That we might harass the enemy.
6. Let us love friends. 7. If you should import ripe corn.
8. If you had imported ripe corn. 9. Let us aid the boys.
10. Let us elect the man[5] senator.[5]

¹ **ut** in this Lesson is a *final conjunction* and is equivalent to *that, in order that.*

² Imitate the Examples in, translating the different tenses of the Subjunctive Mood. Define the Subjunctive Mood (*65*). Define the Indicative Mood (*26*). What tenses has the Subjunctive? The Indicative? Name the three Stems of **jŭvŏ.**

³ See *39.*

⁴ See *16.* Name the prepositions which are used with the Ablative.

⁵ See *58.*   ⁶ See *25.*

⁷ **suis cōpiis,** *with his troops.* See *54.*

LESSON XXX.

REVIEW OF AMO. — TWO ACCUSATIVES.

Review the entire Active Voice of **ămŏ.**

71. Two Accusatives. A. & G. 239, 2, REM.: A. & S. 394 (2): B. **217,** RULE IX.: B. & M. **784:** G. **333:** H. **374:** C. **127.**

EXAMPLES.

1. **Caesărem sententiam rŏgāvit,** *he asked Caesar (his) opinion.*
2. **Caesar Aeduos frūmentum flāgĭtāvit,** *Caesar demanded corn of the Aedui.*
3. **Rex pŏpŭlum sermōnem cēlāvit,** *the king concealed the conversation from the people.*

VOCABULARY.

cēlŏ,	ārĕ,	āvī,	ātŭm,	*conceal.*
commeŏ,	ārĕ,	āvī,	ātŭm,	*go back and forth.*
exspectŏ,	ārĕ,	āvī,	ātŭm,	*await, expect.*
flāgĭtŏ,	ārĕ,	āvī,	ātŭm,	*demand.*
grăvĭtĕr, adv.				*severely.*
mercātŏr, ōris, m.				*trader, merchant.*
mĭnĭmē, adv.				*least, by no means.*
rŏgŏ,	ārĕ,	āvī,	ātŭm,	*ask.*

saepĕ, adv.	*often.*
sententiă, ae, f.	*opinion.*
sermo, ōnĭs, m.	*discourse, conversation.*
vulnĕrŏ, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm,	*wound.*

Analyze[1] and parse.

1. Lăbiēnus suos[2] mīlĭtes[3] exspectābat.[4] 2. Galli mercā-tōres exspectāvēre.[5] 3. Tĭtus nunciat Gallos mercātōres ex-spectāvisse.[6] 4. Mīlĭtes Sēquănos grăvĭter vulnĕrāvērunt. 5. Caesar princĭpes Aeduōrum grăvĭter accūsat. 6. Dīcit Caesărem princĭpes Aeduōrum grăvĭter accūsāre. 7. Mercā-tōres ad[7] Belgas commeant.[7] 8. Mercātōres ăd Belgas nōn saepe commeant. 9. Mĭnĭme[8] ăd Belgas mercātōres saepe com-meant. 10. Commeāte,[9] mercātōres, ăd Belgas. 11. Consul Germānos cōpias flāgĭtābit. 12. Consul Gallos frūmentum flāgĭtat. 13. Sī consul Aeduos cōpias flāgĭtet. 14. Caesar consŭlem sententiam rŏgābit. 15. Dīcit Caesărem consŭlem sententiam rŏgātūrum essĕ. 16. Tĭtum sermōnem nōn cēlābo. 17. Sī Ariovistum sermōnem cēlāvissem. 18. Ut rēgem ser-mōnem cēlārem. 19. Aeduos frūmentum flāgĭtēmus.[10]

Notes and Questions.

[1] See Ln. XIII., Note 1.   [2] See Ln. VI., Note 1.
[3] See Ln. IV., Note 1.   [4] See Ln. XVIII., Note 3.
[5] What are the two uses of the Perfect Indicative ? (**43**)
[6] See Ln. XVII., Examples, Notes on the Examples, and Note 3.
[7] ad — commeant, *go-back-and-forth to,* may be rendered *visit.*
[8] mĭnĭme modifies saepe.
[9] See **47.**   [10] See Ln. XXIX., Example 7.

What Stems has each verb and how are they found ? Which tenses denote incomplete and which completed action ? What are the Personal Endings of the Indicative and Subjunctive Moods, Active Voice ? Of the Imperative ? What are the Endings of the Infinitives ? Of the Participles ? Which tenses of the Indicative are formed upon the Present Stem ? Which of the Subjunctive ? Which of each are formed upon the Perfect Stem ?

LESSON XXXI.

VERBS : PASSIVE VOICE OF **AMO.**

72. *Definition and Personal Endings of the Passive Voice.*
A. & G. **111**; **116**; **118**: A. & S. **193**; **213** (1): B. **44** ; **64**, *a*,
PASSIVE : B. & M. **262**, 2; **333**, PASSIVE VOICE : G. **205**; **111**:
H. **195**, II. ; **247**, PERSON, PASS., MEANING : C. **64**; p. 103.

73. Learn the Present, Imperfect, and Future Indicative Passive
of **ămŏ.** A. & G. **129**: A. & S. **223**: B. **74,** b : B. & M. **283:**
G. **121**: H. **206**: C. p. 78.

a. Observe that the Active and Passive Voices of these three tenses
differ in form only in the Personal Endings : e. g. ămā-**mŭs,** *we love;*
ămā-**mŭr,** *we* ARE *love*D : ămābĭ-**tĭs,** *you will love;* ămābĭ-**mĭnĭ,** *you
will* BE *love*D. The only exception is the Second Person Singular of
the Future, which, in the Active Voice, has **bĭ,** and in the Passive,
bĕ : e. g. ămā-**bĭ**-s, *you will love;* ămā-**bĕ**-rĭs or rĕ, *you will* BE *love*D.
It is a good practice to write both the Active and Passive Voices side
by side on the blackboard, and compare them with each other.

VOCABULARY.

appellŏ, ārĕ, āvĭ, ātŭm,	*name, call.*
Castĭcŭs, ĭ, m.	*Casticus.*
nostĕr, nostră, nostrŭm,	*our.*
occultŏ, ārĕ, āvĭ, ātŭm,	*hide, conceal.*

Conjugate the verbs; name their elements;[1] parse the nouns.

1. Oppĭda expugnābuntŭr. 2. Nostri agri vastābuntŭr.
3. Hŏmo igni[2] crĕmābĭtŭr. 4. Concĭlium Gallŏrum convŏcā-
bātŭr. 5. Nostrā linguā[3] Galli[4] appellantŭr. 6. Ariovistus
rex[4] atque amīcus appellābātŭr. 7. Lucius Cassius consul[5]
ămīcus[4] appellābĭtŭr. 8. Rex[4] appellābĕrĭs. 9. Divitiăcus
frāter[5] Dumnŏrĭgis ămīcus[4] pŏpŭli Rōmāni appellābātŭr.
10. Păter Castĭci pŏpŭli Rōmāni ămīcus appellābātŭr. 11. In
tantā multĭtūdĭne fŭga occultātŭr. 12. Orātiōne[6] Lisci Dum-
nŏrix Divitiăci frāter dēsignātŭr. 13. Dumnŏrix ab Aeduis[6]
accūsābātŭr. 14. A Caesăre[6] accūsābĭmĭnĭ.

Write in Latin.

1. The town will be stormed. 2. Our field will be laid waste. 3. The men will be burned with fire. 4. (In) our language they are called Sequani. 5. They will be called kings. 6. He was called a friend of the Roman people. 7. In so great a multitude our flight will be concealed. 8. The brothers of Dumnorix were accused by the Gauls. 9. Dumnorix is described by Caesar's speech.

Notes.

[1] See Ln. X., Note 4, and Ln. XII., Note 1.

[2] See *54*.   [3] See *54* and Ln. I., Note 5.

[4] See *64*.   [5] See *25*.

[6] With verbs in the Passive Voice *the agent,* i. e. the person by whom anything is done, is expressed by *the Ablative with* ā, **ăb** ; *the instrument,* i. e. the thing *by means of which* or *with which* anything is done, by *the Ablative without* a preposition : e. g. *He is overcome* BY THE SOLDIER, **a mīlĭte sŭpĕrātŭr**; *he is overcome* BY *the soldier's* WEAPONS, **tēlĭs mīlĭtĭs sŭpĕrātŭr.**

<center>—⚬o◦⦂⚬◦⦂o◦—</center>

LESSON XXXII.

VERBS : PASSIVE VOICE OF **AMO** (*continued*).

74. Learn the Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future Perfect Indicative Passive of **ămŏ.** A. & G. **118; 129: A. & S. 211; 214; 223:** B. **76: B. & M. 281,** 6, 4; **283:** G. **122: H. 200: C. p. 79.**

VOCABULARY.

arx, arcĭs, f.	*citadel.*
comportŏ, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm,	*collect.*
ēnunciŏ, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm,	*divulge, report.*
ĕquĕs, ĭtĭs, m.	*horseman, cavalryman.*
praetŏr, ŏrĭs, m.	*praetor.*

Conjugate and give a Synopsis[1] of each verb in the Indicative Passive; parse the nouns and adjectives.

1. Frūmentum ab Aeduis[2] comportātum[3] est.   2. Magna cōpia frūmenti ab Aeduis comportātă ĕrat.   3. Obsĭdes Helvētiis[4] dătĭ[3] ĕrant.   4. Multi obsĭdes Helvētiis ā́ Sēquănis dătĭ ĕrant.   5. Nullae[5] arces expugnātaè[3] sunt.   6. Nostra consĭlia hostĭbus[4] ēnunciāta[3] sunt.   7. Nostra consĭlia hostĭbus ab Aeduis ēnunciāta ĕrant.   8. Caesar ā Rōmānis praetor[6] creātus[3] est.   9. Praetōres[6] creāti ĕrĭmus.   10. Nostri agri vastāti sunt.   11. Nostra oppĭda expugnāta sunt.   12. Tantă multĭtūdo ĕquĭtum sŭpĕrāta[3] est.   13. In tantā multĭtūdĭne ĕquĭtum nostra fŭga occultata est.   14. Cōpiae Caesăris ab Germānis ūno proelio[7] sŭpĕrātae sunt.   15. Equĭtes ā Caesăre grăvĭter[8] accūsāti sunt.

Write in Latin.

1. An abundance of corn has been collected.   2. The citadels will have been stormed.   3. The citadels had been stormed by the Romans.[2]   4. Caesar's plans have been reported to the Gauls[4] by the Germans.   5. Cassius had been elected praetor.[6]   6. A large multitude of cavalrymen has been overcome.   7. The troops of Cassius had been overcome in a single battle.[7]   8. The troops of Cassius have been overcome by the Germans.   9. We have been severely[8] censured by the consul.

Notes and Questions.

[1] See Ln. XIV., Note 1.   [2] See Ln. XXXI., Note 6.

[3] Observe that the Participle, like the predicate adjective (*64*), agrees with the subject of the verb in *gender, number,* and *case.*

[4] See *39.*   [5] See *24.*

[6] See *64.* What was a praetor? (See Gen. Vy.) What was a consul? How often were these officers elected?

[7] ūno proelio, *in a single battle.* See *54.*

[8] See Ln. XXVI., Note 5.

LESSON XXXIII.

VERBS : PASSIVE VOICE OF **AMO** (*continued*).

75. Learn the Imperative, Infinitives, and Participles of the Passive Voice of **ămŏ**. A. & G. **116**, b; **118**; **129**: A. & S. **223**, page 114 : B. **64**, *b; * **65**; **66**; **74**, b ; **76**: B. & M. *283;* G. **121**; **122**: H. **247**, 3; **248**; **206**: C. pp. 79, 80.

Conjugate the Imperatives ; name the Stem and Ending of each verb; parse the Infinitives and Nouns.

1. Accūsārĕ, accūsămĭnī.[1] 2. Accūsātŏr, accūsantŏr. 3. Jŭvārĕ, jŭvātŏr. 4. Vŏcămĭnī, vŏcantŏr. 5. Dīcit suum frātrem creātŭm essĕ.[2] 6. Dīcit frātrem Divitĭăci dēsignātŭm essĕ. 7. Dīcit montem ā Lăbiēnō occŭpārī. 8. Nĕgăt[3] nostrōs agrōs vastātōs essĕ. 9. Nĕgăt cŭm proxĭmis cīvĭtātĭbus pācem confirmātăm essĕ. 10. Dīcit regnum ĭn cīvĭtāte suā occŭpātŭm essĕ. 11. Nunciăt Caesărem creātŭm essĕ consŭlem. 12. Nunciăt Cassium praetōrem creātŭm essĕ. 13. Dīcit Ariovistum ā Rōmānis rēgem appellātum essĕ.

Notes and Questions.

[1] How is the Imperative used ? (**47**)

[2] **creātum essĕ**, *has been elected*, or *was elected.* See Ln. XVII., References to the Grammar, Examples, and Notes on the Examples.

[3] **nĕgăt**, *he says not ;* lit. *he denies :* He says our fields have not been *laid waste.*

Upon which Stem are the different tenses of the Indicative Active formed ? Of the Indicative Passive ? The Imperative Active and Passive ? The Infinitives Active and Passive ? The Participles Active and Passive ?

How many Participles has a transitive verb ? A. & G. **109,** *a* : A. & S. **206**: B. **54**; **55**: B. & M. *269:* H. **200**, IV., Note : C. **65**, 4.

LESSON XXXIV.

VERBS : PASSIVE VOICE OF **AMO** (*continued*).

76. Learn the Subjunctive Passive of ămŏ. A. & G. **129**: A. & S. **223**: B. **74,** b ; **76**: B. & M. **283:** G. **121; 122**: H. **206**: C. pp. 78, 79.

EXAMPLES.

1. **Sĭ hŏmo crĕmētŭr,** *if the man* SHOULD BE BURNED.
2. **Sĭ hŏmo crĕmārētŭr,** *if the man* WERE BEING BURNED.
3. **Sĭ hŏmo crĕmātŭs sĭt,** *if the man* SHOULD HAVE BEEN BURNED ; or *if the man* SHOULD BE BURNED.
4. **Sĭ hŏmo crĕmātŭs essĕt,** *if the man* HAD BEEN BURNED ; or *if the man* WERE BURNED.
5. **Sĭ sententiam rŏgētŭr,** *if* HE SHOULD BE ASKED (*his*) *opinion.*

Conjugate and give a synopsis of each verb.

1. Sĭ Caesar sententiam[1] rŏgātŭs essĕt.　2. Sĭ sententiam rŏgātŭs sĭm.　3. Si sententiam rŏgārērĭs.　4. Sĭ crĕmātī essēmŭs.　5. Sĭ Ariovistus rex[2] creātŭs essĕt.　6. Sĭ mīles vulnĕrētŭr.　7. Sĭ nọn vulnĕrātŭs essēs.　8. Sĭ Ariovistus amīcus pŏpŭli Rōmāni appellārētŭr.　9. Sĭ obsĭdes Rōmānis[3] ā Gallis[4] nōn dentŭr.　10. Sĭ obsĭdes Germānis ăb Helvētiis nōn dătī essent.　11. Sĭ cōpia frūmenti importētŭr.　12. Sĭ cōpia frūmenti nōn importātă essĕt.　13. Sĭ Divitiăcus ā pŏpŭlo Rōmānọ rex appellātŭs essĕt.　14. Sĭ rex atque ămīcus ā Helvētiis appellārērĭs.　15. Sĭ sententiam rŏgātī essēmus.　16. Sĭ sententiam rŏgātī sītĭs.　17. Sĭ rēges creātī essētĭs.　18. Sĭ consŭles creātī essēmŭs.

Write in Latin.

1. If I should be asked (my) opinion.　2. If you were asked (your) opinion.　3. If you had been burned.　4. If Cassius had been elected consul.　5. If Cassius had not been called a friend of the Gauls.　6. If hostages should be given

to the Germans by the consul.   7. If the soldiers had not
been wounded.   8. If we had not been wounded.   9. If an
abundance of corn were being imported.   10. If you should
be elected consul.

Notes and Questions.

[1] See **71.**   [2] See **64.**

[3] See **39.**

[4] Which prepositions are used with the Ablative ? (**16**) How is *the agent*
of a verb in the Passive Voice expressed in Latin ? (Ln. XXXI., Note 6.)
How is *the instrument* expressed ?   What is meant by *the agent ?* By *the
instrument ?*

————∘◦°●°◦∘————

LESSON XXXV.

DEPONENT VERBS : FIRST CONJUGATION.

77. Definition. A. & G. 135 ÷ A. & S. **195 :** B. **46 :** B. & M.
804 : G. **211 :** H. **195,** II. 2 : C. **79.**

78. Learn the entire Deponent Verb of the First Conjugation.
A. & G. *page* **106,** mīror : A. & S. **223,** mīror : B. **93,** cōnor ; **55,**
second sentence : B. & M. *806, second part ; 807 ;* G. **141 ; 142 :**
H. **231 ; 232 :** C. p. 99.

VOCABULARY.

cōnor,	ārī,	ātŭs sŭm,[1]	*attempt, try.*
glōrīor,	ārī,	ātŭs sŭm,	*glory, boast.*
hortor,	ārī,	ātŭs sŭm,	*exhort, urge.*
laetor,	ārī,	ātŭs sŭm,	*rejoice, exult.*
mīror,	ārī,	ātŭs sŭm,	*admire, wonder at.*
mŏror,	ārī,	ātŭs sŭm,	*tarry, delay.*
văgor,	ārī,	ātŭs sŭm,	*wander about.*
pŏpŭlor,	ārī,	ātŭs sŭm,	*ravage, lay waste.*

[1] The *principal parts* of a deponent verb are the *Present Indicative, Pres-
ent Infinitive, Perfect Indicative ;* e. g. cōnor, cōnārī, cōnātŭs sŭm.

1. Cōnāmur, cōnābāmur, cōnābǐmur.   2. Glōriātus sum, glōriātus ĕram, glōriātus ĕro.   3. Sī hortētur, sī hortārētur. 4. Sī hortātus sis, sī hortātus esses.   5. Laetāre, laetāmǐni, laetēmur.[2]   6. Dīcit Caesărem laetātum essĕ.   7. Mirāri[3] nōn possǔmus.   8. Văgāri[3] cōnēmur.[2]   9. Văgāri nōn pŏtĕrǐmus. 10. Caesar ǎd[4] Rōmam mŏrātus est.   11. Helvētii agros Aeduōrum pŏpǔlābantur.   12. Ut văgārentur.[5]

Write in Latin.

1. You are exhorting, you were exhorting, you will exhort. 2. You tarried in the vicinity of Rome; you had tarried; you will have tarried.   3. If he should tarry, if he tarried.   4. If he had tarried near Rome.   5. Let us tarry in the vicinity of Geneva.   6. They can[6] not rejoice.   7. They could[6] not rejoice.   8. Let us try[2] to rejoice.

Notes.

[1] A complete Synopsis of cōnor, for example, is as follows : *Indicative,* cōnor, cōnābar, cōnābor, cōnātus sum, cōnātus ĕram, cōnātus ĕro; *Subjunctive,* cōner, cōnārer, cōnātus sim, cōnātus essem; *Imperative,* cōnāre, cōnātor ; *Infinitives,* cōnāri, cōnātus essĕ, cōnātūrus essĕ ; *Participles,* cōnans, cōnandus, cōnātus, cōnātūrus ; *Gerund,* cōnandi ; *Supines,* cōnātum, cōnātu.

[2] See Ln. XXIX., Example 7.   [3] See **69.**

[4] ǎd with the name of a town may often be rendered *near, in the vicinity of.*

[5] Render by the Imperfect Indicative.

[6] *Can* and *could* in these and similar sentences are equivalent to *are able, were able ;* translate them, therefore, by the proper tense of the Indicative of **possǔm,** and the principal verb by the Present Infinitive.

LESSON XXXVI.

ABLATIVE OF CAUSE. — COMPLEX AND COMPOUND SENTENCES.

79. Ablative of Cause. A. & G. **245**: A. & S. **404**: B. **257**, RULE XLII.: B. & M. *873*: G. **407**: H. **413**; **416**: C. **166**.

80. Complex and Compound Sentences. A. & G. **180**, *a–f*: A. & S. **311–314**, *a*: B. **288**, *a–f*: B. & M. *1407–1409: 1411:* G. **474**, 1–4 : H. **348**; **349**: C. **107**, 2, 3.

EXAMPLES.

1. **Pŭĕrī ĕquis¹ (79) laetantur,** *boys rejoice* IN HORSES.
2. **Helvētiī suā victōriā¹ (79) glōriābantur,** *the Helvetii were boasting* BECAUSE OF *their* VICTORY ; or *the Helvetii were glorying* IN *their* VICTORY.
3. **Orgetŏrix Castĭcum hortātur ŭt regnum occŭpet,²** *Orgetorix urges Casticus to seize the royal power.*
4. **Mīles nōn laetētur, sī vulnĕrētur,³** *the soldier would not rejoice, if he should be wounded.*
5. **Sī multī vulnĕrātī essent, nōn laetātī essēmus,** *if many had been wounded, we should not have rejoiced.*
6. **Ariovistus fuit rex ĕt Caesar fuit consul,⁴** *Ariovistus was king and Caesar was consul.*

Analyze the sentences and parse.

1. Impĕrātor mīlĭtĭbus bŏnis laetātur. 2. Rōmānī suā victōriā nōn glōriābantur. 3. Sēquănī victōriā suā nōn glōriābuntur. 4. Nĕgat⁵ Sēquănos victōriā glōriātūros essĕ. 5. Mīlĭtes hortābĭmur ŭt agros pŏpŭlentur. 6. Impĕrātor mīlĭtes suos hortātus est⁶ ŭt agros Gallōrum pŏpŭlentur. 7. Dumnŏrĭgem hortābor ŭt regnum ĭn⁷ suā cīvĭtāte occŭpet. 8. Sī ignī⁸ crĕmer, nōn laetēris. 9. Sī Cassius praetor⁹ creātus esset, laetātus essem. 10. Sī Caesar sermōnem¹⁰ mīlĭtes¹⁰ cēlet, laeter. 11. Sī dux mīlĭtĭbus¹¹ adesse¹² possit, laetentur. 12. Hortēmur¹³ Helvētios ŭt cŭm proxĭmis cīvĭtātĭbus pācem

ĕt ămīcĭtiam confirment.   13. Sī Caesar multos obsĭdes dĕdis-
set hostĭbus,[14] hostes laetāti essent.   14. Puer ĕrat mălus ĕt
puella ĕrat bŏna.   15. Consul ăbest ĕt praetor est aeger.[9]

Notes.

[1] In Examples 1 and 2 **ĕquis** and **victōriā** are the cause of the rejoicing
and boasting, and hence are in the Ablative in accordance with the rule
referred to in **79.**

[2] Example 3 is a *complex sentence*, because it is made up of a *principal
clause*, **Orgetŏrix Castĭcum hortātur**, and a *subordinate clause*, **ut reg-
num occŭpet.** Observe that **ut occŭpet** is rendered by the Infinitive *to
seize;* lit. *that he may seize.*

[3] Example 4 is a *complex sentence; principal clause*, **mīles non laetĕtur;**
subordinate clause, **sī vulnĕrētur: sī** and **ŭt** are *subordinate conjunctions;*
hence the clauses which they introduce are subordinate clauses.

[4] Example 6 is a *compound sentence*, because it is made up of clauses
which are independent of each other. Such clauses are called *coördinate
clauses;* and the conjunctions which connect them, *coördinate conjunctions.*

[5] See Ln. XXXIII., Note 3.   [6] **hortātus est,** *has urged.*

[7] See Ln. XIII., Note 5.   Which is this?

[8] See *54.*   [9] See *64.*

[10] See *71.*   [11] See *67.*

[12] See *69.*   [13] See Ln. XXIX., Ex. 7.

[14] See *39.*

LESSON XXXVII.

ADJECTIVES : THIRD DECLENSION.

81. A. & G. 84, lĕvĭs, ācĕr, b, *Case-Forms:* A. & S. 148–150;
152; 155 (1), (2): B. 156; 157, lĕvĭs: B. & M. *193,* Rules 1, 2 ;
196, II., mītĭs; *198,* ācĕr: G. 81; 82: H. 152; 153; 154, tris-
tĭs: C. 42; 43.

VOCABULARY.

ălăcĕr,[1] crĭs, crĕ,	*lively, eager.*
†brĕvĭs,[2] ĕ,	*short, brief.*
cĕlĕr,[1] cĕlĕrĭs, cĕlĕrĕ,	*swift.*

diffĭcĭlĭs,[2] ĕ,	*difficult, impracticable.*
ĕquestĕr,[1] **trĭs, trĕ,**	*of cavalry.*
făcĭlĭs,[2] ĕ,	*easy, practicable.*
fămĭlĭă, ae, f.	*household, family.*
fortĭs,[2] ĕ,	*brave, courageous, strong.*
ĭtĕr, ĭtĭnĕrĭs, n.	*journey, route, march.*
jūdĭcĭŭm, ī, n.	*trial.*
omnĭs,[2] ĕ,	*all, every.*
trĭstĭs,[2] ĕ,	*sad.*

[1] Declined like **ăcĕr.**
[2] Declined like **lĕvĭs, mĭtĭs, făcĭlĭs, trĭstĭs.**

Analyze and parse.

1. Ex omnī[1] Galliā.　2. Cŭm omnĭbŭs cōpiīs.　3. Pĕr omnēs urbēs.　4. Pĕr tōtăm[2] urbĕm.　5. Equī sunt cĕlĕrēs.[3] 6. Nĕgăt[4] ĕquōs essĕ cĕlĕrēs.　7. Sī ĕquĭtēs fuissent cĕlĕrēs, rex laetātŭs essĕt.[5]　8. Tempŭs est brĕvĕ.　9. Helvētiī oppĭdă suă omniă incendunt (*burn*).　10. Fŭĭt proeliŭm ĕquestrĕ. 11. Dīcĭt fŭtūrŭm essĕ proeliŭm ĕquestrĕ.　12. Sēquănī fuē-runt tristes.　13. Ĭtĕr[12] ĕrăt diffĭcĭlĕ.　14. Sī ĭtĕr sĭt făcĭlĕ, laetĕr.[6]　15. Pŭtŏ ĭtĕr essĕ făcĭlĕ.　16. Tĭtŭs Lăbiēnŭs lēgā-tŭs[7] suōs mīlĭtēs hortātŭr ŭt[9] fortēs sint.[9]　17. Orgĕtŏrix ăd jūdĭciŭm omnĕm suăm fămĭliam coēgĭt (*brought*).　18. Or-gĕtŏrix Helvētiōs hortātŭs est[13] ŭt[10] dē fīnĭbŭs suīs cŭm omnĭbŭs cōpiīs exīrent.[10]　19. Vĭrīs[11] fortĭbŭs laetŏr.

Notes.

[1] See Ln. VI., Note 1.　　[2] See *24.*
[3] See *64.*　　[4] Se Ln. XXXIII., Note 3.
[5] See Ln. XXXVI., Ex. 5.
[6] See Ln. XXVI., Ex. 1 and Ln. XXXVI., Ex. 4.
[7] See *25.*　　[9] See Ln. XXXVI., Ex. 3.
[10] **ŭt—exīrent,** *to go out.*　　[11] See *79.*
[12] See A. & G. *60, c.:* A. & S. *110* (4): B. **138:** B. & M. *104:* C. **29,** 10, exc. 2.
[13] **hortatus est:** *urged.*

LESSON XXXVIII.

ADJECTIVES : THIRD DECLENSION (continued).

82. A. & G. **85,** *a, b ;* **87,** *a, c :* A. & S. **154 ; 155** (3): B. *all of* **158 :** B. & M. *all of* **193 :** G. **83 ; 84 ; 85, 1–3 :** H. *all of* **155 – 158 ;** C. 45.

VOCABULARY.

audax, ācĭs,	*bold, audacious.*
condĭtio, ōnĭs, f.	*condition.*
contŭmēlĭă, ae, f.	*insult.*
dīvĕs, ĭtĭs,	*rich.*
fēlix, īcĭs,	*happy.*
flens, entĭs,	*weeping.*
implōrŏ, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm,	*beseech, implore.*
injūrĭă, ae, f.	*injury.*
mŭlĭĕr, ĕrĭs, f.	*woman.*
ŏriens, entĭs,	*rising.*
pār, părĭs,	*equal.*
princeps, ĭpĭs,	*first, chief.*
rĕcens, entĭs,	*recent.*
sōl, sōlĭs, m.	*sun.*
spectŏ, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm,	*look, front.*
vĕtŭs, ĕrĭs,	*old, ancient.*

Analyze and parse.

1. Vĕtĕrēs causae. 2. Vĕtŭs urbs[1] est Rōmă. 3. Mĕmŏrĭă vĕtĕrĭs contŭmeliae. 4. In părĕm condĭtiōnĕm servĭtūtĭs. 5. Rĕcentiŭm injūriārŭm mĕmŏrĭă. 6. Mŭlĭĕrēs ĕrant fēlīcēs. 7. Mŭlĭĕrēs flentēs Caesărĕm implōrābant. 8. Helvētiī flentes pācĕm pĕtiērunt (*sought*). 9. Hortēmŭr[2] mīlĭtēs ŭt[3] ălacrēs et audācēs sint.[3] 10. Belgae spectant ĭn[4] ŏrientĕm sōlĕm.[5] 11. Lēgātiōnĭs princĭpĕm[6] lŏcŭm[7] obtĭnēbant (*they held*). 12. Rōmānī dīvĭtēs fuērunt. 13. Germānī nōn părēs sunt nostrīs mīlĭtĭbŭs.[8]

Write in Latin.

1. There[9] will be a battle of cavalry.   2. Our soldiers are brave.   3. Let us exhort our soldiers to be brave.   4. Geneva is an old town.   5. All[10] are not happy.   6. Our leaders will be bold.   7. All cannot be[11] rich.   8. Weeping women will implore the consul.   9. Gauls are not equal to our cavalry-men.

Notes.

[1] See *64*.   [2] See Ln. XXIX., Ex. 7.

[3] How is the Subjunctive with **ut** to be translated after verbs signifying *ask, command, exhort, persuade, please, strive, urge?* Answ. By the Present Infinitive. See Ln. XXXVI., Ex. 3.

[4] **in**, *towards.*

[5] See B. **135:** B. & M. *121:* H. **60:**C.**37, 5.**

[6] **prīncĭpĕm** is here used as an adjective ; it is often a noun.

[7] How is **lŏcŭs** declined in the Plural ? See Vr., Ln. VIII.

[8] **mīlĭtĭbŭs** is a *Dative.*   [9] See Ln. XXV., Note 2, *last part.*

[10] **omnes**, like the English *all*, is often used substantively.

[11] *cannot be*, **essĕ nŏn possunt.**

LESSON XXXIX.

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.

83. A. & G. **89,** *a:* A. & S. **163–166:** B. **161; 162; 163,** *a:* B. & M. *214–218:* G. **86; 88,** 1: H. **160–162; 163,** 1: C. **47; 48.**

84. Declension of Comparatives. A. & G. **86,** *a:* A. & S. **152, mītĭor:** B. **157,** Remark : B. & M. *197:* G. **87:** H. **154,** Note 1 : C. **44.**

VOCABULARY.

altŭs, ă, ŭm,	*high, deep.*
fortūnă, ae, f.	*fortune.*
grăvĭs, ĕ,	*heavy, grievous.*
lātŭs, ă, ŭm,	*broad, wide.*

longē, adv.	*by far.*
mĭsĕr, mĭsĕră, mĭsĕrŭm,	*wretched, pitiable.*
nōbĭlĭs, ĕ,	*well-known, noble.*
pŏtens, entĭs,	*powerful.*
quăm, adv.	*than.*
ūtĭlĭs, ĕ,	*useful.*

Compare and decline the adjectives.

1. Jūră est mons[1] altissĭmŭs.[2] 2. Caesăr dīcĭt Jūrăm essĕ montĕm altissĭmŭm. 3. Rhēnŭs est flūmĕn lātissĭmŭm ĕt altissĭmŭm. 4. Hŏmĭnī[3] nōbĭlissĭmō āc[6] pŏtentissĭmō ădĕrăm. 5. Omnĭŭm[4] fortissĭmī sunt Belgae. 6. Apŭd Helvētĭōs longē nōbĭlissĭmŭs ĕt ditissĭmŭs[10] fuĭt Orgĕtŏrix. 7. Pĕr trēs (*three*) pŏtentissĭmōs pŏpŭlōs tōtīŭs Galliae. 8. Nostrae fīliae pulcherrĭmae sunt. 9. Mīlĭtēs hortēmŭr ŭt fortiōrēs sint.[5] 10. Sī tempŭs fuissĕt brĕvĭŭs, nōn laetātŭs essĕm. 11. Mīlĭtēs fuērunt Caesărī ūtĭlissĭmī. 12. Dīcĭt essĕ mĭsĕriōrĕm grăviōremquĕ[7] fortūnăm[8] Sēquănōrūm quăm[9] rĕlĭquōrŭm Gallōrŭm.

Write in Latin.

1. The bravest soldiers. 2. The most beautiful women. 3. The broadest rivers. 4. The highest mountains. 5. Divitiacus was the noblest of all. 6. Friends are most useful to a man. 7. Caesar says (that) the Rhine is a very deep river. 8. The fortune of the Gauls was more grievous than (that) of the Germans. 9. Let us urge the boys to be very brave.

Notes.

[1] What is the gender of **mons**? Of **Jūră**?

[2] *Superlatives* may sometimes be rendered by the *positive* with *very*: e. g. **mons altissĭmŭs,** *a very high mountain.* They are adjectives of the First and Second Declensions.

[3] *67.*   [4] See LN. XXXVIII., NOTE 10.

[5] See LN. XXXVIII., NOTE 3.   [6] See LN. XX., NOTE 1.

[7] What is the difference in force of **ĕt, quĕ,** and **atquĕ**? See LN. XXIII.,

NOTE 2. What are appended words called? See VY., LN. XXIII., NOTE on quĕ, last part.

⁸ fortūnăm is subject of essĕ.

⁹ When quăm signifying *than* is immediately followed by a Genitive, supply in translation *that*: e. g. quăm Rōmānōrŭm, *than* THAT *of the Romans.*

¹⁰ See General Vocabulary under dĭvĕs and dĭs.

———∘o:⊙:o∘———

LESSON XL.

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES (*continued*).

85. A. & G. **89**, *b–e;* **90**; **91**, *a, b:* A. & S. **167–170** (1), (2); **173**: B. **163**, *b–d;* **164**, *a, b:* B. & M. *219–222:* G. **88**, 2–4; **89**, REMARKS 1, 2: H. **163**, 2, 3; **165**; **166**; **169**, 1, 2; **170**: C. **49**.

VOCABULARY.

Alpēs, ĭŭm, f.	*the Alps.*
cĭtĕrĭŏr, cĭtĕrĭŭs,	*hither.*
extrā, prep. w. acc.	*without, beyond.*
ĭnfĕrĭŏr, ĭnfĕrĭŭs,	*lower.*
prīmŭs, ă, ŭm,	*first.*
Sĕgūsĭānī, ōrŭm, m.	*the Segusiani.*
Sēquănŭs, ă, ŭm,	*of the Sequani.*
sŭpĕrĭŏr, sŭpĕrĭŭs,	*higher, upper.*
ultĕrĭŏr, ultĕrĭŭs,	*farther.*

Translate and parse.

1. Mājŏr¹ multĭtūdo Germānōrum² Rhēnum transībăt (*was crossing*). 2. Carrōrum² maxĭmus nŭmĕrus. 3. Cum maxĭmo mīlĭtum² nŭmĕro. 4. Belgae pertĭnent (*extend*) ăd ĭnfĕrĭōrem partem flūmĭnis Rhēni. 5. Galli lŏca sŭpĕrĭōra occŭpant. 6. Lăbiēnus summum montem³ occŭpāvit. 7. Summus mons ā Lăbiēno⁴ occŭpātus est. 8. Nĕgat summum montem ā Lăbiēno occŭpātum essĕ. 9. Mīlĭtes hortābĭmur

ut summum montem occŭpent.   10. Sī Lăbiēnus summum
montem occŭpet, Caesar sit[5] fēlīcissĭmus.   11. Itĕr pĕr prō-
vinciam est făcĭlius.[6]   12. Ager Sēquănus ĕrat optĭmus[7] tōtīus
Galliae.   13. Caesar ĭn Galliam ultĕriōrem pĕr Alpes con-
tendit (*hastens*).   14. Cĭtĕriōris prōvinciae extrēmum oppĭ-
dum.   15. Segūsiāni sunt extrā prōvinciam prīmi.

Write in Latin.

1. A very large number of horses.   2. A larger number
of cavalrymen.   3. To the upper part of the Rhone.   4. The
soldiers will occupy the top of the mountain.   5. The top
of the mountain will be occupied by the soldiers.   6. The
route through our province is most practicable.   7. I think
(that) the route through the Alps is by far the most practica-
ble.   8. Let us occupy the top of the mountain.

Notes.

[1] In parsing adjectives hereafter give their comparison, if they can be
compared.

[2] Notice the different positions of the Genitive ; what is the difference in
force ?   See Ln. III., Note 3.

[3] **summum montem**, *the top of the mountain.*

[4] See Ln. XXXI., Note 6.   [5] **sit**, *would be.*

[6] Name the adjectives which form their Superlatives like **făcĭlis.**

[7] **optĭmus**, sc. **ăger.**

———o○꘎○o———

LESSON XLI.

DATIVE WITH ADJECTIVES.

**86. *Dative with Adjectives.* A. & G. 234: A. & S. 388:
B. 245, Rule XXXIII.: B. & M. *860:* G. 356: H. 391: C. 162,
1, 2.**

EXAMPLES.

1. **Belgae sunt proxĭmī Germānīs,** *the Belgae are nearest* TO THE GERMANS.
2. **Castrīs ĭdōneŭs lŏcŭs est,** *the place is suitable* FOR A CAMP.
3. **Deō sĭmĭlĭs est,** *he is like* A GOD.

VOCABULARY.

aetăs, ātĭs, f.	*age.*
ămīcŭs, ă, ŭm,	*friendly.*
commūnĭs, ĕ,	*common.*
ĭdōneŭs, ă, ŭm,	*fit, suitable.*
ĭnĭmīcŭs, ă, ŭm,	*unfriendly, hostile.*
pătrĭă, ae, f.	*native land, fatherland.*
pĕrīcŭlōsŭs, ă, ŭm,	*dangerous.*
sĭmĭlĭs, ĕ,	*like, similar.*
sŏlŭm, ī, n.	*ground, soil.*

Analyze and parse.

1. Aquĭtānī sunt proxĭmī prōvinciae.   2. Aquĭtānī sunt prŏpiōrēs prōvinciae quăm Ităliae.   3. Gĕnāvă est oppĭdŭm proxĭmŭm Helvētiōrŭm fīnĭbŭs.   4. Extrēmŭm oppĭdŭm Allobrŏgŭm est proxĭmumquĕ Helvētiōrŭm fīnĭbŭs Gĕnāvă. 5. Castrīs nōn ĭdōneŭs omnĭs lŏcŭs est.   6. Nĕgăt castrīs ĭdōneŭm omnĕm lŏcŭm essĕ.   7. Sī castrīs ĭdōneŭs lŏcŭs sĭt, mīlĭtēs laetentŭr.[1]   8. Nōn ĕgŏ sŭm ĭdōneŭs armīs.   9. Sī ĕgŏ fuissĕm ĭdōneŭs armīs, laetātŭs essĕm.   10. Dumnŏrix Helvētiīs ĕrăt ămīcŭs.   11. Dux ĭnĭmīciŏr Dumnŏrĭgī fuĭt quăm Caesărī.   12. Mātrī puellă est sĭmĭlĭs.   13. Nōn omnĭs puĕr est sĭmĭlĭs pătrī.   14. Omnī aetātī mors est commūnĭs 15. Pătriae sŏlŭm omnĭbŭs cārŭm est.   16. Pŏpŭlō Rōmānō pĕrīcŭlōsŭm est proeliŭm.   17. Omnī urbī lēgĕs sunt ūtĭlēs. 18. Impĕrātŏr suōs mīlĭtēs hortātŭr ŭt fortēs sint[2] et urbī Rōmae ūtĭlēs.

1. He says (that) the Aquitani are nearest to the province.
2. Ocelum was the furthermost town of the hither province
and nearest to the Alps.   3. If the place had been suitable
for a camp, we should have rejoiced.³   4. Let us urge the
soldiers to be² useful to (their) fatherland.   5. The lieutenant
was most friendly to the soldiers.   6. The daughter is more
like (her) father than (her) mother.   7. I do⁴ not think (that)
the battle will be dangerous to the city.

Notes.

¹ See Ln. XXXVI., Ex. 4.   What kind of a sentence is this ? (*80*)
² See Ln. XXXVI., Ex. 3.
³ See Ln. XXXVI., Ex. 5.
⁴ See Ln. X., Note 5.

——∘∘⦂⊙⦂∘⦁——

LESSON XLII.

ADVERBS.

87. Definition.   A. & G. 25, *f:* A. & S. 74 (5) : B. **30** : B. &
M. *460:* G. 15, IV., 1 : H. 303 : C. **98**.

88. Derivation.   A. & G. 148, *a, b:* A. & S. 174, *b:* B. **199**,
b, c: B. & M. *591; 592; 595:* G. **90**, 1–4 : H. **304**, I.–IV. :
C. **99**, 1, 2.

89. Classification.   A. & G 149, *a–g:* B. 175, *a–f*, Re-
mark : B. & M. *461*, 1–6 : H. 305, Note 2, 1)–4) : C. **99**, 3.

90. Comparison.   A. & G. 92 : A. & S. 175 : B. 174, *a–c:*
B. & M. *462; 463:* G. **91** : H. **306** : C. 52.

91. Syntax.   A. & G. 207 : A. & S. 557 : B. **327**, Rule
LXXIX. : B. & M. *996:* G. 440, 2 : H. 551 : C. **255**.

VOCABULARY.

ācrĭtĕr, adv.	*sharply, fiercely.*
audactĕr, adv.	*boldly, courageously.*
cĕlĕrĭtĕr, adv.	*quickly, immediately.*
făcĭlĕ, adv.	*easily, readily.*
fortĭtĕr, adv.	*bravely, valiantly.*
grăvĭtĕr, adv.	*heavily, severely.*
lībĕrē, adv.	*freely, unreservedly.*
quā, adv.	*where.*

Parse the adverbs and adjectives.

1. Belgae fortĭtĕr[1] pugnāvērunt. 2. Sī mīlĭtēs fortĭŭs pŭgnĕnt, impĕrātŏr laetētŭr. 3. Rōmānī nōn ācrĭŭs pugnābunt quăm Gallī.[2] 4. Germānī Helvētiōs făcĭlĕ[3] sŭpĕrābunt. 5. Gallī ā Caesărĕ nōn făcillĭmē sŭpĕrātī sunt. 6. Nunciăt Gallōs ā Caesărĕ nōn făcillĭmē sŭpĕrātōs essĕ. 7. Caesăr Dumnŏrĭgĕm grăvissĭmē accūsāvĭt. 8. Caesăr cĕlĕrĭtĕr concĭlĭŭm dīmittĭt (*dismisses*). 9. Liscŭs dīcĭt lībĕrĭŭs[4] atquĕ[5] audācĭŭs. 10. Quā[6] mĭnĭmă altĭtūdo flūmĭnĭs ĕrăt. 11. Jūmentōrŭm ĕt carrōrŭm quăm[7] maxĭmŭm nŭmĕrŭm coëmĕrĕ[8] (*to purchase*). 12. Hostēs quăm fortissĭmē pugnābant. 13. Helvētiī Rōmānīs[9] quăm ămīcissĭmī fuērunt. 14. Sŏlŭm pătriae cīvī quăm cārissĭmŭm est.

Notes.

[1] *Form for parsing an adverb.* — fortĭtĕr is an adverb of manner (*89*); derived from the adjective fortis (*88*); compared fortĭtĕr, fortĭŭs, fortissĭmē (*90*); of the positive degree and modifies pugnāvērunt (*91*).

[2] What is the construction of Gallī ?

[3] A. & G. 148, *d:* A. & S. 174 *c:* B. 174, *d:* B. & M. *596:* G. *90*, 4 : H. *304*, I., 3, 1) : C. *99*, 1, *a.*

[4] lībĕrē has no Superlative.   [5] See Ln. XXIII., Note 2.

[6] As a rule only those adverbs are compared which are derived from adjectives.

[7] quăm modifying a Superlative *strengthens* it : e. g. quăm maxĭmum, *as large as possible ;* quăm fortissĭmē, *as bravely as possible.*

[3] (··) is the mark of *Diaeresis ;* when placed over the second of two vowels which regularly form a diphthong, it shows that they are to be *separated* in pronunciation : e. g. **coëmere** has four syllables ; **coemere** would have only three.

[9] See *86.*

———◦◦○◦○◦◦———

LESSON XLIII.

VERBS : SECOND CONJUGATION : ACTIVE VOICE.

92. Learn the entire Active Voice of the Second Conjugation. A. & G. **130** : A. & S. **222** : B. **79**; **80** : B. &. M. *288:* G. **123**; **124** : H. **207** : C. **75**. See *27, 28, 37, 45, 49, 50 of this book.*

VOCABULARY.

mŏneŏ,[1]	ērĕ, uī, ĭtŭm,	*advise.*
hăbeŏ,	ērĕ, uī, ĭtŭm,	*have.*
prŏhĭbeŏ,	ērĕ, uī, ĭtŭm,	*restrain, keep from.*

[1] Most verbs of the Second Conjugation form their Perfect and Supine like **mŏneŏ.** For the *principal parts* let **ērĕ, uī, ĭtŭm** take the place of final **eŏ** : e. g. hăbeŏ, hăbērĕ, hăbuī, hăbĭtŭm.

Conjugate and give a complete synopsis[1] of each verb; name its elements.

1. Mŏnēbātĭs, mŏnēbĭtĭs, mŏnuistĭs. 2. Sī mŏneāmŭs,[2] sī mŏnērēmŭs, sī mŏnuĭssēmŭs. 3. Mŏnē, mŏnētĕ, mŏnentŏ. 4. Mŏnens, mŏnĭtūrŭs. 5. Mŏnērĕ, mŏnuissĕ, mŏnĭtūrŭs essĕ. 6. Ut ĕquōs hăbeāmŭs.[2] 7. Ut rex urbēs multās ĕt[3] magnās hăbeăt. 8. Multă castră hăbēbĭmŭs. 9. Lēgātŭs multōs mīlĭtēs hăbuĕrĭt.[4] 10. Hăbētŏ, hăbētōtĕ.[5] 11. Hăbens, hăbĭtūrŭs. 12. Hăbērĕ, hăbuissĕ, hăbĭtūrŭs essĕ. 13. Sī Helvētiōs ĭtĭnĕrĕ[6] prŏhĭbeant. 14. Sī Helvētiōs ĭtĭnĕrĕ prŏhĭbuissent. 15. Helvētiōs ĭtĭnĕrĕ prŏhĭbeāmŭs.[7] 16. Ĭtĭnĕrĕ Helvētiōs prŏhĭbērĕ[8] cōnantŭr. 17. Ĭtĭnĕrĕ hostēs prŏhĭbēbĭmŭs. 18. Mīlĭtēs ĭtĭnĕrĕ hŏstēs prŏhĭbērĕ cōnābuntŭr. 19. Sī ĭtĭnĕrĕ mīlĭtēs prŏhĭbuissēmŭs. 20. Lēgātī nostrōs vĭrōs mŏnuērunt.

Write in Latin.

1. You have, you were having, you will have had.   2. If
you should have, if you had, if you had had.   3. Have ye,
he shall have, they shall have.   4. To restrain, to have re-
strained, to be about to restrain.   5. If we should keep the
soldiers from the town.   6. If we shall have kept the soldiers
from the town.   7. Let us keep the enemy from the town.
8. We shall attempt to keep the enemy from the town.

Notes and Questions.

¹ See Ln. XXXV., Note 1.   ² See Ln. XXIX., Examples.

³ See Ln. VI., Note 5.

⁴ Define the use of the Future Perfect Tense. (*43*)

⁵ Define the use of the Imperative Mood. (*47*)

⁶ Itĭnĕrĕ is an *Ablative of Separation.*   A. & G. **243:** A. & S. **413:** B.
256, Rule XLI.: B. & M. **916:** G. **388:** H. **413: 414:** C. **177.**

⁷ See Ln. XXIX., Ex. 7.   ⁸ See **69.**

What are the Personal Endings of the Indicative and Subjunctive Moods,
Active Voice ?   Of the Imperative ?   Of the Infinitives and Participles ?
How are the different Stems of a verb found ? (*38, 45, 50*)   What two
uses has the Perfect Indicative ? (*43*)

——∘∘°∘°∘∘——

LESSON XLIV.

ADDITIONAL EXERCISES.

93. Accusative of Time.   A. & G. **256:** A. & S. **423:** B.
220, Rule XI.: B. & M. **950:** G. **337:** H. **379:** C. **129,** 1.   This
answers the question, *How long ?*

VOCABULARY.

dēleŏ,	ērĕ, ēvī,	ētŭm,	*destroy.*
dŏcĕŏ,	ērĕ, uī,	doctŭm,	*teach.*
✗jŭbĕŏ,	ērĕ, jussī,	jussŭm,	*command, order.*
✗mănĕŏ,	ērĕ, mansī,	mansŭm,	*stay, remain.*

mŏveŏ,	ērĕ, mŏvī, mōtŭm,		*move, remove.*
obtĭneŏ,	ērĕ, uī,	obtentŭm,	*hold, obtain.*
possessiŏ, ōnĭs, f.			*possession.*
vīcŭs, ī, m.			*village.*

Analyse and parse.

1. Germāni multos vīcos dēlēvĕrant.   2. Aliud[1] ĭter hă-bēbant nullum.   3. Quăm[2] plūrĭmas cīvĭtātes hăbēbant.
4. Allobrŏges trans Rhŏdănum vīcos possessiōnesquĕ[3] hăbē-bant.   5. Puĕros[4] littĕras[4] dŏceāmus.   6. Dīcĭt mātrem[5] fīlias littĕras dŏcēre.   7. In Galliā ultĕriōre multos annos[6] mănēbĭmus.   8. Caesar sĕnātōrem hortātur ŭt[7] ĭn castris multos menses maneat.[7]   9. Regnum ĭn Sēquănis multos annos obtĭnuĕrat.   10. Divĭco lēgātiōnis lŏcum princĭpem obtĭnēbat.
11. Sī ĭmpĕrātor castra mŏveat, mīlĭtēs fortius[8] pugnent.
12. Castra[9] movēre[10] cĕlĕrius nōn pŏtuērunt.[11]   13. Itĭnĕrĕ[12] Helvētios prŏhĭbēre nōn pŏtĕrunt.[11]   14. Helvētii suis fīnĭbus Germānos prŏhĭbēbant.   15. Proxĭmum[13] ĭter ĭn ultĕriōrem Galliam pĕr Alpes est.   16. Sĕd ĭn summo jŭgo duas (*two*) lĕgiōnes,[14] quas (*which*) ĭn Galliā cĭtĕriōre proxĭme conscrip-sĕrat (*he had enlisted*), ĕt omnia auxĭlia[14] collŏcāri[15] jussit.

Notes and Questions.

[1] Which adjectives have their Genitive in **īŭs** and Dative in **ī**? (*24*)

[2] See LN. XLII., NOTE 7.   [3] See LN. XXIII., VY., NOTE.

[4] See *71*.   [5] See *53*.

[6] See *93*.

[7] How is ut — **măneat** to be translated? See LN. XXXVIII., NOTE 3.

[8] From what adjective is **fortĭter** derived?

[9] What does **castra** signify in the Singular?

[10] See *69*.

[11] How do **pŏtuĕrunt** and **pŏtĕrunt** differ from each other?

[12] See LN. XLIII., NOTE 6.   [13] proxĭmum, *shortest.*

[14] lĕgiōnes and auxĭlia are subjects of collŏcāri. (*53*)

[15] collŏcāri (*to be stationed*) with its subjects is object of jussit.   (*52*)

LESSON XLV.

VERBS: SECOND CONJUGATION: PASSIVE VOICE.

n the entire Passive Voice of the Second Conjugation.
): A. & S. 223: B. 79; 80: B. & M. *289:* G. 125;
·3: C. 75.

`, a, of this book.

VOCABULARY.

contĭnĕŏ, ērĕ, uī, contentŭm,	*hem in, bound.*
dĭtio, ōnĭs, f.	*dominion, power.*
ŏceănŭs, ī, m.	*ocean.*
răpĭnă, ae, f.	*plundering.*
servĭtus, ūtĭs, f.	*slavery.*
tĕneŏ, ērĕ, uī, tentŭm,	*hold, keep.*
undĭquĕ, adv.	*on all sides.*

Give a complete synopsis of each verb and parse.

1. Una pars contĭnētur[1] Gărumnā[2] flūmĭne,[3] Oceăno, fīnĭbus Belgārum. 2. Undĭquĕ lŏci nātūrā[4] Helvētii contĭnentur. 3. Summus mons[5] ā Tĭto Lăbiēno tĕnēbātur. 4. Nunciat summum montem ā hostĭbus tentum essĕ. 5. Sī summus mons ā hostĭbus teneātur, nostri mīlĭtĕs quăm acerrĭme[6] pugnent. 6. Aeduī ĭn servĭtūte atquĕ ĭn dĭtiōne Germānōrum tenti sunt. 7. Caesar mĕmŏriā tĕnēbat. 8. Hostis ā Caesăre răpīnis[7] prŏhĭbēbātur. 9. Summus mons ā hostĭbus tĕnēri nōn pŏtest.[8] 10. Galli tĕnēri ĭn servĭtūte nōn pŏtĕrant.[8] 11. Obsĭdes multos annos ĭn servĭtūte tĕnēbantur. 12. Sī multos annos ĭn servĭtūte tenti essēmus, nōn fēlīces fuissēmus.

Write in Latin.

1. The top[5] of the mountain will be held by Caesar. 2. The top of the mountain could[8] not be held by Caesar. 3. He says (that) the top of the mountain was held by the Germans.

4. If Cassius should keep in memory.   5. The Germans are hemmed in on all sides by the character of their country. 6. The Germans will be kept from plundering by the Romans. 7. They were held in slavery many years.[9]

Notes and Questions.

[1] Define the Passive Voice ? **(72)** What are the Personal Endings of the Passive Voice ? Name the three Stems of **contineo**. On which Stem are the Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future Perfect Passive formed ?

[2] See **54**.   [3] See **25**.

[4] lŏci nătūrā, *by the character of their country.*

[5] summus mons, *the top of the mountain;* lit., *the highest mountain.*

[6] From acrĭter ; from what adjective is acrĭter derived ?

[7] răpĭnis ; translate by the Singular ; see LN. XLIII., NOTE 6.

[8] When **possum** governs a Passive Infinitive render it by *can,* if in the *Present Tense ;* by *could,* if in a *Past Tense ;* e. g. tĕnēri pŏtĕst, *can be held ;* tĕnēri pŏtĕrat, *could be held.*

[9] See **93**.

LESSON XLVI.

DEPONENT VERBS : SECOND CONJUGATION.

95. Learn the entire Deponent Verb of the Second Conjugation. A. & G. **135** : A. & S. **223,** use **moneor** for model : B. **46 ; 55 ; 93** : B. & M. **304 ; 308 :** G. **211 ; 143 ; 144 :** H. **231,** 1–3 ; NOTE under **232 :** C. p. 99.

VOCABULARY.

intueor, ērī, intuĭtŭs sŭm,[1]	*look at.*
nē, adv.	*not,* used with the Subjunctive and Imperative.
nē, conj.	*that not;* after verbs of fearing, *that ;* used with the Subjunctive.
polliceor, ērī, pollĭcĭtŭs sŭm,	*promise.*
vĕreor, ērī, vĕrĭtŭs sŭm,	*fear.*

Conjugate and give a synopsis of each verb.

1. Aedui frūmentum pollĭcentur.[2]   2. Aeduī frūmentŭm
publĭce pollĭcĭti ĕrant.   3. Vĕreor nē Aedui Rōmānis[3] frū-
mentum pollĭceantur.[4]   4. Nē[5] frūmentum pollĭceāmur.[6]   5. Sī
Aedui frūmentum mātūrum pollĭcĭti essent, Caesar fēlix fuis-
set.   6. Rōmāni nōn hostem verentur sĕd angustias itinĕris.
7. Nē Divitiăci anĭmum offendĕret (*he should offend*) vĕrēbā-
tur.   8. Nunciat[7] Sēquănos terram intuēri.   9. Nĕgat[8] Rō-
mānos hostem vĕrĭtos essĕ.   10. Sōlem intuēri nōn possŭmŭs.
11. Nē sōlem intueāmur.   12. Vērēbāmur nē hostes agros
nostros pŏpŭlārentur.   13. Vĕrēmur nē hostes agros nostros
pŏpŭlentur.   14. Vĕrēmĭni nē hostes agros vestros pŏpŭlentur.
15. Rōmānis frūmentum nōn pollĭcĭti sŭmus.   16. Rōmāni
Helvētiis obsĭdes nōn pollĭcēbuntur.

Write in Latin.

1. We were exhorting and promising.   2. They have
promised ripe corn.   3. He says that they[9] have promised
ripe corn.   4. He fears that the Romans will promise[4] corn to
our enemies.[3]   5. Let us not promise corn to the Gauls.
6. Let us not look at the men.   7. Let us not fear the diffi-
culties of the route.   8. I fear that the route will be[4] dan-
gerous.

Notes and Questions.

[1] See LN. XXXV., VY., 1.   [2] Define a Deponent Verb. (77)
What Participles do Deponent Verbs have ?   What Infinitives ?
[3] See *39*.

[4] When the *Present Subjunctive* depends upon a *verb of fearing* which
is in the Present Tense, render it by the *Future Indicative :* nē Aedui pol-
lĭceantur, *that the Aedui will promise.*

[5] nē is here an adverb.   [8] See LN. XXXIII., NOTE 3.
[6] See LN. XXIX., EXAMPLE 7.   [9] *they,* eos.
[7] What is the object of nunciat ?

LESSON XLVII.

FOURTH DECLENSION.

96. A. & G. **68 ; 69 :** A. & S. **126 ; 127 :** B. **142 ; 143,** REM. **2 :**
B. & M. **137 :** G. **67 ; 68 :** H. **116, 1, 2 ; 118, (1) :** C. **34.**

97. *Declension of* dŏmŭs. A. & G. **70,** *f :* A. & S. **130 :** B.
143, REM. **8 :** B. & M. **144 :** G. **67, 2 :** H. **119 :** C. **34, 1.**

VOCABULARY.

adventŭs, ūs, m.	*arrival, approach.*
commŏveo, ērĕ, commōvi, commōtum,	*move, disturb.*
conspectŭs, ūs, m.	*sight ; view.*
cornū, ūs, n.	*horn ;* of an army, *wing.*
dextĕr, dextră, dextrŭm,	*right.*
dŏmŭs, ūs, f.	*house ;* dŏmī, *at home.*
ĕquĭtātŭs, ūs, m.	*cavalry.*
exercĭtŭs, ūs, m.	*army.*
impĕtŭs, ūs, m.	*attack.*
paenĕ, adv.	*almost.*
sempĕr, adv.	*always.*
sustĭneŏ, ērĕ, uī, sustentŭm,	*sustain, withstand.*

Parse the nouns and verbs.

1. Dē Caesăris adventū.[1]   2. Helvētii Caesărĭs adventū[2]
commōti sunt.   3. In conspectū hostium.   4. Omnium[3] ex
conspectū.   5. Paenĕ ĭn conspectū exercĭtūs nostrī[4] agri vas-
tantur.   6. Cŭm ĕquĭtātū Helvētiōrum.   7. Magnum nŭ-
mĕrum ĕquĭtātūs sempĕr hăbēbat.   8. Equĭtātŭs sustinēbat
hostium impĕtŭm.   9. Lăbiēnus exercĭtuī[5] Rōmāno prae-
fuit.   10. Hostes impĕtūs mīlĭtum sustĭnēre nōn pŏtuērunt.
11. Equĭtātŭm omnem praemittit (*he sends forward*) quī[6]
impĕtŭm hostium sustĭneat.[6]   12. Nē hostium adventū
commŏveāmur.   13. A dextro cornū ; ad dextrum cornū.
14. Caesar dŏmi fuit.   15. Sēquăni ĭtĭnĕrĕ[7] exercĭtum nos-
trum prŏhĭbēre cōnantur.

[1] See **16.** How many declensions are there in Latin, and how distinguished from one another ? **(8)** What is the *Stem-Ending* of each ? What are the *Case-Endings* of the Fourth Declension ?

[2] See **79.**   [3] See Ln. XXXVIII., Note 10.

[4] **nostri** modifies **exercĭtŭs.**

[5] See **67.**

[6] **qui — sustĭneat,** *to withstand.*

[7] See Ln. XLIII., Note 6.

———o○○○○———

LESSON XLVIII.

FIFTH DECLENSION.

98. A. & G. Note; **72; 73; 74,** *d:* A. & S. **132,** *a;* **133** (2), (3): B. **144,** Note ; **145,** Rem. 1, 2 : B. & M. *all of* **146; 147:** G. **69,** Remarks 1, 2 ; **70 :** H. **120,** 1, 2; **122; 123 :** C. **35.**

VOCABULARY.

commeātŭs, ūs, m.	*supplies, provisions.*
compăro, āre, āvī, ātŭm,	*prepare.*
dĭēs, dĭēī, m.	*day.*
fĭdēs, fĭdĕī, f.	*faith, pledge, promise.*
pernĭcĭēs, pernĭcĭēī, f.	*ruin, destruction.*
prŏfectĭo, ōnĭs, f.	*departure.*
rēs, rĕī, f.	*thing, affair.*
spēs, spĕī, f.	*hope, expectation.*

Analyze and parse.

1. Cŭm pernĭciē[1] exercĭtūs.   2. Ad suam pernĭcĭĕm. 3. Uno diē.   4. Diem dīcunt (*they appoint*).   5. Sĭnĕ spē. 6. In mĕlĭōrem[2] spĕm.   7. Magnam ĭn spĕm.   8. Magnas spēs habēmus.   9. Rēs Helvētiis[3] enunciāta est.   10. Pŭtat rēs Helvētiis enunciātas essĕ.   11. Omnes rēs ăd prŏfectĭōnem compărătae sunt.   12. Caesar paucos dĭēs[4] ăd[5] Vĕsontiōnem commeātūs causā[6] mŏrātur.   13. Caesar Gallis

fĭdĕm dăbit.   14. Vĕr̦eor nē Caesar Helvētiis fĭdĕm det.[7]
15. Sī Caesar Germānis fĭdĕm det, Rōmāni nōn laetentur.
16. Caesar Divitiăco[8] maxĭmam fĭdĕm hăbēbat.   17. Ger-
mānis parvam hăbet fĭdĕm.   18. Caesări fĭdĕm hăbeāmus.[9]

Write in Latin.

1. The affair will be reported to the Romans.   2. He says
(that) the affair has been reported to the Romans.   3. We
had great expectations.   4. We shall prepare all things for the
departure.   5. With the ruin of many cities.   6. We shall delay
many days near[5] Rome for the sake of provisions.   7. We
fear that the leader will give[7] a pledge to the Romans.   8. We
have the greatest confidence in[8] the Helvetii.   9. They have
very little[10] confidence in the Germans.

Notes and Questions.

[1] What is the Stem of **pernĭciĕs, diĕs, spĕs, fĭdĕs**?   When is the final
Stem-Vowel short?   What are the Case-Endings of the Fifth Declension?
Which nouns are complete in the Plural?

   [2] See *84.*   [3] See *39.*

   [4] See *93.*   [5] See LN. XXXV., NOTE 4.

   [6] See General Vocabulary under **causā.**

   [7] See LN. XLVI., NOTE 4.

   [8] **Divitiăco — fĭdem hăbēbat,** *had — confidence* IN *Divitiacus;* lit., *had
confidence* TO *Divitiacus.*   See *39.*

   [9] See LN. XXIX., EX. 7.   [10] See LN. XXXIX., NOTE 2.

———∞∞—————

LESSON XLIX.

VERBS : THIRD CONJUGATION : ACTIVE VOICE.

99. Learn the entire Active Voice of the Third Conjugation.
A. & G. **131**: A. & S. **222 rĕgo**: B. **87; 88**: B. & M. *292:* G.
131; 132: H. **209; 241–248**: C. **76.**

a. The Imperative and Present Indicative have a connecting vowel between the Stem and Personal Ending; this connecting vowel is **u** before **n**, elsewhere **ĭ.** The First Person Singular Present Indicative has the termination **ŏ**; the Second Person Singular Present Imperative, the termination **ĕ.**

b. The Imperfect Indicative has a connecting vowel (**ē**) between the Stem and Tense-Sign; the Present Participle and Present Infinitive, a connecting vowel (**e**) between the Stem and Ending.

c. The Future Indicative has a connecting vowel between the Stem and Personal Ending; this is **a** in the First Singular, elsewhere **e.**

VOCABULARY.

contendŏ,	ĕrĕ,	contendī,	contentŭm,	*hasten, march rapidly.*
dīmittŏ,	ĕrĕ,	dīmīsī,	dīmissŭm,	*dismiss.*
gĕrŏ,	ĕrĕ,	gessī,	gestŭm,	*carry, carry on.*
mittŏ,	ĕrĕ,	mīsī,	missŭm,	*send.*
tollŏ,	ĕrĕ,	sustŭlī,	sublātŭm,	*lift, take away.*

Conjugate and give a synopsis of each verb; name its elements; parse the nouns and adjectives.

1. Caesar ĭn Ităliam magnis ĭtĭnĕrĭbus[1] contendĭt. 2. Caesar ăd hostes contendĭt ĕquĭtātumquĕ omnem mittĭt.[2] 3. Caesărem hortēmŭr ŭt ăd hostes contendăt. 4. Helvētii lēgātos ăd Caesărem mittunt. 5. Helvētii exercĭtum Rōmānum sŭb jŭgum[3] mīsērunt. 6. Nunciat Helvētios exercĭtum Rōmānum sŭb jŭgum mīsissĕ. 7. Impĕrātor cĕlĕrĭtĕr concĭlium dīmittit. 8. Consul spem fŭgae tollēbăt. 9. Tollĕ, consul, spem fŭgae. 10. Belgae cŭm Germānis continentĕr bellum gessērunt. 11. Sī omnes rēs ăd prŏfectiōnem compărātae sint, ĭn Galliam ultĕriōrem contendāmŭs. 12. Vĕrēmur ŭt[4] rex cŭm hostĭbus bellum gĕrăt.[5]

Write in Latin.

1. Let us hasten into farther Gaul. 2. Let us urge the lieutenant to hasten into hither Gaul. 3. The Romans carried on war with the Gauls many years.[6] 4. The Sequani had sent our army under the yoke. 5. The king will have taken

away the hope of flight.   6. The king had taken away the hope of flight.   7. He thinks that the king has taken away the hope of flight.

¹ **magnis ĭtĭnĕrĭbus,** *by long marches.* See *54.*

² Name the Stems of **mittŏ.** What are the Future Endings of the Third Conjugation ?   Of the First and Second ?   What is the sign of the Imperfect Indicative ?

³ When was an army "sent under a yoke," and why ?   See General Vocabulary under **jŭgum.**

⁴ **ut** after verbs of *fearing* is to be rendered *that not.*

⁵ See Ln. XLVI., Note 4.

⁶ What question does "many years" answer ? (*93*)

————oo°̤o°̤oo————

LESSON L.

VERBS : PASSIVE VOICE : THIRD CONJUGATION.

100. Learn the entire Passive Voice of the Third Conjugation. A. & G. **131** : A. & S. **223 rĕgor** : B. **87 ; 88** : B. & M. *293 :* G. **133 ; 134** : H. **210** : C. **76.**

See also **73, a,** of this book, observing that in the Third Conjugation the exception is the Second Person Singular of the *Present* Indicative instead of the Future.

VOCABULARY.

cingŏ,	ĕrĕ,	cinxī,	cinctŭm,	*surround, encircle.*
dēlĭgŏ,	ĕrĕ,	dēlēgī,	dēlectŭm,	*select, choose.*
dīcŏ,	ĕrĕ,	dixī,	dictŭm,	*say, tell.*
dūcŏ,	ĕrĕ,	duxī,	ductŭm,	*lead, draw.*
vincŏ,	ĕrĕ,	vīcī,	victŭm,	*conquer.*

Conjugate and give a synopsis of each verb.

1. Exercĭtus Rōmānus ăb Helvētiis sŭb jŭgum missŭs est.¹ 2. Orgētŏrix dēlĭgĭtŭr.¹ 3. Cassius lēgātus² dēlĭgētŭr. 4. Vix singŭli carri dūcēbantŭr. 5. Vix singŭli carri pĕr angustias

ducti ĕrant. 6. Paenĕ tōtum oppĭdum flūmĭne³ cingĭtŭr. 7. Nē ăb hostĭbus³ vincāmur. 8. Sī ăb hostĭbus victī essēmus, victoriā⁴ glōriātī essent.⁵ 9. Sī Caesar exercĭtui⁶ praesit, nōn vincāmĭnī. 10. Nōn impĕrātor² dēlĭgēris. 11. Carri pĕr angustias dūcī nōn possunt.⁷ 12. Germāni ā Rōmānis vincī nōn pŏtĕrant.⁷ 13. Urbs cingĭtur; urbs cingētur. 14. Castra vallo¹⁰ cincta sunt. 15. Sī castra vallo cingantur, nōn vincāmus. 16. Sī Caesar impĕrātor dēlĭgātur, omnes laetentur.

<div align="center">

Write in Latin.

</div>

1. The Helvetii had been sent under a yoke. 2. Caesar said (that) the Gauls had been sent under a yoke. 3. The wagons will be drawn with difficulty one by one. 4. Almost the entire town was surrounded by a river.³ 5. We shall not be conquered by the enemy.³ 6. We fear that you will be conquered³ by the Germans. 7. As brave soldiers as possible⁹ will be selected. 8. The best (men) have been selected. 9. We fear that our soldiers will be sent under a yoke. 10. You fear that¹¹ Titus will not¹¹ send the enemy under a yoke. 11. We fear that Caesar will not select the bravest soldiers. 12. We shall select as many soldiers as possible. 13. If the general should select the bravest men, all would rejoice. 14. Let us select as brave soldiers as possible.

<div align="center">

Notes and Questions.

</div>

¹ What are the Personal Endings of the Passive Voice ? (72) What are the Future Endings of the Third Conjugation, Passive Voice ? Of the First and Second Conjugations, Passive Voice ? Which verbs have a Passive Voice ? Ans. *Transitive Verbs,* i. e. verbs which in the Active Voice take a direct object. (34)

² See *64.*

⁴ See *79* and Ex. 2.

⁶ See *67.*

⁸ See Ln. XLVI., Note 4.

¹⁰ See *54.*

³ See Ln. XXXI., Note 6.

⁵ See Ln. XXXVI., Ex. 5.

⁷ See Ln. XLV., Note 8.

⁹ See Ln. XLII., Note 7.

¹¹ See Ln. XLIX., Note 4.

LESSON LI.

VERBS : FOURTH CONJUGATION.

101. Learn the entire conjugation of **audiō**, Active and Passive. A. & G. **132** : A. & S. **222; 223** : B. **83; 84** : B. & M. *800; 801:* G. **135–138** : H. **211; 212** : C. **78.**

a. The Third Person Plural of the Present Indicative and Future Imperative has the connecting vowel **u** : e. g. audi-**u**-nt, audi-**u**-nto ; see also **99,** b and c.

VOCABULARY

audiŏ,	īrĕ,	īvī,	ītŭm,	*hear.*
con-vĕniŏ,	īrĕ,	vēnī,	ventŭm,	*come together, assemble.*
mūniŏ,	īrĕ,	īvī,	ītŭm,	*fortify.*
per-vĕniŏ,	īrĕ,	vēnī,	ventŭm,	*come to, arrive.*
vĕniŏ,	īrĕ,	vēnī,	ventŭm,	*come.*

Conjugate and give a synopsis of each verb.

1. Puĕri multas res audiunt.   2. Multae res ā puĕris audiuntŭr.   3. Mīlĭtes impĕrātōrem audient.   4. Impĕrātor ā mīlĭtĭbus audiētŭr.   5. Belgae tōtŭm oppĭdum mūnivērunt.[1] 6. Tōtum oppĭdum ā Belgis mūnitŭm est. • 7. Sī castra ā mīlĭtĭbus mūnită essent, hostes nōn vīcissent.   8. Mūniāmŭs urbem Rōmam.   9. Caesar ĭn Galliam cĭtĕriōrem vēnĭt.[2] 10. Vēnī, vīdī,[3] vīcī.[3]   11. Ad rīpam Rhŏdăni omnes convĕniunt.   12. Mīlĭtes hortātŭr ŭt ād rīpam Rhŏdăni convĕniant.   13. In fīnes Gallōrum pervēnērunt, ŭbi (*where*) proptĕr vulnĕra mīlitum paucos dies[4] mōrātī sunt.   14. Helvētii ĭn Aeduōrum fīnes pervēnĕrant[5] ĕt agros pŏpŭlābantŭr.[6]

Write in Latin.

1. The soldiers had heard many things. · 2. Many things are heard by the soldiers.   3. The ambassador will be heard.

4. The Romans came into farther Gaul. 5. They fortified Geneva, a walled town. 6. Let us fortify many towns. 7. We came, we saw, we conquered. 8. The bravest soldiers have assembled on the bank of the Rhine.

Notes and Questions.

[1] What other Ending has the Perfect Indicative Active, Third Plural ?

[2] How does **vēnĭt** differ from **vĕnĭt** in meaning ?

[3] **vīdī** from **vĭdĕŏ**; **vīcī** from **vincŏ**.

[4] See **93.**

[5] How does the Pluperfect Indicative represent the action ? (**42**)

[6] How does the Imperfect Indicative represent the action ? (**36**)

[7] How many conjugations are there, and how distinguished from one another ?

----oo;o;oo----

LESSON LII.

THIRD CONJUGATION : VERBS IN **IO.**

102. Learn the entire conjugation, Active and Passive, of **căpĭŏ.** A. & G. **131**, page 100 : A. & S. **222; 223** : B. **92** : B. & M. **294-297:** G. **139; 140** : H. **217-219** : C. **77.**

VOCABULARY.

căpĭŏ,	capĕrĕ,	cēpī,	captŭm,	*take, capture.*
cŭpĭŏ,	cŭpĕrĕ,	cŭpīvī,	cŭpītŭm,	*desire.*
făcĭŏ,	făcĕrĕ,	fēcī,	factŭm,	*make, do;* **ĭtĕr făcĕrĕ,** *to march.*
fŏdĭŏ,	fŏdĕrĕ,	fōdī,	fossŭm,	*dig.*
fŭgĭŏ,	fŭgĕrĕ,	fūgī,	fŭgĭtŭm,	*flee.*
jăcĭŏ,	jăcĕrĕ,	jēcī,	jactŭm,	*throw, hurl.*
răpĭŏ,	răpĕrĕ,	răpuī,	raptŭm,	*seize, plunder.*

Conjugate and give a synopsis of each verb.

1. Rōmānī multa oppĭda cēpērunt. 2. Multa oppĭda ā Rōmānis captă sunt. 3. Helvētiī magnas possessiōnes cŭpient.

4. Magnae possessiōnes ăb Helvētiis cŭpientŭr.   5. Nostri
mīlĭtes tēla ĭn hostes jăcĭēbant.[1]   6. Germāni castra Rōmā-
nōrum răpuērunt.   7. Germāni magnam fossam fōdĕrant.
8. Fossas multas ĕt magnas fōdĕrĭmŭs.   9. Fŭgĭtĕ,[2] mīlĭtes,[3]
ĭn urbem.   10. Dux nunciat hostes[4] oppĭdum captūrōs[5] essĕ.
11. Lēgātus dixit oppĭdum ā mīlĭtĭbus captŭm essĕ.[6]   12. Una
pars ĭnĭtium ā flūmĭne Rhŏdăno căpĭt.   13. Lēgātus vĕrētŭr
nē lŏcus ex internĕcĭōne exercĭtūs nōmen căpĭăt.[7]   14. Helvētii
pĕr prōvinciam nōstram ĭter făcĭēbant.   15. Helvētii pĕr
agrum Sēquănorum ĭter ĭn Aeduōrum fīnes făcient.   16. Iter
faciāmŭs ĭn fīnes Germānōrum.   17. Lēgātus mīlĭtes hŏrtā-
bātŭr quō ĭter cĕlĕrius[9] făcĕrent.[8]   18. Mīlĭtes ĭter cĕlĕrĭus
făcĕre nōn possunt.

Notes.

[1] Change sentences 5, 6, 7 into the Passive form ; compare sentences 3
and 4.

[2] See **47.**   [3] See LN. V., NOTE 5.

[4] See **53.**

[5] Why **captūrōs** and not **captūrŭs ?**

[6] **captŭm esse,** *had been taken.*

[7] See LN. XLVI., NOTE 4.   [8] See LN. XXXVIII., NOTE 3.

[9] **cĕlĕrius,** an *adjective,* modifying **ĭter.**

LESSON LIII.

DEPONENT VERBS: THIRD AND FOURTH CONJUGATIONS.

103. Learn the entire Third and Fourth Conjugations of Deponent
Verbs.   A. & G. **135 :** A. & S. **223,** use **rĕgor** and **audior** for models :
B. **93 :** B. & M. **309; 310;** G. **145–148:** H. **231,** 1–3 ; Note
under **232:** C. p. 100.

104. *Ablative with certain Deponents.* A. & G. **249:** A.
& S. **419:** B. **258,** *a:* B. & M. **880:** G. **405:** H. **421,** I.: C. **167**

VOCABULARY.

mētior,	mētīrī,	mensŭs	sŭm,	*measure, deal out.*
nītor,	nītī,	nīsŭs *or* nīxŭs	sŭm,	*strive, endeavor.*
ŏrior,	ŏrīrī,	ortŭs	sŭm,	*rise, begin.*
pŏtior,	pŏtīrī,	pŏtītŭs	sŭm,	*get possession of, obtain.*
prŏfĭciscor,	prŏfĭciscī,	prŏfectŭs	sŭm,	*set out, depart.*
sĕquor,	sĕquī,	sĕcūtŭs	sŭm,	*follow.*
ūtor,	ūtī.	ūsŭs	sŭm,	*use, make use of.*

Conjugate ; name the Stems;[1] give synopses; parse.

1. Caesar hostes sĕquĭtŭr.　2. Caesar paucos dies[3] mŏrātŭs[2] hostes sĕcūtŭs est.　3. Liscus cŭm lĕgiōnĭbus ē castris prŏfectŭs est.　4. Caesar mātūrat ăb urbe prŏfĭciscī.　5. Belgae ăb extrēmis Galliae fīnĭbus[4] ŏriuntur.　6. Mīlĭtes frūmento nōn ūtentŭr.　7. Frūmento ūtī[5] hŏmĭnes nōn pŏtĕrant.　8. Pāce ūtī nōn possŭmus.　9. Impĕdīmentis castrisquĕ nostrī[6] pŏtītī sunt.　10. Nītēbantŭr ŭt impĕrio pŏtīrentŭr.　11. Nītentŭr ŭt[7] tōtīus Galliae impĕrio pŏtiantŭr.[7]　12. Galli nītuntŭr ŭt impĕdīmentis pŏtiantŭr.　13. Dux vĭrīs[8] frūmentum mētītŭr.　14. Liscus mīlĭtĭbus frūmentum nōn mensus ĕrat.　15. Nītāmŭr ŭt tōtīus Ităliae impĕrio pŏtiāmŭr.

Write in Latin.

1. Liscus will follow the enemy.　2. Our soldiers followed the Gauls.　3. The Gauls were following our army.　4. When I shall have set out from the city.　5. We shall make use of the corn.　6. The lieutenant is striving to get possession of[7] the camp.　7. Let us strive to get possession of[7] the baggage.　8. They attempt to get possession of[5] the camp.　9. The Gauls were striving to get possession of the entire town.

Notes and Questions.

[1] *The Present Stem* of Deponent Verbs is found in the Present Infinitive by dropping the Ending **rī** in the First, Second, and Fourth Conjugations, and the Ending **ī** in the Third (cf. *28*): e. g. HORTĀrī, VĔRĒrī,

pŏtīri, and ūtī are Present Infinitives ; HORTA, VĔRE, POTI, and ūT their Present Stems.

The Supine Stem of Deponent Verbs is found in the Perfect Participle by dropping the ending ŭs (cf. *50*): e. g. HORTĀTŭs, VĔRĬTŭs, PŬTĪTŭs, and ūsŭs are Perfect Participles ; HORTĀT, VĔRĬT, PŎTĬT, and ūs their Supine Stems.

² mŏrātŭs, *having delayed.*   ³ dies, why in the Accusative ?

⁴ finĭbŭs, *limits.*   ⁵ See *69.*

⁶ nostri, *our men.*   ⁷ See LN. XXXVIII., NOTE 3.

⁸ See *39.*

Which Stem is wanting in Deponent Verbs ? What is a Deponent Verb ? What is the derivation and meaning of *deponent ?* See under dēpōno, General Vocabulary.

LESSON LIV.

GENERAL EXERCISE : PLACE.

105. Place to which. A. & G. 258, *b :* A. & S. **425, 426** (1), *a :* B. **221,** RULE XII. : B. & M. *933 :* G. **410** : H. 380, I., II., 2, 1) : C. **130.**

106. Place at or in which. A. & G. 258, *c, d :* A. & S. **425** ; **426** (1), (2), *a :* B. **249,** RULE XXXVII. : B. & M. *932 ; 933 :* G. **412,** REM. 1 : H. **425,** I., II. ; **426,** 2 : C. 148, 1, 2.

107. Place from which. A. & G. 258, *a :* A. & S. **425** ; **426** (1), (2): B. **254,** RULE XXXIX. : B. & M. *941 ; 943 :* G. **411** : H. **412,** I., II., 1 : C. **182.**

a. **105** answers the question *Whither ?* or *To what place ?* **106,** *Where ?* or *In what place ?* **107,** *Whence ?* or *From what place ?*

EXAMPLES.

1. **Caesar Gĕnāvam (*105*) contendit,** *Caesar hastened* TO GENEVA.

2. **Liscus Aquilēiae (*106*) fuit,** *Liscus was* IN AQUILEIA.

3. **Cassius Rōmā (*107*) vēnit,** *Cassius came* FROM ROME.

4. **Divitiăcus plūrĭmŭm dŏmī pŏtĕrat,** *Divitiacus was very powerful* AT HOME.

VOCABULARY.

dŏmŭs, ūs, f.	house, home : dŏmī, at home; dŏmŭm, home, homeward; dŏmō, from home.
nĭhĭl (an indecl. neuter noun),	nothing.
Noviodūnŭm, ī, n.	Noviodunum.
plūrĭmŭs, ă, ŭm,	most : plūrĭmŭm possĕ, to be very powerful.
prae-mĭttŏ, ĕrĕ, mīsī, missŭm,	send forward.
rĕ-vertor, vertī, versŭs sŭm,	return.
Suēvī, ōrŭm, m.	the Suevi.
trā-dūcŏ, dūcĕrĕ, duxī, ductŭm,	lead across.

Analyze[1] and parse.

1. Consŭles Rōmae plūrĭmos[1] annos[2] fuērunt.   2. Rōmā vēnērunt lēgāti Gĕnāvam.   3. Divitiăcus plūrĭmum[3] dŏmi[4] atquĕ ĭn rĕlĭquā Galliā pŏtĕrat.[3]   4. Impĕrātor omnem ĕquĭtātum Noviodūnum praemīsit.   5. Dŏmŭm mittam pueros mălos.   6. Suēvi ăd rīpas Rhēni vĕnĕrant ĕt dŏmum rĕvertēbantŭr.   7. Nītēmur ŭt Norēiam rĕvertāmŭr.   8. Sī Rōmā prŏfĭciscāmŭr,[5] nōn dŏmŭm rĕvertāmŭr.   9. Vĕrēmŭr ŭt[6] nostri ămīci Rōmae multos dies măneant.[6]   10. Helvētii jăm pĕr angustias ĕt fīnes Sēquănōrum suas cōpias trāduxĕrant ĕt ĭn Aeduōrum fīnes pervēnĕrant.

Write in Latin.

1. We shall be at home very many[1] days.[2]   2. The friends will come home.   3. They came from Noviodunum to Rome. 4. The consul sent forward all the troops to Geneva.   5. He fears that we shall not[6] return[6] home.   6. Let[7] us return home.   7. They will attempt to return to Geneva.   8. He was not able to return home.   9. If the soldiers had marched more quickly[8] they would have come to the banks of the Rhone.
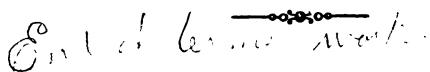
LESSON LV.

NUMERALS. — EXTENT IN SPACE.

108. Learn the *Cardinals* and *Ordinals*, the declension of **ūnŭs, duŏ, trēs**, and **millŏ**.   A. & G. **94**, *a–e :* A. & S. **146; 156; 157** (1), (2) ;   **158–160; 161**, *g :* B. **167; 168**, Rem. 1–5 : B. & M. *201–204; 206; 207 :* G. 92–94; 308 : H. 171; 172; 174–179 : C. 54; 55, 1, 3.

109. Extent in Space.   A. & G. **257** : A. & S. **423** : B. **220**, Rule XI. : B. & M. *958 :* G. 335; 336 : H. 379 : C. 129, I. This answers such questions as *How far ? How deep ? How high ? How wide ? How long ?*

EXAMPLES.

1. **Castră ăb urbĕ mīliă passuŭm octŏ ăbsunt,** *the camp is* EIGHT MILES *distant from the city.*

2. **Flūmĕn pĕdēs vīgintī altŭm est,** *the river is* TWENTY FEET *deep.*

3. **Mons pĕdēs nongentōs altŭs est,** *the mountain is* NINE HUNDRED FEET *high.*

VOCABULARY.

altĕr, altĕră, altĕrŭm,	*one of two, the other.*
lātŭs, ă, ŭm,	*wide.*
longŭs, ă, ŭm,	*long.*
passŭs, ūs, m.	*step, pace;* **millĕ passŭs,** *a mile;* lit., *a thousand paces.*

pēs, pĕdĭs, m.   *foot.*

pōnŏ, pōnĕrĕ, pŏsuī, pŏsĭtŭm,   *place, put;* castră pōnĕrĕ, *to
                                  pitch a camp.*

vĭgĭlĭă, ae, f.   *watch;* dē prīmā vĭgĭlĭā, *in the
                                  first watch.*

N. B. No numerals will be given in the Vocabularies; they must be
learned from the grammar.

Translate and parse.

1. Flūmen est pĕdes quadrāgintā trēs lātum.[1] 2. Mons
dĕcĕm mīlĭă[2] trĕcentos pĕdes altus est. 3. Fossa pĕdes trĕ-
centos longa est, sex pĕdes alta. 4. Fossa pĕdes quindĕcĭm
lāta est. 5. Mīlĭtes duas fossas quindĕcĭm pĕdes lātas fōdē-
runt. 6. Caesar dŏmum[3] tertiam[4] lĕgiōnem mīsit. 7. Dē
tertiā vĭgĭliā[5] centŭm ĕt trīgintā quinquĕ mīlĭtes praemittit.
8. Mīlĭă passuum[6] triă ăb urbe castra pŏsuĭt. 9. Oppĭda ăd[7]
quadrāgintā ĕt vīcos ăd quadringentōs incendunt. 10. Erant
ĭtĭnĕra duŏ; ūnum pĕr Sēquănos; altĕrum pĕr prōvinciam
nostram. 11. Summa[8] ĕrat căpĭtum Helvētiōrum[9] mīlĭă
dŭcentă ĕt sexāgintā triă. 12. Circĭter mīlĭă hŏmĭnum cen-
tŭm ĕt trīgintā sŭperfuērunt.

Write in Latin.

1. The river is sixteen feet deep. 2. The river is two
hundred feet wide. 3. The mountain is eight thousand feet
high. 4. The river is ninety-four miles long. 5. The men
dug a ditch ten feet deep. 6. We shall send the soldiers
home in the second watch. 7. They burned about eighty
towns. 8. We shall pitch our camp about twenty miles from
Rome.

Notes and Questions.

[1] What does lătum modify ? What is it modified by ?

[2] Spelled also with two l's : milliă.

[3] See *105.*   [4] What kind of a numeral is tertiam ?

⁵ The Romans divided the night into four equal parts named **prima vigĭlia, secunda vigĭlia, tertia vigĭlia, quarta vigĭlia.**

⁶ A Roman pace (**passus**) as a measure of length was about five feet.

⁷ **ăd** with numerals signifies *about.*

⁸ **summa,** *the sum total.*

⁹ **căpĭtum Helvētiōrum,** *of the Helvetii ;* lit. *of the heads of the Helvetii.*

———∽◦⦂◦◦∾———

LESSON LVI.

COMPOUND NOUNS. — ABLATIVE OF TIME.

110. Compound Nouns. A. & G. **77,** 6, *a :* A. & S. **300,** *a :* B. **151 :** B. & M. *176 :* H. **125 ;** **126 :** C. **106,** 1, 2.

111. Ablative of Time. A. & G. **256 :** A. & S. **424 :** B. **252,** RULE XXXVIII. : B. & M. *949 :* G. **392 :** H. **429 :** C. **185.** The *Ablative of Time* answers the questions *When? At what time? Within what time?* What question does the *Accusative of Time* answer? See *93.*

EXAMPLES.

1. **Diē septĭmō pervēnĭt,** *he arrived* ON THE SEVENTH DAY.

2. **Proxĭmā noctě castră mōvĭt,** THE NEXT NIGHT *he broke up camp.*

VOCABULARY.

dī-vĭdŏ, vĭděrě, vīsī, vīsŭm,	*divide, separate.*
in-cŏlŏ, cŏlěrě, cŏluī, cultŭm,	*inhabit, dwell.*
jusjūrandŭm, jūrisjūrandī, n.	*oath.*
lăcŭs, ūs, m.	*lake.*
mensĭs, ĭs, m.	*month.*
pŏtens, pŏtentĭs, adj.	*able, powerful.*
prō, prep. w. abl.	*before, for.*
respublĭcă, rēīpublĭcae, f.	*republic, commonwealth.*

Analyze and parse.

1. Galli Rōmānis¹ jusjūrandum dĕdērunt.   2. Dixit Gallos Rōmānis jusjūrandum dĕdisse.²   3. Multas res jūrějūrando³

sanxērunt (*they ratified*).   4. In[4] rempublĭcam lēgātus sex
lĕgiōnes duxit.   5. Prō rēpublĭca ; prō castris.   6. Pĕr- trēs
pŏtentissĭmos pŏpŭlos tōtīus[5] Galliae.   7. In fīnes Lingŏnum
die quarto pervēnērunt.   8. Proxĭma nocte dē quarta vĭgĭlia[6]
castra mōvērunt.   9. Proxĭmo die Caesar ē castris cōpias suas
ēduxit.   10. Sōlis occāsū suas cōpias Ariovistus ĭn castra rĕ-
duxit.   11. Dŏmĭ[7] mansērunt septĕm menses.[8]   12. Quadrā-
gintā trēs annos regnāvit.   13. Nītāmur[9] ŭt sōlis occāsu prŏ-
fĭciscāmur.[10]   14. Gallia est[11] omnis dīvīsa[11] in partes trēs,
quārum (*of which*) ūnam[12] incŏlunt Belgae, ăliam[12] Aquītāni,[13]
tertiam[12] Galli.[13]   15. A lŏcu Lemanno ăd montem Jūram
fossam vīgintī pĕdes[14] lātam fōdit.   16. Dē tertia vĭgĭlia cŭm
lĕgiōnĭbus trĭbus ē castris prŏfectus est.   17. Dīcit hostes sŭb
monte castra pŏsuisse mīlia[14] passuum ăb nostris castris octŏ.[15]

LESSON LVII.

PRONOUNS : PERSONAL, POSSESSIVE, AND REFLEXIVE.

112. Learn the declension of **ĕgŏ, tū, suī**.   A. & G. **98**, 1, 2, *b*,
3 ; **99**, *d, e:* A. & S. **178** ; **179** ; **186** ; **431**, *e ;* **449**, (1): B. **171** ;
172, *a, b*, Rem. 2 ; **173**, *a :* B. & M. **230-232 ; 234 ; 236 :** G. **97**-
100 : H. **182, 184**, 2, 3, 4, 6 ; **185 :** C. **57**, 1.

Translate and parse.

1. Egŏ[1] sum mălus[2] sĕd tū es bŏnus.   2. Egŏ vōs sŭb jŭgum mittam.   3. Nōs vōbīs[3] ămīci sŭmus.   4. Nunciat nōbīs tē vēnisse.   5. Egŏ dē prīma vĭgĭlia prŏfectus essem, sī tū vēnisses.   6. Nostră consĭlia hostĭbus ēnunciantur.   7. Obsĭdes intĕr sēsē[4] dant.   8. Intĕr sē jusjūrandum dant.   9. Omnes linguā,[6] instĭtūtis,[6] lĕgĭbus[6] intĕr sē[5] diffĕrunt (differ).   10. Helvētii suīs fīnĭbus[7] Germānōs prŏhĭbēbant.   11. Caesar suōs mīlĭtes ĭn Galliam mittet sĕd ĭn prōvinciam nostrōs.[8]   12. Tuŭs fīlius ĭn Galliam cĭtĕriōrem ĭter făciet.

Write in Latin.

1. I am a Roman but you are a Gaul.   2. He will announce to you (that) we have come.   3. Your plans will be reported to us.   4. The Helvetii and Sequani will give hostages to each other.   5. He says (that) the Gauls and Germans will give hostages to each other.   6. I shall send my soldiers home[9] but yours into Gaul.   7. You will be friendly to us.   8. I fear that you will not[10] be[11] friendly to us.

Notes.

[1] *Form for parsing a pronoun.* — ĕgŏ is a personal pronoun; declined, ĕgŏ, meī, mĭhĭ, mē, mē; Plural, nōs, nostrŭm or nostrī, nōbīs, nōs, nōbīs; made in the Nominative Singular, because it is the subject of **sŭm**; rule (see *32*).

[2] See *64*.   [3] See *86*.

[4] **inter sēsē**, *to each other;* lit. *among themselves.*

[5] **inter sē**, *from one another.*

[6] See Ln. I., Note 5.   [7] See Ln. XLIII., Note 6.

[8] **nostrōs**, *ours:* sc. **mĭlĭtes.**

[9] See *105*.   [10] See Ln. XLIX., Note 4.

[11] See Ln. XLVI., Note 4.

LESSON LVIII.

PRONOUNS (*continued*): DEMONSTRATIVE.

113. Learn the declension and meanings of **hĭc, illĕ, istĕ, ipsĕ, ĭs, īdĕm.** A. & G. **100 - 102**: A. & S. **180 - 182**: B. **173**, *b*, 1 - 3: B. & M. **239; 243:** G. **101; 102**: H. **186**, I. - VI.: C. **59; 60**.

Analyze and parse.

1. Hōrŭm[1] omnium fortissĭmi sunt Belgae. 2. Hī omnes linguā, instĭtūtis, lĕgĭbus inter sē diffĕrunt. 3. Eōrum[2] ūnă pars ĭnĭtium căpit ā flūmĭne Rhŏdăno. 4. Mĭnĭme[3] ăd eōs mercātōres[4] saepe commeant. 5. Eī fīliam suam ĭn matrĭmōnium dat. 6. Is sĭbĭ[5] lēgātiōnem ăd cīvĭtātes suscēpit. 7. Eă res est[6] Helvētiis ēnunciāta. 8. Eōdĕm die[7] cŭm duābŭs[8] lĕgiōnĭbus prŏfĭciscētur ĕt iis[9] dŭcĭbus. 9. Ipsĕ[10] ex Helvētiis uxōrem hăbet. 10. Ipsī ĭn eōrum[11] fīnĭbus bellum gĕrunt. 11. Mīlia[12] passuum triă[8] ăb eōrum castris castra pōnit. 12. Ab iisdĕm[13] nostra consĭlia hostĭbus ēnunciantur. 13. Ipsĕ dē quarta vĭgĭlia eōdem ĭtĭnĕre[14] ăd eōs contendit ĕquĭtātumque[15] omnem antĕ sē mittit.

Notes.

[1] Demonstrative pronouns are used sometimes substantively and sometimes adjectively: e. g. **hĭ omnes diffĕrunt,** *all* THESE *differ;* **ad has suspĭciōnes,** *to* THESE *suspicions.* In the former case parse them as nouns; in the latter, as adjectives.

[2] **ĭs** is very often used as a *Personal Pronoun* of the *Third Person,* and should then be rendered by the proper case and number of *he, she, it;* e. g. **ĭs sĭbĭ suscēpit,** HE *took upon himself;* **ăd eōs,** to THEM; **ĭn eōrŭm fīnĭbus,** *in* THEIR *territory;* **ĕjŭs mĭlĭtes,** HIS *soldiers;* **eĭ dat,** *he gives* TO HIM.

[3] **mĭnĭme** modifies **saepe.**

[4] See **32.**

[5] See **67.**

[6] **est ēnunciāta = ēnunciāta est.**

[7] See **111.**

[8] See **108.**

⁹ Is **iis** used substantively or adjectively ?

¹⁰ **ipsĕ — hăbet**, *he himself has.*

¹¹ See NOTE 2.   ¹² See *109.*

¹³ When a Demonstrative Pronoun is used as a substantive, we may supply in translation the word *one, man, men, persons,* or *soldiers,* if masculine; *thing* or *things,* if neuter: e. g. **hĭc est fortis,** THIS ONE *is brave,* or THIS MAN *is brave;* **ăb iisdĕm,** *by* THE SAME PERSONS ; **ĭdĕm cōnantur,** *they attempt* THE SAME THING.

¹⁴ **eōdem ĭtĭnĕre,** *by the same route.*

¹⁵ See LN. XXIII., NOTE 2.

———o○;○;○o———

LESSON LIX.

PRONOUNS (*continued*): RELATIVE.

114. Declension. A. & G. **103; 104,** *e* : A. & S. **184** : B. **173,** *c*, REM. 1 : B. & M. ***245:*** G. **103** : H. **187,** 2 : C. **62,** 1.

115. Agreement. A. & G. **198** : A. & S. **342** : B. **278,** RULE LIII. : B. & M. ***683; 684:*** G. **615; 616** : H. **445,** NOTE 1 : C. **114, 1.**

EXAMPLES.

1. **Aquĭtānia ăd eam partem Oceănĭ, quae est ăd Hispāniam, pertĭnet,** *Aquitania extends to that* PART *of the Ocean* WHICH *is near Spain.*

2. **Flūmĭne Rhēno, quĭ agrum Helvētium ā Germānis dīvĭdit,** *by the river* RHINE, WHICH *separates the territory of the Helvetii from the Germans.*

3. **Proxĭmĭquĕ sunt Germānis, quĭbuscum¹ bellum gĕrunt,** *and they are very near* TO THE GERMANS, *with* WHOM *they carry on war.*

Analyze and parse.

1. Proxĭmĭquĕ sunt Germānis,² quī³ trans Rhēnum incŏlunt.   2. Ad montem Jūram, quī fīnes Sēquănōrum ăb Helvētiis dīvĭdit.   3. Ab Ocĕlo, quŏd est cĭtĕriōris prōvĭnciae

oppĭdum⁴ extrēmum. 4. Allobrŏges, quī trans Rhŏdănum
vīcos possessiōnesquĕ habēbant, ăd Caesărem vĕniunt. 5. Vŏcat
Castĭcum, cūjŭs⁵ păter regnum multos annos⁶ obtĭnuĕrat.
6. Pontem,⁷ quī est ăd Gĕnāvam, jŭbet rescindi.⁸ 7. Undĭque
lŏci nātūrā⁹ Helvētii contĭnentur: ūna ex parte¹⁰ flūmĭne¹¹
Rhēno¹² lātissĭmo atquĕ altissĭmo, qui¹⁶ agrum Helvētium ā
Germānis dīvĭdit; altera ¹³ ex parte monte Jūrā altissĭmo, qui
est intĕr Sēquănos ĕt Helvētios; tertiā¹⁴ lăcu Lemanno ĕt flū-
mĭne Rhŏdăno, quī prōvinciam nostram ăb Helvētiis dīvĭdit.

<div align="center">**Write in Latin.**</div>

1. They are nearest to the Aquitani, who dwell across the
Garonne. 2. The Aquitani are hemmed in by the Pyrenees,
which separate Aquitania from Spain. 3. He summons Titus,
whose brother held the sovereignty many years. 4. The Ger-
mans, who had possessions across the Rhine, came to Geneva.
5. He came with the very¹⁵ soldiers whom we have seen.
6. He comes with the soldiers, of whom he has a very large
number.

<div align="center">**Notes.**</div>

¹ Observe that cŭm is appended to the Ablative of Relative and Personal
Pronouns.

² See **86**.

³ *Form for parsing a relative.* — quī is a Relative Pronoun; declined,
quī, quae, quŏd, cūjus, etc. (*give its entire declension*); made in the Mascu-
line Plural to agree with its antecedent Germānis (see **115**); and in the
Nominative, because it is the subject of incŏlunt (**32**).

⁴ See **64**.	⁵ cūjŭs, *whose*.
⁶ See **93**.	⁷ See **53**.
⁸ See **52**.	⁹ See LN. XLV., NOTE 4.
¹⁰ ūna ex parte, *on one side*.	¹¹ See **54**.
¹² See **25**.	¹³ alterā, *second*.

¹⁴ tertiā, sc. ex parte.

¹⁵ Translate *the very* by the proper case of ipsĕ.

¹⁶ A. & G. **199**: A. & S. **343** *a:* B. **286**, *d:* B. & M. **694**: G. **616**,
3, II.: H. **445**, 4: C. **113**, 5.

LESSON LX.

PRONOUNS (*continued*): INTERROGATIVE AND INDEFINITE.

116. Learn the declension of the Interrogatives **quĭs** and **quī**; of the Indefinites **ălĭquĭs** and **quĭs**. A. & G. 104, *a, e*; 105, *d*: A. & S. **183**; **184**, *a, b*: B. **173**, *d*, Rem. 1, *e*, 1, 3: B. & M. **246**; **249-251**; **1041**, *second part*: G. **104**, Remark; **105**: H. **188**, I., II., 1, 3; **189**; **190**, 1, Note 1: C. **62**, 2, 4, 5, 13.

a. **ălĭ-quĭs** is used both as a *substantive* and as an *adjective*; as a *substantive* it is declined as follows:

		Masculine.	*Neuter.*
Sing.	*Nom.*	ălĭ-quĭs,	ălĭ-quĭd,
	Gen.	ălĭ-cūjŭs,	ălĭ-cūjŭs,
	Dat.	ălĭ-cuī,	ălĭ-cuī,
	Acc.	ălĭ-quĕm,	ălĭ-quĭd,
	Abl.	ălĭ-quō,	ălĭ-quō.

Plur.	*Nom.*	ălĭ-quī,	
	Gen.	ălĭ-quōrŭm,	
	Dat.	ălĭ-quĭbŭs,	
	Acc.	ălĭ-quōs,	
	Abl.	ălĭ-quĭbŭs.	

As an *adjective* it is declined:

		Masculine.	*Feminine.*	*Neuter.*
Sing.	*Nom.*	ălĭ-quĭs *and* ălĭ-quī,	ălĭ-quă,	ălĭ-quŏd,
	Gen.	ălĭ-cūjŭs,	ălĭ-cūjŭs,	ălĭ-cūjŭs,
	Dat.	ălĭ-cuī,	ălĭ-cuī,	ălĭ-cuī,
	Acc.	ălĭ-quĕm,	ălĭ-quăm,	ălĭ-quŏd,
	Abl.	ălĭ-quō,	ălĭ-quā,	ălĭ-quō.

Plur.	*Nom.*	ălĭ-quī,	ălĭ-quae,	ălĭ-quă,
	Gen.	ălĭ-quōrŭm,	ălĭ-quārŭm,	ălĭ-quōrŭm,
	Dat.	ălĭ-quĭbŭs,	ălĭ-quĭbŭs,	ălĭ-quĭbŭs,
	Acc.	ălĭ-quōs,	ălĭ-quās,	ălĭ-quă,
	Abl.	ălĭ-quĭbŭs,	ălĭ-quĭbŭs,	ălĭ-quĭbŭs.

EXAMPLES.

1. **Quĭs mē vŏcat?** WHO *calls me?*
2. **Quĕm vīdisti?** WHOM *did you see?*
3. **Quĭd dŏmum nōn vēnērunt?** WHY *have they not come home?*
4. **Aliquĕm ăd mē mittent,** *they will send* SOMEBODY *to me.*
5. **Alĭquid accĭdit,** SOMETHING *has happened.*
6. **Sī quid accĭdat Rōmānis,** *if* ANYTHING *should happen to the Romans.*

Parse the pronouns.

1. Quĭs vōs vŏcāvit? 2. Quĕm vĭdeo? 3. Alĭquĕm vīdi. 4. Alĭquōs ăd eŭm mīsērunt. 5. Alĭquĕm lŏcum occŭpāvit. 6. Cŭm ălĭquĭbŭs princĭpum vēnit. 7. Sī quĭs vĕniat, laeter. 8. Quĭd nōn dŏmi fuisti? 9. Quae est mŭlier quae vēnit? 10. Sī quĭd mĭhi accĭdat, nōn laetēris. 11. Sī quĭd Rōmānis accĭdat, nōn fortĭtĕr pugnent. 12. Alĭquĕm ăd tē mittam. 13. Alĭquĭs dixit hunc essĕ consŭlem. 14. Eŭm hortābor ŭt cŭm ălĭquĭbŭs mīlĭtum prŏfĭciscātur. 15. Vĕreor nē quĭs vĕniat. 16. Vereor nē quĭd eī accĭdat. 17. Ut ălĭquōs vĭrōrum mittant, eos hortēmur. 18. Cŭm ălĭquĭbŭs princĭpum illĕ vēnit.

LESSON LXI.

CONJUNCTIONS.

117. A. & G. **25,** *h;* **154,** *a, b;* **208:** A. & S. **74** (7) ; **562; 565 ; 566:** B. **180,** *the whole;* **330,** RULE LXXXI. : B. & M. ***488– 503; 1369:*** G. **15,** IV., **3 ; 476; 485; 494; 500; 501:** H. **309–311; 554,** I., 2 : C. **100; 257.**

VOCABULARY.

aut, conj.	*or;* **aut — aut,** *either — or.*
ĕt — ĕt, conj.	*both — and.*
ĭtăquĕ, conj.	*accordingly, therefore.*

nặm, conj.	for.
nĕ, nonnĕ, nŭm,	interrogative particles (see Note 1).
nĕquĕ, conj.	*and not;* nĕquĕ — nĕquĕ, *neither — nor.*
postquặm, conj.	*after, as soon as.*
proptĕreā, adv.	*for this reason.*
quamquặm, conj.	*although.*
quŏd, conj.	*because.*
sĕd, conj.	*but.*

Translate, and parse [2] the conjunctions.

1. Impĕrātor ĕt[3] magnus ĕt fortis est.   2. Nĕquĕ[3] magni nĕquĕ fortes sunt consŭles.   3. Dux nōn magnus est sĕd fortis. 4. Dumnŏrĭgem vŏcat eīquĕ[4] fīliam suam ĭn mātrĭmōnium dat. 5. Ităquĕ rem suscēpit.   6. Hōrŭm[5] omnium fortissĭmi sunt Belgae, proptĕreā quŏd ā cultu atquĕ hūmānĭtāte prŏvinciae longissĭme[6] absunt.   7. Helvētii ĭter pĕr prŏvinciam făciunt, proptĕreā quŏd ăliud[7] ĭter hăbent nullum.[7]   8. Is pặgus appellābātur Tigurīnus[8] ; nặm omnis cīvĭtas Helvētia ĭn quattuor pāgos dīvīsa est.   9. Aut[3] suis fīnĭbus[9] eos prŏhĭbent, aut ipsī[10] ĭn eōrum fīnĭbus bellum gĕrunt.   10. Mīles, quamquặm est fortis, nōn pugnābit.   11. Postquặm Caesar pervēnit, ĭtă respondit.   12. Fortisnĕ[11] est consul?   13. Nonnĕ fortes sunt consŭles?   14. Nŭm fortis est consul?   15. Sī quĭd hăbērem,[12] ĭd tĭbi dărem.   16. Nītĭtur ŭt vincat.[13]   17. Nonnĕ consŭles dŏmum vēnĕrant?   18. Nŭm Tĭtus lēgātus circŭm Gĕnāvam hiemāvit?

Notes and Questions.

[1] nĕ is used to ask for information merely ; **nonnĕ,** when the answer *yes,* and **nŭm,** when the answer *no* is expected or implied ; e. g. **bŏnusnĕ est puer !** *is the boy good?* **nonnĕ bŏnus est puer !** *is not the boy good?* i. e. the boy is good, is he not ! **nŭm bŏnus est puer !** *the boy is not good is he?*

[2] *To parse a conjunction* is to tell whether it is coördinate or subordinate ; to which subdivision of its class it belongs ; what it connects : e. g. in sentence 6, **quŏd** is a *subordinate conjunction,* because it connects a subordinate with a principal clause ; *causal,* because it introduces a reason ; it connects the subordinate clause **proptĕreā — absunt** with the principal clause **hōrum — Belgae.**

³ When a conjunction is doubled, as et — et, aut — aut, the first
strengthens the union or opposition denoted by the second.

⁴ See *39* and Ln. LVIII., Note 2.   ⁵ See Ln. LVIII., Note 1.

⁶ See Ln. XLII.   ⁷ See *24.*

⁸ Use the same word, **Tigurinus,** in translation.

⁹ See Ln. XLIII., Note 6.   ¹⁰ What does **ipsi** emphasize ?

¹¹ The interrogative particle **ne** is appended to the first word of its clause.

¹² **hăbĕrem,** *I had.*   ¹³ See Ln. XXXVIII., Note 3.

——oo°o°oo——

LESSON LXII.

CLASSIFICATION OF SENTENCES.

118. A good knowledge of the subject treated under the following
References will aid materially in translating and understanding the
Ablative Absolute, Subjunctive Mood, and *Indirect Discourse.* A. & G.
171–182, *coarse and fine print:* A. & S. **309–315:** B. **203,** *a–g;*
288, *a–f:* B. & M. *1399–1401; 1404; 1405; 1407; 1408;
1411; 1413:* G. **192; 193; 474,** 1–4; **475; 505–508:** H.
345–351; 354–361: C. **107; 108.**

VOCABULARY.

cīvĭs, ĭs, m. *and* f.	*citizen.*
in-fluŏ, fluĕrĕ, fluxī, fluxŭm,	*flow into, empty.*
inter-ficiŏ, ficĕrĕ, fēcī, fectŭm,	*kill.*
poscŏ, poscĕrĕ, pŏposcī, (no supine)	*demand.*
postquăm, conj.	*after, as soon as.*
re-spondeŏ, spondērĕ, spondī, sponsŭm,	*reply, answer.*

Translate and analyze¹ **the following sentences.**

1. Ejus rĕi pŏpŭlus Rōmānus est testis.   2. Divĭco re-
spondit² ējus rĕi pōpŭlum Rōmānum essĕ testem.   3. Hic
pāgus ūnus Lūcium Cassium consŭlem interfēcĕrat ĕt ējus ex-
ercĭtum sŭb jŭgum mīsĕrat.   4. Postquăm Caesar pervēnit,
obsĭdes pŏposcit.   5. Flūmen³ est Arar, quŏd ĭn Rhŏdănum

influit.   6. Caesar ā lăcu Lemanno, qui ĭn flūmen Rhŏdănum influit, ăd montem Jūram, qui fīnes Sēquănōrum ăb Helvētiis dīvĭdit, fossam perdūcit.   7. Quis[4] es ?   Cīvis Rōmānus sum. 8. Rĕlinquēbātur ūna pĕr Sēquănos via, quā proptĕr angustias īre (*to go*) nōn pŏtĕrant.   9. Ob eas causas eī mūnītiōni,[5] quam fēcĕrat, Tĭtum Labiēnum lēgātum praefēcit.   10. Vēni ŭt tē vĭdeam.

<div align="center">**Write in Latin.**</div>

1. Did the enemy send our army under the yoke?   2. They will not send us home will they[6]?   3. Did he not demand hostages as soon as he arrived?   4. Who are those men? They are Roman citizens.   5. Who has come to see us? 6. The Rhone is a river which empties into the sea.   7. One way is left through the Alps by which we shall not be able to march on account of the enemy.   8. We shall either keep the Gauls from our territory or carry on war with them. 9. This man is both great and good.   10. We shall march through Gaul because we have no other way.

<div align="center">**Notes and Questions.**</div>

[1] See Ln. XXXVI., Examples and Notes.
[2] What is the object of **respondit** ?
[3] See *64*.   [4] See *64* ; what is the subject of **es** ?
[5] See *67*.   [6] See Ln. LXI., Note 1.

<div align="center">——oo⁚ǫ⁚oo——</div>

<div align="center">## LESSON LXIII.</div>

<div align="center">PARTICIPLES.</div>

119. Definition.   A. & G. *25, e; 289:* A. & S. *542 :* B. *53, d:* B. & M. *265, last clause:* H. *548 :* C. *65, 4.*

120. Distinctions of Tense. A. & G. 290 : A. & S. 543–545: B. 323, RULE LXXV.: B. & M. *1843:* G. 278; 279: H. 550: C. 249.

121. Used for a Subordinate Clause. A. & G. 292: A. & S. 547: B. 318: B. & M. *1350:* G. 667–671: H. 549, 1–5: C. 250.

EXAMPLES.

1. **Sēsē omnes flentes Caesări ăd pědes prōjēcērunt,** *all* WEEPING *threw themselves down at Caesar's feet.*

2. **Liscus multos dies mŏrātus prŏfectus est,** *Liscus* HAVING DELAYED *many days set out;* or, *Liscus,* AFTER HE HAD DELAYED *many days, set out.*

3. **Caesar eōrum prěcĭbus adductus bellum suscēpit,** *Caesar* HAVING BEEN INFLUENCED *by their entreaties undertook the war;* or, *Caesar,* BECAUSE HE HAD BEEN INFLUENCED *by their entreaties, undertook the war.*

4. **Helvētĭī ējus adventu commōtī lēgātos mittunt,** *the Helvetii* BECAUSE DISTURBED (or, BECAUSE THEY HAVE BEEN DISTURBED) *by his arrival send legates.*

VOCABULARY.

ad-dūcŏ, dūcěrě, duxī, ductŭm,	*lead to, influence.*
fleŏ, flērě, flēvi, flētŭm,	*weep.*
in-dūcŏ, dūcěrě, duxī, ductŭm,	*lead into, induce.*
pětŏ, pětěrě, pětīvī and pětĭī, pětĭtŭm,	*beseech, ask, beg for.*
prŏ-jĭcĭŏ, jĭcěrě, jēcī, jectŭm,	*throw forward;* **sē prōjĭcěrě,** *to throw one's self down.*

Analyze, and parse the participles.

1. Omnes flentes[1] pācem pětiērunt. 2. Mŭliěres flentes vĭros[2] implōrābant. 3. Belgae spectant ĭn ŏrientem sōlem. 4. Hostes ĭn nostros věnientes tēla conjĭciēbant. 5. Mīlĭtes sēsē Tĭto[3] ăd pědes prōjĭcient. 6. Helvētii his rēbus[4] adducti[5] cŭm proxĭmis cīvĭtātĭbus pācem confirmant. 7. Liscus ōrā-tiōne Caesăris adductus lŏcūtus est. 8. Hac ōrātiōne adducti intěr sē[6] jusjūrandum dant. 9. Is[7] regni cŭpĭdĭtāte in-

ductus conjūrātiōnem nōbĭlĭtātis fēcit.   10. Sēquăni paucos
dies mŏrāti ăd[8] Gĕnăvam prŏfecti sunt.   11. Helvētii omnium
rērum ĭnŏpiā adducti lēgātos ăd eum[7] mīsērunt.   12. Caesar
dē tertia vĭgĭlia prŏfectus ăd[9] Gĕnăvam pervēnit.

<div align="center">

Write in Latin.

</div>

1. The soldiers weeping throw themselves down at the feet of
Cassius.   2. Our (soldiers) hurl weapons against the advancing
enemy.   3. The Gauls, after they had delayed a few days, set
out towards Rome.   4. Ariovistus, because he had been dis-
turbed by Caesar's arrival, sent legates to him.[7]   5. The Ger-
mans having delayed a few days came across the Rhine.
6. The Gauls, because disturbed by Caesar's arrival, send legates
to him.

<div align="center">

Notes and Questions.

</div>

[1] Parse a participle like an adjective (LN. VI., NOTE 1), giving in addi-
tion the principal parts of its verb and the different participles formed from
the verb.

   [2] **vĭros**, *husbands.*　　　　　　　[8] See *39;* translate as if it were a Genitive.

   [4] See *54.*

   [5] Imitate the Examples in translating the participles.

   [6] See LN. LVII., NOTE 4.　　[7] See LN. LVIII., NOTE 2.

   [8] **ăd**, *towards, for.*　　　　　[9] **ăd**, *in the vicinity of.*

   [10] What participles has a transitive verb ?　See LN. XXXIII., NOTE 5.

<div align="center">

——∘⚬;⚬;∘∘——

</div>

<div align="center">

LESSON LXIV.

ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE.

</div>

122. A. & G. **255** and NOTE : A. & S. **422** *d :* B. **264**, RULE
XLIX., *a–c :* B. & M. ***964 – 966 ;*** G. **408; 409** : H. **431**, 1, 2, 4 :
C. **187**, 1, 2, 3.

EXAMPLES.

1. **Marco Messālā ĕt Marco Pīsōne consŭlĭbus,** *Marcus Messala and Marcus Piso consuls;* or better, *in the consulship of Marcus Messala and Marcus Piso.*

2. **Hoc responso dăto discessit,**
   - a. *this reply having been given*
   - b. *when this reply had been given*
   - c. *having given this reply* } *he departed.*
   - d. *after giving this reply*
   - e. *after he had given this reply*

VOCABULARY.

con-vertŏ, vertĕre, vertī, versŭm,	*turn about, change.*
dis-cēdŏ, cēdĕrĕ, cessī, cessŭm,	*depart.*
ĭbĭ, adv.	*there.*
rĕ-linquŏ, linquĕrĕ, līquī, lictŭm,	*leave behind, leave.*
responsŭm, ī, n.	*answer, reply.*
rĕ-vertor, vertī, versŭs sŭm,	*return.*

Analyze and parse.

1. Hāc ōrātiōne[1] hăbĭtā[2] Caesar concĭlium dīmīsit. 2. Hāc ōrātiōne ăb Divitiăco hăbĭtā omnes auxĭlium pĕtiērunt. 3. Hāc ōrātiōne hăbĭtā conversae sunt omnium mentes. 4. Convŏcātis eōrum[3] princĭpĭbus Caesar grăvĭter[4] eos accūsat. 5. Marco Messālā ĕt Marco Pīsōne consŭlĭbus conjūrātiōnem nōbĭlĭtātis fēcit. 6. Ibĭ Centrōnes[5] lŏcis sŭpĕriōrĭbus occŭpātis ĭtĭnĕre[6] exercĭtum prŏhĭbēre cōnaɳtur. 7. Mūnītis castris duas ĭbĭ lĕgiōnes rĕlīquit ĕt partem auxĭliōrum. 8. Hōc proelio trans Rhēnum nunciāto Suēvi dŏmum[7] rĕverti coepērunt (*began*). 9. Convŏcātis eōrum princĭpĭbus, quōrum[8] magnam cōpiam ĭn castris hăbēbat, grăvĭter eos accūsat. 10. Hōc proelio trans Rhēnum nunciāto Suēvi, qui ăd rīpas Rhēni vēnĕrant, dŏmum rĕverti coepērunt.

Write in Latin.

1. When this speech had been delivered by Caesar all begged for[9] peace.   2. After giving this reply all departed.   3. He came to Rome[7] in the consulship of Titus and Cassius. 4. Having fortified the camp he set out with a part of the auxiliaries.   5. After this battle had been reported across the Rhone the Sequani began to return home.

Notes and Questions.

[1] The learner should exercise skill and taste in translating the Ablative Absolute ; in analyzing tell what relation it bears to the rest of the sentence.

[2] **hăbĭtă**, from **hăbĕo**, signifying *hold, deliver, make.*

[3] See Ln. LVIII., Note 2.

[4] From what adjective is **grăvĭter** derived ?   What is the Stem of the adjective ?   What is the ending of the adverb ?   See Ln. XLII.

[5] See General Vocabulary.   [6] See Ln. XLIII., Note 6.

[7] See *105.*

[8] What is the gender and number of **quōrŭm** ?   Why ? (*115*)   In what case is it ?   Why ? (*40*)

[9] *for* belongs to the *verb ; peace* must be rendered by the *Accusative.*

———◦◦⟨◦⟩◦◦———

LESSON LXV.

IRREGULAR VERBS : FERO.

123. Learn the entire conjugation of **fĕrŏ**.   A. & G. **139** : A. & S. **245** : B. **109**, IV. : B. & M. *422–424 :* G. **186** : H. **292** : C. **85, 1.**

Conjugate and give a complete synopsis of each verb.

1. Dux suis[1] auxĭlium fert.   2. Auxĭlium mīlĭtĭbus[2] ā dŭce fertŭr.   3. Sī dux suis auxĭlium fĕrăt,[3] laetentur.[3]   4. Sī auxĭlium mīlĭtĭbus ā dŭce fĕrātŭr,[3] laetentur.[3]   5. Ii[4] suis auxĭlium ferrĕ nōn pŏtĕrant.   6. Fertĕ, mīlĭtes, vestris[1] auxĭ-

lium.   7. Pŏpŭlus Rōmānus diū injūrias tŭlĭt.   8. Injūriae
ā pŏpŭlo Rōmāno diū lātae sunt.   9. Pŏpŭlum Rōmānum
hortātus est ŭt[5] diū injūrias ferrent.[5]   10. Caesar dixĭt pŏpŭ-
lum Rōmānum diū injūrias tŭlissĕ.   11. Nŭmĕrus eōrum,[4]
qui[6] arma fĕrēbant, magnus fuit.   12. Nŭmĕrus eōrum, ā
quĭbus arma fĕrēbantŭr, magnus fuit.   13. Nŭmĕrus eōrum,
qui arma ferrĕ pŏtĕrant, magnus fuit.   14. Nŭmĕrus eōrum, ā
quĭbus arma ferrī pŏtĕrant,[7] parvus fuit.   15. Sī Gallis auxĭ-
lium ferrēs, Galli vincĕrent.   16. Sī quis[8] Rōmānis auxĭlium
tŭlissĕt, vīcissent.

Notes and Questions.

[1] The *Plural Masculine* of Possessive Pronouns is often used alone where
in translation some such word as *men, soldiers, friends,* may be supplied ;
the *Plural Neuter,* where we may supply *things, possessions.*

[2] See **39.**   [3] See Ln. XXXVI., Ex. 4.

[4] See Ln. LVIII., Note 2.   [5] See Ln. XXXVIII., Note 3.

[6] See **115.**   [7] See Ln. XLV., Note 8.

[8] What is **quis** when immediately preceded by **sī, nĭsĭ, nĕ,** or **nŭm?**
How is it declined ?   See Ln. LX.

───◦◦●◦◦───

LESSON LXVI.

COMPOUNDS OF **FERO.** — ABLATIVE OF SPECIFICATION.

124. *Ablative of Specification.* A. & G. **253**: A. & S. **412**:
B. **261,** Rule XLVI.: B. & M. **889**: G. **398**: H. **424**: C. **180.**
This answers the question *In what respect ?*

EXAMPLES.

1. **Virtūte praecēdunt,** *they excel* in courage.

2. **Nŭmĕro ăd duŏdĕcĭm,** *about twelve* in number.

VOCABULARY.

af-fĕrŏ,	af-ferrĕ,	at-tŭlī,	al-lātŭm,[1]	*bring to, carry to, offer.*
con-fĕrŏ,	con-ferrĕ,	con-tŭlī,	col-lātŭm,	*bring together, carry together, collect.*
dif-fĕrŏ,	dif-ferrĕ,	dis-tŭlī,	dī-lātŭm,	*carry different ways; differ.*
in-fĕrŏ,	in-ferrĕ,	in-tŭlī,	il-lātŭm,	*bring into, bring upon, make upon.*
rĕ-fĕrŏ,	rĕ-ferrĕ,	rĕ-tŭlī,	rĕ-lātŭm,	*bring back, carry back.*

Analyze and parse.

1. Hi omnes linguā,[2] instĭtūtis,[2] lēgĭbus[2] intĕr sē diffĕrunt.
2. Oppĭda sua omnia nŭmĕro[2] ăd duŏdĕcim[3] incendunt.
3. Eō[4] circĭtĕr[5] hŏmĭnum nŭmĕro sēdĕcim mīlia[3] mīsit.
4. Helvētii rĕlĭquos Gallos virtūte praecēdunt.   5. Helvētii
tōti Galliae[6] bellum infĕrēbant.   6. Pars cīvĭtātis Helvētiae
insignem călămĭtātem pŏpŭlo Rōmāno intŭlĕrat.   7. Helvētii
mĭnus făcĭle fīnĭtĭmis bellum inferrĕ pŏtĕrant.[7]   8. Obsĭdes,
arma, servi confĕruntur.   9. Aedui dixērunt frūmentum con-
ferri.[8]   10. Caesar sarcĭnas[10] in ūnum lŏcum conferri[8] jussit.[9]
11. Helvētii cŭm omnĭbus suis carris sĕcūti[11] impĕdīmenta[10]
ĭn ūnum lŏcum contŭlērunt.   12. His responsis[12] ăd Cae-
sărem rĕlātis ĭtĕrŭm ăd eum Caesar lēgātos cŭm his mandātis
mittit.

Write in Latin.

1. All differed from one another in language and laws.
2. They will burn their cities, about five in number.   3. The
Romans will make war upon the Gauls.[6]   4. I fear that the
Romans will make[13] war upon the Gauls.   5. Let[14] us make
war upon both the Germans and the Belgae.   6. The baggage
will be collected into one place.   7. The Gauls, having fol-
lowed with all their horses, collected the wagons.

¹ Accent the compounds of **fĕro** correctly: **áffĕro, afférre, áttŭli, allátum.**

² See *124.* ³ See *108.*

⁴ **eŏ** is an adverb; see GEN. VY. ⁵ **circĭtĕr** modifies the numeral.

⁶ See *67.* ⁷ **pŏtĕrant,** *could.*

⁸ See *52.* ⁹ **jussit,** from **jŭbeo.**

¹⁰ What is the difference between **sarcĭnae** and **impĕdīmenta**? See General Vocabulary under **sarcĭna** and **impĕdīmentum.**

¹¹ **sĕcŭti** from **sĕquor**; where is it made?

¹² See *122.* ¹³ See LN. XLVI., NOTE 4.

¹⁴ See LN. XXIX., EX. 7.

LESSON LXVII.

IRREGULAR VERBS (*continued*): **VOLO** AND ITS COMPOUNDS.

125. Learn the conjugation and meanings of **vŏlŏ, nōlŏ, mālŏ.** A. & G. **138**: A. & S. **242–244**: B. **109**, VI.: B. & M. *417–419*: G. **189**: H. **293**: C. **85**, 3, 4, 5.

VOCABULARY.

ā-vertŏ, vertĕrĕ, vertī, versŭm,	*turn away.*
mālŏ, mallĕ, māluī,	*be more willing.*
nōlŏ, nollĕ, nōluī,	*be unwilling, not wish.*
undĕ, adv.	*from which place, whence.*
văcŏ, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm,	*be unoccupied.*
vŏlŏ, vellĕ, vŏluī,	*be willing, wish.*

Conjugate and give a synopsis of the verbs.

1. Aeduos¹ flāgĭtāre² Tĭtus frūmentum¹ vult. 2. Helvētiis³ bellum inferrĕ vŏlŭmŭs. 3. Galli fīnĭtĭmis bellum inferrĕ vŏlŭĕrant. 4. Sī lēgātus pugnāre vĕlĭt, hostes fŭgiant. 5. Nŭm⁴ prŏfĭcisci dē tertia vĭgĭlia vultĭs? 6. Dumnŏrix quăm⁵ plūrĭmas cīvĭtātes hăbēre vŏlēbăt. 7. Consul impĕdīmenta⁶ ĭn ūnum lŏcum conferri vult. 8. Sī vīs mē⁶ flēre.

9. Montem ā Cassio occŭpāri vŏluĭt. 10. Mons, quem⁶ ā Lābiēno occŭpāri vŏluĭt, ăb hostĭbus tĕnētur. 11. Dīcit vellĕ sēsē⁶ dē rēpublĭca⁷ cŭm eo lŏqui. 12. Caesăr ăb Helvētiis discēdĕre² nōlēbăt. 13. Nōluĭt eum lŏcum văcāre Liscus. 14. Dixit Caesărem ăb Helvētiis discēdĕre² nollĕ. 15. Nōluĭt eum lŏcum, undĕ Helvētii discessĕrant, văcāre. 16. Vir in- jūrias diū ferre nōlĕt. 17. Sī lēgātus ĭter făcĕre nōlit, mīlĭtes laetĕntur. 18. Vĕreor nē⁸ dux suis auxĭlium ferre nōlĭt.⁸ 19. Iter ăb Arăre Helvētii āvertĕrant ā quĭbus discēdĕre nōlēbăt. 20. Pugnāre² Helvētii mālunt quăm fŭgĕre.² 21. Nonnĕ māvīs tuis⁹ auxĭlium ferrĕ quăm fŭgere? 22. Om- nes virtūte ¹⁰ praecēdĕre māvult quăm essĕ consul. 23. Gallis prŏdesse quăm bellum inferrĕ māluit. 24. Exercĭtui praeesse mālĕt quăm dŏmi¹¹ mănēre.

Write in Latin.

1. You do not wish to burn the town, do you⁴ ? 2. They will wish to make war upon the Romans.⁸ 3. I fear that the soldiers will not be willing⁸ to collect the baggage. 4. Let us be willing to follow with all our baggage. 5. If Caesar had been willing to fight, the soldiers would not have fled. 6. Titus does not wish this place to be unoccupied. 7. He will be unwilling to bring aid to his⁹ (friends). 8. You had been unwilling to make war upon (your) neighbors. 9. He will be more willing to fight than to flee. 10. The man was more willing to excel all in valor¹⁰ than to be rich.

Notes.

¹ See **71.**

² See A. & G. **271,** *a* : A. & S. **532:** B. **315,** *f*, 3 : B. & M. **1152;** **1153:** G. **424:** H. **533** : C. **241.**

⁸ See **67.**

⁵ See Ln. XLII., Note 7.

⁷ See **110.**

⁹ See Ln. LXV., Note 1.

¹¹ See **106.**

⁴ See Ln. LXI., Note 1.

⁶ See **53.**

⁸ See Ln. XLVI., Note 4.

¹⁰ See **124.**

LESSON LXVIII.

IRREGULAR VERBS (*continued*) : **EO** AND **FIO**.

126. Learn the conjugation and meanings of **eŏ** and **fĭŏ**. A. & G. 141; 142: A. & S. **246; 248,** *a:* B. 109, II., V. : B. & M. *413– 415; 426–429:* G. 185; 188, REMARK : H. **294; 295, 1, 3** : C. 85, 2, 7.

EXAMPLES.

1. **Dē Caesăris adventu certior factus est,** *he was informed of Caesar's arrival.*
2. **Caesar certior factus est hostes castra pŏsuisse,** *Caesar was informed that the enemy had pitched a camp.*
3. **Caesărem certiōrem faciunt hostes transīre,** *they inform Caesar that the enemy is crossing.*

VOCABULARY.

certŭs, ă, ŭm,	*certain, sure;* **certior fĭĕrī,** *to be informed;* lit., *to be made more certain.*
eŏ, īrĕ, īvī, ĭtŭm,	*go.*
ex-eŏ, īrĕ, ĭī, ĭtŭm,	*go out, go forth, depart.*
fĭŏ, fĭĕrī, factŭs sŭm,	*be made, become, occur.*
trans-eŏ, īrĕ, ĭī, ĭtŭm,	*go across, cross.*

Conjugate the verbs and parse.

1. Dŏmum[1] eunt ; Rōmam ībo ; Bibracte[1] eāmŭs.[2] 2. Pĕr angustias ībāmŭs ; pĕr Gallōrum fīnes īvērunt. 3. I,[3] mīles, dŏmum ; ītĕ, pueri, dŏmum. 4. Hostes pĕr nostram prōvinciam īvĕrant. 5. Lēgātus Bibracte īrĕ contendit. 6. Caesar cŭm his quinque lĕgiōnĭbus īrĕ[4] contendit. 7. In eam partem Galliae ĭtūrōs[5] essĕ Helvētios dixit. 8. Proptĕr angustias īrĕ[4] nōn pŏtĕrant. 9. Helvĕtii dē fīnĭbus suis cŭm omnĭbus cōpiis exībant. 10. Nītuntur ŭt ē fīnĭbus exeant.[6] 11. Magnus nŭmĕrus eōrum[7] dŏmo[8] exībĭt. 12. Hic

pāgus ūnus dŏmo patrum nostrōrum mĕmŏriā⁹ exiĕrăt.¹⁶
13. Flūmen Helvētii rătĭbus¹⁰ transībant.   14. Sī flūmen
transeant,¹¹ eos vincāmus.   15. Sī hostes Rhŏdănum transīrĕ
cōnentur, prŏhĭbeāmus.   16. Boii¹² trans Rhēnum incŏluĕrant
ĕt ĭn agrum Norĭcum¹² transiĕrant.   17. Undĭquĕ ūno tem-
pŏre ĭn hostes impĕtus fīēbăt.   18. His rēbus¹³ fīēbăt.
19. Dē ējus⁷ adventu Helvētii certiōres facti sunt.   20. Cae-
sar eōdem die ăb explōrātŏrĭbus certior factŭs suas cōpias
praemittĕre vŏlēbat.   21. Duo vĭri consŭles¹⁴ factī ĕrunt.
22. Pĕr explōrātōres Caesar certior factŭs est Sēquănos pĕr
prōvinciam ĭter fēcissĕ.¹⁵

¹ What question do dŏmum and Bibracte answer ? See *105*, *a.*
² See Lɴ. XXIX., Ex. 7.   ⁸ In what is the Imperative used ? (**47**)
⁴ See *69*.   ⁵ Why is ĭtūros in the Acc. Plural ?
⁶ How is the Subjunctive with ŭt to be translated after verbs of *striving*
and *endeavoring* ?
⁷ See Lɴ. LVIII., Nᴏᴛᴇ 2.
⁸ What question does dŏmo answer ?
.⁹ See *111*.   ¹⁰ rătĭs, ĭs, f. *raft.*
¹¹ See Lɴ. XXIX., Ex. 1.   ¹² See Gᴇɴ. Vʏ.
¹³ See *79.*   ¹⁴ See *64.*
¹⁵ See Ex. 2.   .   ¹⁶ exiĕrăt = exīvĕrăt.

———oo¦o¦oo———

LESSON LXIX.

DEFECTIVE AND IMPERSONAL VERBS.

127. Defective Verbs. A. & G. 143, *a – c*, Nᴏᴛᴇ : A. & S.
249 (1) – (3) : B. 111, *b*, Rᴇᴍ. 1, 2 : B. & M. *434 – 437:* G. 190,
5 : H. 297, I., 2 : C. 86, 5, 6.

128. Impersonal Verbs. A. & G. 145 : A. & S. 250 : B.
112 ; 113 : B. & M. *451; 452; 454:* G. 199 : H. 298 ; 299 : C. 87.

129. Infinitive as Subject. A. & G. 270 : A. & S. 531 : B.
315, *a, b* : B. & M. *1147:* G. 423 : H. 538 : C. 236, 1.

EXAMPLES.

1. **Perfăcĭle est impĕrio pŏtīri (*129*)**, *it is very easy* TO GET POS-
   SESSION OF *the government.*

2. **Mĭhi īre (*129*) lĭcet,** *it is permitted me* TO GO ; or, *I may go.*

3. **Mĭhi īre lĭcuit,** *it was permitted me* TO GO ; or, *I might have
   gone.*

4. **Rŏgat ŭt ĭd sĭbi făcĕre lĭceat,** *he asks that it be permitted him*
   TO DO *this ;* better, *he asks permission to do this.*

5. **Rŏgābat ŭt ĭd sĭbi făcĕre lĭcēret,** *he was asking that it be per-
   mitted him* TO DO *this ;* or, *permission to do this.*

6. **Me īre (*129*) ŏportet,** *it is necessary that I should go;* or, *I
   ought to go.*

7. **Me īre ŏportuit,** *it was necessary that I should go ;* or, *I ought
   to have gone.*

8. **Dīcit me īre ŏportēre,** *he says it is necessary that I should go ;*
   or, *he says that I ought to go.*

•
Analyze and parse.

1. Mĕmĭnērunt,[1] ōdērunt.   2. Mĕmĭnĕram Tĭtum, vīdĕram
Cassium.   3. Mĕmento vĕnīre[2]; dīcit sē mĕmĭnisse.   4. Liscus
dixit Dumnŏrĭgem ōdisse Caesărem ĕt Rōmānos.   5. Et tē ĕt
illum[3] ōdĕrāmus.   6. Nĕquĕ[4] mē nĕquĕ eum ōdit.   7. Divi-
tiăcus multis cŭm lacrĭmis Caesărem obsĕcrāre[5] coepit.   8. Suē-
vi, qui[6] ăd rīpas Rhēni vēnĕrant, dŏmum rĕverti coepērunt.
9. Omnes mīlĭtes Rhŏdănum transīre coepērunt.   10. Frū-
mentum[7] conferri[8] ŏportet.   11. Nos[7] Rhēnum transīre ŏpor-
tuit.[9]   12. Dīcit illum ăd sē vĕnīre ŏportēre.[10]   13. Caesărem
dē ējus adventu certiōrem[11] fĭĕri ŏportuit.   14. Rŏgāvērunt
ŭt sĭbi[12] lĭcēret concĭlium tōtīus Galliae convŏcāre.   15. Ro-
gāvit ŭt sĭbi īre lĭcēret.   16. Tĭbi eo die īre lĭcēbit.   17. Per-
făcĭle est tōtīus Galliae impĕrio pŏtīri.   18. Tĭbi Caesărem
certiōrem făcĕre dē meo adventu lĭcet.[13]   19. Tĭbi dŏmum
īre lĭcuit.[14]

Write in Latin.

1. We shall go home.　2. Are you going home?　3. You ought to go home.　4. We ought to have gone home.　5. You can go to Geneva; you may go to Geneva; you ought to go to Geneva.　6. You could have gone to Bibracte; you might have gone to Bibracte; you ought to have gone to Bibracte. 7. You are not going to Rome are you?　8. Are you not going to Rome?　9. Who will go home with me?　10. He says that corn ought to be collected.　11. We shall ask that it be permitted us to go home.　12. Let us go home.

Notes and Questions.

[1] What is a Defective Verb?　What is an Impersonal Verb?

[2] See *52.*

[3] **illum,** *that one;* see Ln. LVIII., Notes 1 and 13.

[4] See Ln. LXI., Note 3.　　　[5] See *69.*

[6] Where is **qui** made and why?　.　[7] See *53.*

[8] See *129.*　　　　　[9] See Example 7.

[10] In this sentence **illum** is the subject of **vĕnīre**; illum — **vĕnīre**, the subject of **ŏportēre**; illum — **ŏportēre**, the object of **dīcit.**

[11] See Ln. LXVIII., Ex. 1.

[12] How does this **sĭbi** differ from the **sĭbi** in sentence 15?

[13] What is the subject of **līcet?**　　　[14] See Example 3.

———◦◦✸◦◦———

LESSON LXX.

THE PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATIONS. — DATIVE OF AGENT.

130. Periphrastic Conjugations. A. & G. **109,** *a;* **129:** A. & S. **229** (1), (2): B. **94,** *a, b:* B. & M. *328; 329:* G. **149; 150; 239; 243:** H. **233; 234:** C. 82.

131. Dative of Agent. A. & G. **232:** A. & S. **383:** B. **248,** Rule XXXVI.: B. & M. *347:* G. **353:** H. **388:** C. **157.**

EXAMPLES.

1. **Doctūrus sŭm,** *I am about to teach; I intend to teach; I am to teach.*

2. **Doctūrus ĕrat (fuit),** *he was about to teach; he was intending to teach; he was to teach.*

3. **Audiendi sŭmus,** *we must be heard; we ought to be heard.*

4. **Tĭbi (131) audiendi sŭmus,** *you must hear us; you ought to hear us.*

5. **Agri consŭli vastandi ĕrant (fuērunt),** *the consul had to lay waste the fields.*

6. **Vexillum prōpōnendum ĕrat,** *the flag had to be displayed.*

7. **Oppĭdum oppugnandum ĕrit,** *the town will have to be stormed.*

8. **Oppĭdum vōbis mūniendum ĕrit,** *you will have to fortify the town.*

Translate[1] and parse.

1. Obsĭdes tĭbi dătūrus sum.[2] 2. Caesar mĭhi obsĭdes dă-tūrus fuit. 3. Ariovistus Rōmānos victūrus fuit. 4. Hostes ăd rīpas Rhēni ĭtūri sunt. 5. Nunciat hostes ăd rīpas Rhēni ĭtūros essĕ. 6. Frūmentum[3] Aeduos[3] flāgĭtātūrus lēgātus ĕrat. 7. Dŏmum ĭtūri sŭmus. 8. Patriae[4] prōfŭtūri estis. 9. Nō-bis[5] bellum gĕrendum ĕrit. 10. Duo consŭles creandi sunt. 11. In hostes vĕnientes tēla nōbis conjĭcienda ĕrant. 12. Op-pĭdum lēgāto expugnandum ĕrit. 13. Pĕr Alpes mīlĭtĭbus ĭter faciendum ĕrit. 14. Frūmentum Aeduis dandum est.[6] 15. Urbs dēlenda est. 16. Caesări ĭn Galliam mātūrandum est.[7] 17. Caesar mātūrandum sĭbi essĕ existĭmāvit. 18. Dē ējus adventu Caesar certior[8] făciendus est. 19. Caesări omnia ūno tempŏre ĕrant ăgenda: vexillum prōpōnendum,[9] quod[10] ĕrat insigne, quŭm ăd arma concurri[13] ŏportēret[11]; signum tūba dandum[9]; ăb ŏpĕre rĕvŏcandi[12] mīlĭtes; qui[16] paulo longius[14] aggĕris pĕtendi causā[15] prōcessĕrant arcessendi[12]; ăcies instruenda,[9] mīlĭtes cŏhortandi.[12]

Write in Latin.

1. I intend to write a letter.   2. I was intending to go to Bibracte.   3. The lieutenant was to storm the town.   4. My brother is about to go to the city.   5. The Gauls intend to carry on war with their neighbors.   6. The boys must hasten home.   7. We must carry on war with our neighbors.   8. You will have to fortify the town.   9. We shall have to exhort the soldiers.   10. The consul had to give the signal.   11. The city will have to be fortified.   12. The town had to be stormed.

Notes and Questions.

[1] Imitate the Examples in translation.

[2] Give the Synopsis and Conjugation of each Periphrastic form.

[3] See **71**.   [4] See **67**.

[5] See **131** and Example 8 ; what is the literal translation ?

[6] What are the different translations of this sentence ?   See **39** and **131**.

[7] **māturandum est** has no *personal* subject ; verbs which do not take a Direct Object in the Active Voice have only the *impersonal* construction in the Passive.

[8] See Ln. LXVIII., Example 1.   [9] Supply **ĕrat**.

[10] Why is **quod** in the Neuter Singular ?

[11] See Ln. LXIX., Examples 6 and 7 ; what is the subject of **ŏportēret ?** Translate by the Indicative.

[12] Supply **ĕrant**.   [13] **concurri**, *to rush*.

[14] **paulo longius**, *a little too far*.

[15] **aggĕris — causā**, *for the purpose of seeking materials for a mound*.

[16] The antecedent of **qui** is **ii**, which is the subject of **arcessendi (ĕrant)**.

LESSON LXXI.

USE OF THE DATIVE.

132. *Datire with Intransitive Verbs.*   A. & G. **226** ; **227** : A. & S. **374** (1) ; **376** : B. **241**, Rule XXIX. ; **244**, Rule XXXII. : B. & M. **824** ; **831** : G **345** : H. **385**, I., II., and Note 3 : C. **153** ; **155**.

EXAMPLES.

1. **Cīvĭtātī (132) persuāsit ŭt exīrent,**[1] *he persuaded* THE STATE *to go forth.*
2. **Novīs rēbus studēbat,** *he was eager* FOR A REVOLUTION; lit., *for new things.*
3. **Allobrŏgĭbus impĕrāvit,** *he gave orders* TO THE ALLOBROGES.
4. **Plăcuit ei (132) ut mittĕret,**[1] *it pleased* HIM *to send.*
5. **Sī Allobrŏgĭbus satisfaciat,** *if he should give satisfaction* TO THE ALLOBROGES.

Analyze and parse.

1. Hoc[2] făcĭlius eis persuāsit, quŏd[3] undĭquĕ lŏci nātūrā[4] Helvētii contĭnentur. 2. Is, Marco Messāla ĕt Marco Pisōne consŭlĭbus,[5] regni cŭpĭdĭtāte inductus[6] conjūrātiōnem nōbĭlĭtātis fēcit ĕt cīvĭtāti[20] persuāsit, ŭt dē fīnĭbus suis cŭm omnĭbus cōpiis exīrent.[1] 3. Persuādent Raurăcis ĕt Tulingis, fīnĭtĭmis,[7] ŭti, eōdem ūsi[8] consĭlio,[9] oppĭdis[5] suis vīcisquĕ exustis,[10] ūnā cŭm iis prŏfĭciscantur.[1] 4. Orgĕtŏrix cŭpĭdĭtāte regni adductus[6] nŏvis rēbus[11] stŭdēbat. 5. Liscus dixit Dumnorĭgem făvēre Helvētiis sĕd ōdisse[12] Caesărem ĕt Rōmānos. 6. Caesar Allobrŏgĭbus impĕrāvit ŭt iis frūmenti cōpiam făcĕrent.[1] 7. Quamobrem plăcuit[13] ei ŭt ăd Ariovistum lēgātos mittĕret. 8. Huic lĕgiōni Caesar indulsĕrat praecĭpuē. 9. Sī[14] Aeduis dē[15] injūriis, quas ipsis[16] sociīsquĕ eōrum[17] intŭlĕrint,[18] ĭtĕm sī Allobrŏgĭbus sătisfăciant, cŭm iis pācem făciat.

Write in Latin.

1. We persuaded the men to go[1] forth. 2. They persuaded the Allobroges to go to Rome. 3. We shall persuade the Helvetii more easily for this reason,[2] because they are hemmed in on all sides by mountains. 4. We shall endeavor to persuade (our) neighbors to adopt[8] the same plan, burn up[10] their houses and set out[1] in company with us.

5. We shall favor neither the enemy nor our friends.   6. He will give satisfaction to the citizens for[15] the wrongs which he has brought upon them[16] and their[17] allies.   7. We can[19] not give you satisfaction for all the wrongs which we have brought upon you.

Notes and Questions.

[1] See Ln. XXXVIII., Note 3.   [2] See *79.*

[3] **quŏd** is a *conjunction ;* what kind of a clause does it introduce ?

[4] See Ln. XLV., Note 4 and *79.*   [5] See *122.*

[6] See Ln. LXIII., Examples.   [7] See *25.*

[8] **ûsi** from **ûtor,** *to adopt ;* lit., *having adopted, made use of.*

[9] See *104.*

[10] **oppĭdis — exustis,** *to burn up their towns, etc.*; lit., *their towns, etc. having been burned up. (122)*

[11] See Ex. 2.

[12] What kind of a verb is **ŏdisse ?** *(127)*

[13] **plăcuit** is an impersonal verb in this sentence ; what is its subject ?

[14] Sc. **sătisfăciant.**   [15] **de,** *for.*

[16] See *67.*   [17] See Ln. LVIII., Note 2.

[18] **intŭlĕrint** from **infĕro** ; render it by the Perfect Indicative.

[19] See Ln. XXVIII., Ex. 1.

[20] **cīvītāti,** *state,* is used here for **cīvĭbus,** *citizens ;* hence the dependent clause has **exirent** instead of **exiret.**

———◦◦╳◦◦———

LESSON LXXII.

USE OF THE ABLATIVE AND SUBJUNCTIVE.

133. Ablative with Comparatives. A. & G. 247: A. & S. 416: B. 261, Rule XLVI., *c:* B. & M. *895:* G. 399: H. 417: C. 174.

134. Subjunctive expressing a Wish or Command. A. & G. 266; 267: A. & S. 472; 473, *a:* B. 309, Rule LXVIII.: B. & M. *1193; 1197:* G. 247; 249; 253; 256: H. 483; 484, I., II., IV.: C. 203, 1 and note.

EXAMPLES.

1. **Nōn amplius mīlĭbus (*133*) passuum octōdĕcĭm ăbĕrat,** *he was not more* THAN EIGHTEEN MILES *distant.*

2. **Nihil virtūte (*133*) mĕlius est,** *nothing is better* THAN VIRTUE.

3. **Cīves mei sint (*134*) beāti,** MAY *my fellow-citizens* BE *happy.*

4. **Amēmus (*134*) pătriam,** LET US LOVE *our country.*

5. **Vĕniat (*134*),** LET HIM COME.

6. **Nē hŏdie prŏfĭciscāmur (*134*),** LET US *not* SET OUT *to-day.*

Analyze and parse.

1. Quid virtūte mĕlius est? 2. Scīmus sōlem mājōrem essĕ terrā. 3. Amīcĭtia, quā[1] nĭhil mĕlius hăbēmus, nōbis[2] ā dis[3] immortālĭbus dăta est. 4. Haec[4] sunt dulciōra melle. 5. Mīlĭtes fortiōres sunt impĕrātōre. 6. Caesar ab oppĭdo nōn amplius mīlĭbus passuum duōbus castra pŏsuit. 7. Ab urbe nōn amplius mīlĭbus passuum quinquĕ castra pōnēmus. 8. Ipse ăb hostium castris nōn longius mille[5] ĕt quingentis passĭbus ăbĕrat. 9. Quŏd ā Bibracte, oppĭdo Aeduōrum longē maxĭmo ĕt cōpiōsissĭmo, nōn amplius mīlĭbus passuum octōdĕcĭm ăbĕrat, rĕi frūmentāriae prospĭciendum[6] existĭmāvit:[7] ĭter[8] ăb Helvētiis āvertit āc Bibracte īre contendit. 10. Mīlĭtes vĕniant. 11. Sītis[9] beāti. 12. Hos latrōnes interfĭciāmus. 13. Caesărem dē ējus adventu certiōrem făciāmus. 14. Ad Bibracte dē quarta vĭgĭlia nē prŏfĭciscāmur. 15. Lēgātus certior fīat dē meo consĭlio. 16. Iter cĕlĕrius pĕr Galliam făciāmus. 17. Cīvĭtāti[10] persuādeāmus ŭt exeant.[11] 18. Nŏvis rēbus nē stŭdeāmus. 19. Hostĭbus patriae nē faveāmus. 20. Aeduis dē injūriis, quas eōrum sŏciis[12] intŭlĭmus, sătisfaciāmus.

Write in Latin.

1. This man is bigger than Caesar. 2. Nothing is better than friendship. 3. The lieutenant is braver than the general. 4. We are not more than twenty miles from the city.

5. May we be brave. 6. Let us set out in the third watch. 7. Let us look out for supplies. 8. Let us not kill these men. 9. Let us persuade the citizens to go forth. 10. May it please [13] you to send ambassadors to Caesar. 11. Let the enemy come. 12. Let us make haste to go home.

Notes and Questions.

[1] See *133*.   [2] See *39*.

[8] See *20*.   [4] See Ln. LVIII., Note 13.

[5] Is **mille** in this sentence an adjective or substantive ? See *108*.

[6] Sc. **essĕ**. See *130*.

[7] **rĕi — existĭmävit,** *he thought that he ought to look out for supplies.*

[8] Introduce the translation of this clause with *accordingly*.

[9] See Example 3.   [10] See *132*.

[11] See Ln. LXXI., Note 20.   [12] See *67*.

[13] See Ln. LXXI., Example 4.

———∘∘⦂⦿⦂∘∘———

LESSON LXXIII.

TENSES OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE. — SUBJUNCTIVE IN FINAL CLAUSES.

135. Sequence of Tenses. A. & G. 283 – 286 : A. & S. 524 – 526 : B. 61; 311, Rule LXX. : B. & M. *1163; 1164:* G. 216; 510 : H. 198; 490 – 493 : C. 234.

136. Subjunctive of Purpose. A. & G. 317, Remark : A. & S. 482 : B. 295, Rule LVIII.; 299, Rule LXI. : B. & M. *1205; 1207:* G. 543 – 546; 632 : H. 497, I., II. : C. 206. This answers such questions as *For what purpose ? With what design ? With what aim ? To what end ? Why ? What ?*

EXAMPLES.

1. **Vĕnĭt**		*he comes*	
2. **Vĕnĭet**	**ŭt vĭdeat,**	*he will come*	TO SEE, IN ORDER TO SEE, THAT HE MAY SEE.
3. **Vēnĭt**		*he has come*	
4. **Vēnĕrĭt**		*he will have come*	

5. **Vĕnĭēbat**   *he was coming* TO SEE, IN ORDER
6. **Vēnĭt** } **ŭt vĭdēret,**   *he came*   } TO SEE, THAT HE
7. **Vēnĕrat**   *he had come* MIGHT SEE.

8. **Ut consĕquī posset pontem fēcĭt,** *he made a bridge* THAT HE MIGHT BE ABLE *to pursue.*

9. **Postŭlāvit nē Aeduīs bellum inferret,** *he demanded* THAT HE SHOULD NOT MAKE *war* UPON *the Aedui.*

10. **Equĭtātum quī sustĭnēret impĕtum mīsit,** *he sent cavalry* TO WITHSTAND *the attack.*

11. **Nē offendĕret vĕrēbātur,** *he was fearing* THAT *he should offend.*

12. **Ut socii vĕnīrent vĕrēbātur,** *he was fearing* THAT *the allies would* NOT *come.*

<div align="center">Analyze and parse.</div>

1. Allobrŏgĭbus impĕrāvit, ŭt iīs frūmentī cōpiam făcĕrent. 2. Caesar Dumnŏrĭgem mŏnet, ŭt ĭn rĕlĭquum tempus[1] suspīciōnes vītet.   3. Năm, nē ējus supplĭcio[2] Divitiăci ănĭmum offendĕret, vĕrēbātur.   4. Dumnŏrĭgi persuāsit ŭt ĭdĕm[3] cōnārētur.   5. Cōpiās suās Caesar ĭn proxĭmum collem subdūcit ĕquĭtātumquĕ, quī sustĭnēret hostium impĕtum, mīsit.   6. Lēgātos ăd eum mittunt quī dīcant agros consŭli[4] vastandos essĕ.[5] 7. Postŭlāvit nē aut Aeduīs[6] aut eōrum sŏciīs[6] bellum inferret.   8. Nonnulli pŭdōre adducti,[7] ŭt tĭmōris suspiciōnem vītārent, rĕmănēbant.   9. Caesar omnium ex conspectū rĕmōtis ĕquis,[8] ŭt spem fŭgae tollĕret, cŏhortātus[9] suos[10] proelium commīsit.   10. Caesar ăd Ariovistum lēgātos mīsit, quī ăb eo postŭlārent, ŭti ălĭquem[11] lŏcum mĕdium utrīusque[12] collŏquio[13] dīcĕret.   11. Castella commūnit, quo[14] făcĭlius, sī sē invīto[15] transīre cōnārentur, prŏhĭbēre possit.

<div align="center">Write in Latin.[16]</div>

1. I shall give orders to the Gauls to furnish us with a supply of corn.   2. He had given orders to the Sequani to furnish a supply of corn to the soldiers.   3. We shall advise

him [17] to avoid suspicions in the future.[1]   4. We have advised Cassius to avoid suspicions in the future.   5. We advised Cassius to avoid suspicions in the future.   6. Caesar was fearing that Dumnorix would not avoid suspicions in the future.   7. We shall send cavalry to withstand the attack of the Gauls.   8. Caesar, after removing his horse[8] out of sight, urged his men to fight bravely.   9. He demanded that they should not make war either upon us or upon our allies. 10. We shall fortify the place that[14] we may be able to more easily withstand an attack.

Notes and Questions.

[1] in rĕlĭquum tempus, *in the future;* lit., *into the remaining time.*

[2] See *79.*

[3] See LN. LVIII., NOTE 13 ; where would idem be made ?

[4] See *131.*   [5] See *130* and *69.*

[6] See *67.*   [7] See LN. LXIII., Ex. 3.

[8] See *122* and EXAMPLES.   [9] See LN. LXIII., Ex. 2.

[10] See LN. LXV., NOTE 1.   [11] How declined ? See *116, a.*

[12] mĕdium utriusque, *midway between both;* uterque is declined like uter. (*24*)

[13] See *39.*

[14] quo is preferred to ut when its clause contains a comparative.

[15] se invito, *against his will;* see *122 ;* lit., *he unwilling.*

[16] In writing these imitate carefully the preceding Latin sentences.

[17] See LN. LVIII., NOTE 2.

———◦◦✧◦◦———

LESSON LXXIV.

USE OF THE DATIVE (*continued*).

137. Dative of the Person possessing. A. & G. 231 : A. & S. 384 : B. 243, RULE XXXI. : B. & M. *821 :* G. 349 : H. 387 : C. 156.

138. Two Datives. A. & G. 233, *a :* A. & S. 385; 386 : B. 246, RULE XXXIV. : B. & M. *848 :* G. 350 : H. 390, I., II.: C. 161.

1. **Est mǐhi (*187*) dǒmi pǎter,** *I have a father at home;* lit., *a father is to me at home.*

2. **Sex vǐro (*187*) fīlii fuērunt,** A MAN *had six sons.*

3. **Haec mǐhi (*188*) sunt cūrae,** *these* (*things*) *are* A CARE TO ME ; lit., *these* (*things*) *are* FOR A CARE TO ME.

4. **Tertiam ǎciem nostris subsǐdio mīsit,** *he sent the third line* AS A RELIEF TO OUR (MEN).

5. **Nǒvissǐmis praesǐdio ěrant,** *they were* A PROTECTION TO THE HINDMOST.

Analyze and parse.

1. Mǐhi est ǎmīcus ; tǐbi sunt plūrǐmi ǎmīci. 2. Magni pědes sunt meo fratri sěd cǎput parvum. 3. Erit consǔli magnus exercǐtus. 4. Impěrātōri fuērunt mīlǐtes multi ět[1] fortes. 5. Virtus est vǐro hǒnōri. 6. Dixit haec sǐbi essě cūrae. 7. Quinquě cǒhortes castris praesǐdio rělīquit. 8. Lēgāto[2] impěrāvit ǔt quinquě cǒhortes castris praesǐdio rělinquěret.[3] 9. Magno ūsui nostris fuit. 10. Nǎm ěquǐtātui,[4] quem[5] auxǐlio Caesǎri Aedui mīsěrant, Dumnǒrix praeěrat. 11. Gallis magno ǎd pugnam[6] ěrat[7] impědimento, quǒd nōn sǎtǐs commǒdē pugnāre pǒtěrant. 12. Boii ět Tulingi, qui hǒmǐnum mīlǐbus[8] circǐtěr quinděcǐm agmen hostium claudēbant ět nǒvissǐmis[9] praesǐdio ěrant, ex ǐtǐněre[10] nostros circumvēnēre.[11] 13. His rēbus[12] cognǐtis Caesar Gallōrum anǐmos verbis[13] confirmāvit pollǐcǐtusquě est sǐbi eam rem cūrae fǔtūram.[14] 14. Ariovistus dixit ǎmīcǐtiam pǒpǔli Rōmāni sǐbi ornāmento ět praesǐdio nōn dētrǐmento essě[15] ǒportēre.[16]

Write in Latin.

1. My friend has four sons. 2. The lieutenant had many soldiers. 3. He will leave two legions as a protection to the camp. 4. The cavalry, which the lieutenant sent, was a great protection to the rear. 5. It was a great hindrance to us in

battle that we could[17] not fight with sufficient ease.   6. He
will order the lieutenant[2] to send[18] soldiers as a relief to our
men.   7. He ordered the lieutenant to send soldiers as a relief
to our men.   8. The consul ought[16] to send soldiers as a
relief to us.

Notes and Questions.

[1] See Ln. VI., Note 5.   [2] See *139*.

[8] Why is the Subjunctive used ? (*136*) Why the Imperfect Tense ? (*135*)
What question does **ut — rĕlinquĕret** answer ? (*136*)

[4] See *67*.

[5] **quem** ; why is the Masculine Singular used ?   Why the Accusative ?

[6] **ăd pugnam,** *in battle.*

[7] The subject of **ĕrat** is the substantive clause **quŏd — pŏtĕrant.**

[8] Is **milĭbus** used as a noun or as an adjective ? (*108*); see also *54.*

[9] **nŏvissĭmis,** *to the hindmost ;* lit., *to the newest.*

[10] **ex Itĭnĕre,** *on the màrch.*

[11] What is the other ending of the Perfect Indicative Active 3d Plural ?

[12] See *122*.   [13] See *54*.

[14] Sc. **essĕ.**   [15] See *129*.

[16] See *128* and Ex. 8.   [17] See Ln. XXVIII., Ex. 2.

[18] See *136*.

——∽o⟩∘⟨o∘——

LESSON LXXV.

SUBJUNCTIVE IN CONSECUTIVE CLAUSES.

139. *Subjunctive of Result.*   A. & G. 319, *d ;* 332, *a :* A. &
S. 483 ; 494, *a ;* 499 : B. 296, Rule LIX. ; 297, Rule LX.; 301,
Rule LXII. : B. & M. *1218–1220 :* G. 553–558 : 551, 1, 2 :
H. 500, I., II. ; 501, I., 1 ; 504 : C. 207; 208; 209; 223.

EXAMPLES.

1. **Tantus tĭmor exercĭtum occŭpāvit ŭt omnium mentes
   perturbāret,** *such fear seized the army* THAT IT DISTURBED
   the minds of all.

2. **Dīxĭt nōn sē tăm barbărum essĕ ŭt nōn scīret,** *he said he was not so uncivilized* AS *not* TO KNOW.

3. **Fīēbat ŭt mĭnus lātē văgārentur,** *it happened* THAT THEY ROAMED ABOUT *less extensively.*

4. **Rĕtĭnērī nōn pŏtĕrant quīn tēla conjĭcĕrent,** *they could not be prevented* FROM HURLING *weapons.*

Analyze and parse.

1. Mīlĭtes nŭmĕro[1] tăm multi ĕrant, ŭt agmĭni[2] nŏvissĭmo magno praesĭdio[2] essent.[3] 2. His rēbus[4] fīēbat[5] ŭt ĕt mĭnus lātē văgārentur ĕt mĭnus făcĭle fīnĭtĭmis bellum inferre possent. 3. Ariovistus dixit nōn sē tăm barbărum essĕ, ŭt nōn scīret bello[6] Allobrŏgum proxĭmo Aeduos Rōmānis auxĭlium nōn tŭlisse. 4. Tantus sŭbĭto tĭmor omnem exercĭtum occŭpāvit, ŭt nōn mĕdiocrĭtĕr omnium mentes[7] anĭmosquĕ perturbāret. 5. Mons autĕm altissĭmus impendēbat, ŭt[8] făcĭle perpauci prŏhĭbēre possent. 6. Divĭco respondit: Ită[9] Helvētios ā mājōrĭbus suis instĭtūtos essĕ,[10] ŭti obsĭdes accĭpĕre, nōn dăre, consuērint.[11] 7. Ita dies[12] circĭtĕr quindĕcĭm ĭter fēcērunt, ŭti intĕr nŏvissĭmum hostium agmen ĕt nostrum prīmum[13] sex mīlia passuum interessent. 8. Ipse autĕm Ariovistus tantos sĭbi[14] spīrĭtus, tantam arrŏgantiam sumpsĕrat, ŭt fĕrendus[15] nōn vĭdērētur. 9. Germāni rĕtĭnēri nōn pŏtĕrant quin ĭn nostros tēla conjĭcĕrent.

Write in Latin.

1. Such fear seized the men that they all fled.   2. Such fear seizes the men that they all flee.   3. We are so many in number[1] that we can easily keep their[17] army from the march.[16] 4. For these reasons[4] it happened that they easily kept our army from the march.[16]   5. For these reasons it happens that they make war upon their neighbors.   6. They marched in such a manner that four miles intervened between their rear and our van.[13]   7. This man assumes[19] such lofty airs

that he does not seem endurable.[15]   8. The lieutenant as-
sumed such lofty airs that he did not seem endurable.[16]
9. The Romans could not be prevented from making[18] war
upon their neighbors.

<div align="center">Notes and Questions.</div>

[1] See *124*.   [2] See *138*.

[3] Why the *Imperfect ? (135)*

[4] his **rēbus**, *for these reasons ;* see *79*.

[5] What is the subject of **fīēbat** ?   [6] See *111*.

[7] How do **mens** and **anĭmus** differ in signification ?   See GEN. VY.

[8] **ŭt, so that.**   [9] **ĭta** modifies **instĭtūtos essĕ.**

[10] **instĭtūtos essĕ** is object of **rēspondit.** *(59)*

[11] See A. & G. **128**, *a :* A. & S. **228**, *a, b :* B. **95**, *d :* B. & M. *315 :*
G. **151**, 1 : H. **235 :** C. **84 ;** 7.

[12] See *93*.   [13] **primum**, sc. **agmen** ; render *van.*

[14] See *39*.

[15] **fĕrendus**, *endurable ;* lit. *(one) to be endured.*

[16] See LN. XLIII., NOTE 6.   [17] See LN. LVIII., NOTE 2.

[18] See EXAMPLE 4.   [19] *to assume,* **sĭbi sūmĕre.**

<div align="center">——oo⦂⦂oo——</div>

<div align="center">

LESSON LXXVI.

USE OF THE GENITIVE.

</div>

140. Genitive with Adjectives. A. & G. **218 :** A. & S. **359 :**
B. **234**, RULE XXIII. : B. & M. *765 :* G. **373 :** H. **399 :** C. **136**, 2.

141. Genitive in Predicate. A. & G. **214**, *c :* A. & S. **357 :**
B. **230**, REM. 1 : B. & M. *780 :* G. **365 :** H. **401 :** C. **135**.

142. Genitive with certain Verbs. A. & G. **219 :** A. & S.
365 : B. **235**, RULE XXIV.: B. & M. *788 :* G. **375 :** H. **406**, II. :
C. **137**, 1, 2.

<div align="center">EXAMPLES.</div>

1. **Qui rĕi (*140*) mīlĭtāris pĕrītissĭmus hăbēbātur,** *who was
    considered very skilful* IN *military* SCIENCE.

2. **Bellandi (140) cŭpĭdi,** *desirous* OF CARRYING ON WAR.

3. **Jŭdĭcium impĕrātōris (141) est,** *the decision is* THE GEN-ERAL'S ; or, *belongs* TO THE GENERAL.

4. **Gallia est pŏpŭli (141) Rōmāni,** *Gaul belongs* TO THE *Roman* PEOPLE.

5. **Rĕmĭniscātur pristĭnae virtūtis (142) Helvētiŏrum,** *let him recollect* THE *former* VALOR *of the Helvetii.*

6. **Vĕtĕris contŭmēliae (142) oblīvisci vult,** *he is willing to forget* THE *old* INSULT.

Analyze and parse.

1. Lēgātus belli pĕrītus[1] hăbētur.   2. Lēgātus nītĭtur ŭt belli pĕrītus fīat.[2]   3. Nītēbātur ŭt rĕi mīlĭtāris pĕrītissĭmus fĭeret.[3]   4. Publius Considius, qui rĕi mīlĭtāris pĕrītissĭmus hăbēbātur ĕt[5] ĭn exercĭtu Luci Sullae ĕt posteā ĭn Marci Crassi[4] fuĕrat, cŭm explōrātōrĭbus praemittĭtur.   5. Ariovistus dixit sē nōn tăm impĕrītum esse rērum, ŭt nōn scīret[6] Aeduos aux-ĭlio[7] pŏpŭli Rōmāni nōn ūsos esse.[8]   6. Mīlĭtes hortābor, ŭt glōriae sempĕr memŏres sint.   7. Nos mŏnuit ŭt virtūtis sempĕr mĕmŏres essēmus.   8. Qua dē causa[9] hŏmĭnes bel-landi[10] cŭpĭdi magno dŏlōre affĭciēbantur.   9. Dīcit ipsum esse Dumnŏrĭgem cŭpĭdum nŏvārum rērum.   10. Dīcunt dē summa belli[11] jūdĭcium impĕrātōris essĕ[12] sē existĭmāvisse.[12] 11. Nĕquĕ jūdĭcat Galliam pŏtius esse Ariovisti quăm pŏpŭli Rōmāni.   12. Mīlĭtum est fortĭtĕr pugnāre ;[13] impĕrātōris est impĕrāre.   13. Divĭco Caesărem hortātur ŭt rĕmĭniscātur ĕt[14] vĕtĕris incommŏdi pŏpŭli Rōmāni et pristĭnae virtūtis Helvē-tiŏrum.   14. Caesar rĕcentium injūriārum oblīvisci nōn vult.[15] 15. Omnis contŭmēliae oblīviscāmur.

Write in Latin.

1. I·am not considered very skilful in war.[16]   2. I shall strive to become[2] skilful in war.   3. This lieutenant, who had been in Sulla's army and afterwards in Caesar's and was

considered skilful in battle, was sent forward with soldiers.
4. These soldiers are very desirous of carrying on war.[16]
5. The decision concerning the general management[11] of affairs
belongs[17] to the consul.   6. This house is Caesar's.   7. We
ought to forget insults.[18]   8. Let us forget all wrongs.

Notes and Questions.

[1] See *64.*   [2] See *126* and *136.*

[3] Why Imperfect ? (*135*)

[4] In **Marci Crassi,** sc. **exercitu** ; translate, *in that of Marcus Crassus.*

[5] **ĕt** connects **hăbēbātur** and **fuĕrat.**   [6] See *139* and Example 2.

[7] See *104.*   [8] **ūsos essĕ** depends upon **sciret.**

[9] **qua dĕ causa,** *for this reason.*

[10] **bellandi** is a Gerund ; parse it like a noun.

[11] **dĕ summa belli,** *concerning the general management of the war.*

[12] **essĕ** depends upon **existĭmāvisse** ; **existĭmāvisse** upon **dicunt.**

[13] See *129.*   [14] See Lᴺ. LXI., Nᴏᴛᴇ 3.

[15] See *125.*   [16] See *140.*

[17] See Ex. 3.   [18] See *142.*

———∞○┊○┊○∞———

LESSON LXXVII.

CONDITIONAL SENTENCES.

143. A. & G. **304 – 308**: A. & S. **476,** *a, b :* B. **305,** *a,* 1 – 3 ;
306, Rᴜʟᴇ LXVI. : B. & M. *1259 – 1268 :* G. **590 ; 591 ; 596 –
599 :** H. **506 ; 507,** I. – III. : C. **215,** 1, 2, 3, 4.

EXAMPLES.

1. **Sī vincit, laetātur,** *if he is conquering, he is rejoicing.*

2. **Sī vincet, laetābĭtur,** *if he conquers (shall conquer), he will
    rejoice.*

3. **Sī vīcĕrit, laetābĭtur,** *if he conquers (shall have conquered), he
    will rejoice.*

4. **Sī vincat, laetētur,** *if he should conquer, he would rejoice.*

5. **Sī vincēret, laetārētur,** *if he were conquering, he would be rejoicing.*

6. **Sī vīcisset, laetātus esset,** *if he had conquered, he would have rejoiced.*

Analyze and parse.

1. Sī pugnat, vincit. 2. Sī pugnābit, vincet. 3. Sī pugnā-vĕrit, vincet. 4. Sī pugnet, vincat. 5. Sī pugnāret, vincĕret. 6. Sī pugnāvisset, vīcisset. 7. Sī Helvētii Allobrŏgĭbus[1] sătisfăcient, cum iis pācem făciam. 8. Sī Helvētii Allobrŏ-gĭbus sătisfăciant, cŭm iis pācem făciam. 9. Caesar dīcit sī Helvētii Allobrŏgĭbus sătisfăciant, sēsē cŭm iis pācem esse factūrum.[2] 10. Sī quid[3] vultis,[10] rĕvertĭmĭni.[4] 11. Sī pācem pŏpŭlus Rōmānus cŭm Helvētiis faciet, ĭn eam partem ībunt[11] Helvētii ŭbĭ eos esse vŏluĕris.[5] 12. Sīn bello[6] persĕqui[7] per-sĕvērābis,[8] rĕmĭniscĕre[4] ĕt vĕtĕris incommŏdi[9] pŏpŭli Rōmāni ĕt pristĭnae virtūtis Helvētiōrum. 13. Sī vĕtĕris contŭmēliae oblīvisci vellem,[10] nŭm[12] ĕtiăm rĕcentium injūriārum mĕmŏ-riam dēpōnĕre[7] possem? 14. Sī id fīet, prōvinciae[13] pĕrīcŭ-lōsum ĕrit. 15. Caesar dīcit sī nēmo[14] sĕquātur, sē cŭm sōla dĕcĭma lĕgiōne ĭtūrum essĕ.[11]

Write in Latin.

1. If he is satisfying the Aedui,[1] he is rejoicing. 2. If he satisfies the Aedui, he will rejoice. 3. If he should satisfy the Aedui, he would rejoice. 4. If he were satisfying the Aedui, he would be rejoicing. 5. If he had satisfied the Aedui, he would have rejoiced. 6. If you wish anything,[3] ask. 7. If they make peace with us, we shall go into that part where they wish[5] us to be. 8. But if they persist in pursuing[8] us with war,[6] let them recall to mind[15] our former valor.[9] 9. If we were willing to forget the old misfortune, could we also get rid of the remembrance of recent insults?

[1] See *132.*   [2] **essĕ factūrum = factūrum essĕ.**

[3] See *116* and Ex. 6.   [4] See *47.*

[5] What does the Future Perfect Tense denote ? (*42*)

[6] See *54.*   [7] See *69.*

[8] **persĕqui persĕvēro,** *I persist in pursuing.*

[9] See *142.*   [10] See *125.*

[11] See *126.*

[12] What answer is implied ?   See LN. LXI., NOTE 1.

[13] See *86.*

[14] The Genitive and Ablative of **nēmo** are rare : these cases are supplied by **nullīus** and **nullo** (from **nullus,** *24*).

[15] See *134.*

LESSON LXXVIII.

USE OF THE ABLATIVE.

144.** **Ablative expressing Measure (Degree) of Difference.
A. & G. **250 :** A. & S. **415 :** B. **262,** RULE XLVII. : B. & M.
929 : G. **400 :** H. **423 :** C. **176.**

***144,** a.   **Ablative of Quality.**   A. & G. **251 :** A. & S. **411 :**
B. **263,** RULE XLVIII. : B. & M. ***888 :*** G. **402 :** H. **419,** II. : C.
175.   This is called sometimes *the Ablative of Characteristic,* some-
times *the Descriptive Ablative.*

EXAMPLES.

1. **Altĕrum ĭter multo (*144*) expĕdītius ĕrat,** *the other route
   was* MUCH *more passable.*

2. **Mātūrius paulo (*144*) dŏmum contendit,** *he hastens home* A
   LITTLE *sooner.*

3. **Ipsum Dumnŏrĭgem, summā audāciā (*144, a*),** *Dumnorix
   himself,* (a man) OF THE GREATEST BOLDNESS.

4. **Summa hūmānĭtāte (*144, a*) ădŏlescens,** *a youth* OF THE
   HIGHEST CULTURE.

Analyze and parse.

1. Caesar multo grăvius quĕritŭr.[1] 2. Multo mājor ălacrĭtas exercĭtui[2] injecta est. 3. Altĕrum ĭter pĕr prōvinciam nostram ĕrat, multo făcĭlius atquĕ expĕdītius, proptĕreā quŏd intĕr fīnes Helvētiōrum ĕt Allobrŏgum, qui nūpĕr pācāti ĕrant, Rhŏdănus fluit. 4. Caesar ūnā aestāte[3] duōbus maxĭmis bellis[4] confectis mātūrius paulo, quăm tempus anni postŭlābat, ĭn hīberna ĭn[5] Sēquănos exercĭtum dēduxit. 5. Post ējus mortem nĭhĭlo mĭnus Helvētii id, quŏd constĭtuĕrant,[6] făcĕre cōnantur, ŭt ē fīnĭbus suis exeant.[7] 6. Rĕlĭquum spătium mons contĭnet magnā altĭtūdĭne, ĭtă, ŭt rādīces[8] montis ex utrăque parte[9] rīpae[10] flūmĭnis contingant.[11] 7. Galli ingenti magnĭtūdĭne corpŏrum Germānos,[12] incrēdĭbĭli virtūte atquĕ exercĭtātiōne ĭn armis essĕ[13] praedĭcābant. 8. Commŏdissĭmum vīsum est[14] Cāium Vălĕrium Procillum, summā virtūte ĕt hūmānĭtāte ădŏlescentem, ăd eum mittĕre. 9. Rĕpĕrit ipsum esse Dumnŏrĭgem, summā audāciā, magnā ăpŭd plēbem proptĕr lībĕrālĭtātem grātiā, cŭpĭdum[15] rērum[16] nŏvārum.

Write in Latin.

1. He censures the soldiers much more severely. 2. He censured me a little more severely than the remaining soldiers. 3. The route through our province is much more practicable than through the territory of the Sequani. 4. The lieutenant led his army into winter-quarters among[5] the Aedui a little sooner than the time of year demanded. 5. We shall none the less attempt to do that which we have resolved (to do). 6. Caius is a youth of extraordinary valor. 7. We have seen mountains of great height. 8. It seemed[14] most suitable to send to him Titus, a youth of extraordinary practice in arms.

——∘∘⦂❂⦂∘∘——

LESSON LXXIX.

CONCESSIVE CLAUSES.

145. A. & G. **313**, *a–e:* A. & S. **478–480; 510** (2): B. **292,**
e, RULE LVI. ; **303**, *d*, RULE LXIV. : B. & M. *1281–1284:* G.
605–609: H. **514; 515**, I.–III. : C. **204**, 1, 2; **214**, 3 ; **225.**

EXAMPLES.

1. **Quŭm pugnātum sit,** *although they fought ;* lit., *it was fought.*
2. **Lĭcĕt victōriā glōriētur,** *although he glories in victory.*
3. **Quamvīs cărēret nōmĭne,** *although he was without the name.*
4. **Etsī vīdēbat, tămĕn nōn pŭtābat,** *although he saw, yet he did
   not think.*

Analyze and parse.

1. Quŭm fortĭtĕr pugnent, tămĕn nōn vincent.   2. Quŭm
Sēquăni Rōmānis¹ sătisfēcĕrint, tămĕn lēgātus pācem cŭm iis
nōn făcit.   3. Quŭm ea² ĭtă sint, tămĕn, sī obsĭdes ăb iis sĭbi
dentur,³ cŭm iis pācem făciat.³   4. Năm hoc tōto proelio,⁴
quŭm ăb hōra septĭma ăd vespĕrum pugnātum sit,⁵ āversum
hostem vĭdēre nēmo pŏtuit.   5. Lĭcet⁶ me hortētur, nōn pug-
nābo.   6. Lĭcet mīles vulnĕrātus sit, tămĕn laetātur.   7. Lĭ-

cet Helvētiī sua victōria[7] glōrientur, tămĕn ĭter făcient nōn
pĕr nostram prōvinciam. 8. Erat dignĭtāte[8] rēgia, quamvīs
cărēret nōmĭne.[9] 9. Quamvīs sint sŭb ăqua, sŭb ăqua mălĕ-
dīcĕre tentant. 10. Caesar, etsī prŏpĕ exacta jăm aestas ĕrat,
tămĕn eō[10] exercĭtum adduxit. 11. Năm etsī sĭnĕ ullō
pĕrīcŭlo lĕgiōnis[11] dēlectae cŭm ĕquĭtātu proelium fŏre[12]
vĭdēbat, tămĕn committendum[13] nōn pŭtābat. 12. Ită dies
circĭtĕr quindĕcĭm ĭter fēcērunt, ŭtī intĕr nŏvissĭmum hostium
agmen ĕt nostrum prīmum nōn amplius quīnis[14] aut sēnis
mīlĭbus[15] passuum intĕresset.[16]

Write in Latin.

1. Although they fought bravely, yet they did not conquer.
2. Although these things are so, yet we shall make peace with
them. 3. No one fled in this whole battle, although they
fought from the fifth hour till sunset. 4. We cannot see the
mountain, although it is of great height.[8] 5. The lieutenant
did not lead his army into winter-quarters, although the sum-
mer was almost gone. 6. He thinks that he ought to begin[13]
battle, although he sees that it will not be without danger to
the legions.

Notes and Questions.

[1] See *132*. [2] See Ln. LVIII., Note 13.

[3] See Ln. LXXVII., Ex. 4. What is the force of this conditional
clause ? (*143*)

[4] See *111*. [5] See Ex. 1.

[6] **lĭcĕt** is properly an Impersonal Verb (*128*), Present Tense, with **ŭt**
(*that*) omitted ; hence it is followed only by the *Present* and *Perfect* Sub-
junctive. (*135*) What is the literal translation ?

[7] See *79*. [8] See *144, a*.

[9] See Ex. 3. [10] **eō**, *thither*.

[11] A. & G. **217 :** A. & S. **353** (2): B. **233**, Rule XXII. : B. & M.
746 : G. **361**, 2 : H. **396**, III. : C. **133**, 3.

[12] **fŏre** = **fŭtūrum essĕ**. (*62*)

[13] **committendum**, sc. **essĕ** ; see *130*.

[14] **quinis**, etc., *than five*, etc. *each day*.

[15] See *133*. [16] See *139*.

LESSON LXXX.

USE OF THE ABLATIVE (*continued*).

146. Ablative of Price. A. & G. 252 : A. & S. 408 : B. **258,**
RULE XLIII., *c :* B. & M. *884 :* G. 404 : H. 422 : C. 179. This
answers such questions as *For how much ?   At what price ?*

147. Ablative of Distance. A. & G. 257, *b :* A. & S. 423, *b :*
B. **262,** RULE XLVII. : B. & M. *958 :* G. 335, REMARK 1 : H.
379, 2 : C. **176.** This answers the question *How far ?*

148. Ablative with Adjectives. A. & G. 245, *a :* A. & S.
418 : B. **261,** RULE XLVI., *a :* B. & M. *919 :* G. 373, REMARKS
1 – 4 : H. 421, III. : C. 179, 2.

EXAMPLES.

1. **Dŏmum duŏbus tălentis (*146*) ēmǐt,** *he bought a house* FOR
   TWO TALENTS.

2. **Oppǐdum parvo prĕtio (*146*) vendǐdǐt,** *he sold the town* AT A
   SMALL PRICE.

3. **Mīlǐbus (*147*) passuum quattuor ĕt vīgintī absunt,** *they are*
   TWENTY-FOUR MILES *distant.*

4. **Dignus est mājōrǐbus (*148*),** *he is worthy* OF (*his*) ANCESTORS.

Analyze and parse.

1. Hic[1] mercēde puĕros ĕt puellas dŏcet.   2. Vīgintī tă-
lentis ūnam ōrātiōnem Isocrătes vendǐdit.   3. Vendǐdit hic
auro patriam.   4. Victōria nōbis[2] multo sanguǐne stĕtit.[3]
5. Vĕreor nē victōria iis multo sanguǐne stet.[4]   6. Quŭm Rō-
māni vīcĕrint,[5] tămĕn victōria iis multo sanguǐne stĕtit.
7. Septǐmo die ăb explōrātōrǐbus certior factus[6] est Ariovisti
cōpias[7] ā nostris[8] mīlǐbus passuum quattuor ĕt vīgintī ăbesse.[9]
8. Hic lŏcus aequo fĕrē spătio ăb castris Ariovisti ĕt Caesăris
ăbĕrat.   9. Lĕgiōnem Caesar, quăm ĕquis[10] dēvexĕrat, passi-
bus dŭcentis ăb eo tŭmŭlo constǐtuit.   10. Itĕm ĕquǐtes

Ariovisti pări intervallo constĭtērunt.[11]   11. Eōdem die castra
prōmōvit ĕt mīlĭbus passuum sex ā Caesăris castris sŭb monte
consēdit.   12. Hī pueri patrĭbus indigni sunt.   13. Hic im-
pĕrātor immortālĭtāte dignus est.   14. Lĭcĕt[12] hī mīlĭtes
fortissĭmi sint, tămĕn mājōrĭbus indigni sunt.   15. Puĕrum
hortēmur ŭt mājōrĭbus dignus sit.[13]   16. Nulla vox est ăb iis
audīta pŏpŭli Rōmāni mājestāte ĕt sŭpĕriōrĭbus victōriis in-
digna.

1. This man[1] will teach for wages.   2. I shall sell my
house at a small price.   3. He is by no means rich, although
he sells[5] houses at a large price.   4. I fear that I shall not
sell[4] my house at a large price.   5. We are about fifteen miles
from the city.   6. We shall station the third legion three
hundred paces from the hill.   7. He will station his cavalry at
nearly an equal distance from the same place.   8. We shall
move forward our camp on the same day, and encamp at the
foot of a mountain ten miles from Geneva.   9. I fear that
these girls are not worthy of their mother.   10. Let us urge
the soldiers to be[13] worthy of their country.

Notes.

[1] See LN. LVIII., NOTE 13.   [2] See *39.*
[3] See GEN. VY. under **stŏ.**   [4] See LN. XLVI., NOTE 4.
[5] See *145.*   [6] See LN. LXVIII., EX. 2.
[7] See *53.*   [8] Sc. cōpiis.
[9] ăbessĕ depends upon the idea of saying contained in **ab** — **factus est,**
he was informed by scouts that, etc., i. e. who said that, etc.
[10] ĕquis, *on horseback ;* see *54.*   [11] See consistŏ, GEN. VY.
[12] See LN. LXXIX., NOTE 6.   [13] See *136.*

LESSON LXXXI.

CAUSAL CLAUSES.

149. A. & G. 321, *a*, *b*, *c*; 326: A. & S. 500 (2) *b*; 510 (2);
519: B. 302, Rule LXIII.: B. & M. *1250; 1251; 1255:* G.
538 - 541; 587; 636: H. 516, I., II.; 517: C. 214, 3; 224; 232.

EXAMPLES.

1. **Quŭm impĕtus sustinēre nōn possent, altĕri sē īn montem
   rĕcēpērunt,** *since they could not withstand the attacks, one
   party withdrew upon the mountain.*
2. **Caesar injūriam făciēbat qui vectīgālia dētĕriōra făcĕret,**
   *Caesar was doing wrong because he was making the revenues
   decrease.*
3. **Aedui questi sunt quŏd Harūdes fines eōrum pŏpŭlāren-
   tur,** *the Aedui complained because* (as they said) *the Harudes
   were laying waste their territory.*
4. **Quŏd ā Bibracte ăbĕrat, rei frūmentāriae prospĭciendum
   existĭmāvit,** *because he was distant from Bibracte, he thought
   that he must look out for supplies.*

Analyze and parse.

1. Perfăcĭle est, quŭm virtūte[1] omnĭbus praestētis, tōtīus
Galliae impĕrio[2] pŏtīri.[3] 2. Orgĕtŏrix dixit perfăcĭle essĕ,
quŭm virtūte omnĭbus praestārent, tōtīus Galliae impĕrio
potīri. 3. Quŭm magna ex parte[4] eōrum prĕcĭbus[5] adductus
bellum suscēpĕrit, quĕrĭtur. 4. Caesări quŭm id nunciātum
esset, mātūrat ăb urbe prŏfĭcisci. 5. Diūtius[6] quŭm nos-
trōrum[7] impĕtus sustĭnēre nōn possent, altĕri sē, ŭt coepĕrant,[8]
ĭn montem rĕcēpērunt, altĕri ăd impĕdīmenta ĕt carros suos sē
contŭlērunt. 6. In fīnes Lingŏnum die quarto pervēnērunt
quŭm propter vulnĕra mīlĭtum nostri trīduum mŏrāti eos
sĕqui nōn pŏtuissent. 7. Ariovistus dixit magnam Caesărem

injūriam făcĕre qui suo adventu vectīgālia dētĕriōra⁹ făcĕret.
8. Grăvĭtĕr eos accūsat quŏd ăb iis nōn sublĕvētur. 9. Mul-
to ¹⁰ ĕtĭăm grăvius quŏd sit destĭtūtus quĕrĭtur. 10. Proptĕr
frīgŏra, quŏd Gallia sŭb septemtriōnĭbus pŏsĭta est,¹¹ frūmenta
ĭn agris mātūra nōn ĕrant. 11. Eo autĕm frūmento,² quŏd ¹²
flūmĭne Arăre nāvĭbus ¹³ subvexĕrat, proptĕreā mĭnus ūti ¹⁴
pŏtĕrat, quŏd ĭter ăb Arăre Helvētii āvertĕrant, ā quĭbus discē-
dĕre nōlēbat.¹⁵ 12. Quŏd ā Bibracte, oppĭdo Aeduōrum
longē maxĭmo ĕt copiōsissĭmo, nōn amplius mīlĭbus ¹⁶ passuum
octōdĕcim ăbĕrat, rei frūmentāriae prospĭciendum ¹⁷ existĭma-
vit : ĭter ăb Helvētiis āvertit āc Bibracte¹⁸ īre contendit.

<div align="center">

Write in Latin.

</div>

1. Since we excel the Romans in valor, it will be very easy
to get possession of their government. 2. Since they fight
more bravely than the Gauls ¹⁹ they will easily conquer. 3. We
are fleeing, since we cannot longer withstand their attacks.
4. Since they cannot longer withstand the attack of the enemy,
one party withdraws upon a mountain, the other betakes itself
to the baggage. 5. He complained because (as he said) he
could not use the corn. 6. He complains because (as he
says) he has sold his house at a small price.²⁰ 7. Because
Germany is placed towards the north the cold there is great.
8. We shall march through Geneva at sunset,²¹ because we
are not more than twenty miles distant.

<div align="center">

Notes and Questions.

</div>

[1] See *124.*   [2] See *104.*
[8] See *129.*   [4] **magna ex parte**, *in great part.*
[5] See *79.*   [6] **Diūtius** modifies **sustĭnēre.**
[7] The *Possessive Pronouns*, like the Demonstrative, are often used sub-
stantively. See LN. LVIII., NOTES 1 and 13.
[8] What kind of a verb is **coepĕrant ?** (*127*)
[9] See EXAMPLE 2.   [10] See *144.*

[11] Of what does **quŏd — pŏsita est** express the cause ?

[12] See *115* and *34.*   [13] See *54.*

[14] See *69.*   [15] See *195.*

[16] See *133.*   [17] See EXAMPLE 4.

[18] See *105.*   [19] *Than the Gauls,* **quam Galli.**

[20] See *146.*   [21] See *111.*

———◦◦✿◦◦———

LESSON LXXXII.

TEMPORAL CLAUSES.

150. A. & G. **323; 325; 327; 328** : A. & S. **502; 503; 505; 509,** *a:* B. **292,** *d,* 1-3, RULE LVI. ; **304,** 1-3, RULE LXV. : B. & M. *1237; 1238; 1241; 1244:* G. **570; 571; 574; 576; 579; 580; 581:** H. **519,** I., II., 1, 2; **520,** I., 1, 2, II. ; **521,** I., II., 1, 2 : C. **214,** 1, 2, 4, 5.

EXAMPLES.

1. **Quŭm lēgātī mittĕrentur, Ariovistus postŭlāvit,** *when ambassadors were sent, Ariovistus demanded.*

2. **Priusquăm quidquăm cōnārētur Divitiăcum vŏcat,**[1] *before he attempted anything he summoned Divitiacus.*

3. **Dŭm haec gĕruntur Caesări nunciātum est,** *while these things were taking place it was reported to Caesar.*

4. **Nōn exspectandum sĭbi stătuit dŭm pervĕnīrent,** *he decided that he ought not to wait until they should arrive.*

Analyze and parse.

1. Diū quŭm esset pugnātum, impĕdīmentis castrisque[2] nostri[3] pŏtīti sunt.   2. Quŭm trīduī viam[4] prōcessisset, nunciātum est[5] ei Ariovistum cŭm suis omnĭbus cōpiis contendĕre. 3. Hic pāgus ūnus, quŭm dŏmo[6] exisset patrum nostrōrum mĕmŏriā,[7] Lucium Cassium consŭlem interfēcĕrat ĕt ējus exercĭtum sŭb jŭgum mīsĕrat.   4. Quŭm[20] hostium ăcies ā sĭnistro cornu[8] pulsă[9] atquĕ ĭn fŭgam conversa esset, ā dextro

cornu vĕhĕmentĕr multĭtūdĭne suōrum[3] nostram ăciem prēmē-
bant. 5. Ităquĕ priusquam quidquăm cōnārētur Divitiăcum
ăd sē vŏcāri jŭbet.[1] 6. Postquăm ĭd ănĭmum advertit cōpias
suas Caesar ĭn proxĭmum collem subdūcit. 7. Eō postquăm
Caesar pervēnit obsĭdes, arma, servos[10] pŏposcit. 8. Dŭm
haec ĭn collŏquio gĕruntur,[11] Caesări nunciātum est[5] ĕquĭtes
Ariovisti lăpĭdes tēlăquĕ[12] ĭn nostros conjĭcĕre. 9. Tămĕn, ŭt
spătium intercēdĕre posset, dŭm mīlĭtes, quos[13] impĕrāvĕrat,
convēnīrent, lēgātis respondit diem sē ăd dēlībĕrandum[14]
sumptūrum.[15] 10. Quĭbus[16] rēbus adductus Caesar nōn ex-
spectandum[17] sĭbi stătuit, dŭm, omnĭbus fortūnis[18] sociōrum
consumptis, ĭn Santŏnos Helvētii pervĕnīrent.

<div align="center">

Write in Latin.

</div>

1. When ambassadors were sent to Caesar, he demanded
corn of them.[19] 2. When they had proceeded a three days'
march,[4] they pitched (their) camp. 3. Before they attempted
to set out they summoned a council. 4. After the general
arrived in the territory of the Aedui he demanded corn, wagons,
and[10] horses. 5. Although we had routed the enemy's line
on the right wing, on the left he was pressing furiously upon
us. 6. While the troops are assembling we are waiting.
7. We shall remain in the city until the troops assemble.
8. Influenced by these[16] affairs, we decided that we ought[17]
not to wait until the enemy should lay waste our fields.

<div align="center">

Notes.

</div>

[1] See A. & G. **276**, *d :* A. & S. **466** : B. **58** : B. & M. *1082 :* G. **220** :
H. **467**, III.: C. **189**, 6.
[2] See Ln. XXIII., Note 2.   [3] See Ln. LXXXI., Note 7.
[4] See *109.*
[5] What is the subject of **nunciātum est** ? *(129)*
[6] See *107.*   [7] See *111.*
[8] **a sĭnistro cornu,** *on the left wing.* [9] **pulsa,** sc. **esset.**

[10] When several nouns follow each other in the same construction, the Latin language either omits the conjunction altogether, or repeats it : e. g. either **obsĭdes, arma, servos** ; or **obsĭdes et arma et servos** ; NOT **obsĭdes, arma et servos.**

[11] A. & G. **276,** *e:* A. & S. **468:** G. **220,** REMARK : H. **467,** 4 : C. **214,** 1, note 2.

[12] An enclitic throws its accent back upon the final syllable of the word to which it is attached : **tēlăque.**

[13] So. **convenĭre.**   [14] **ad delĭbĕrandum,** *for deliberating.*

[15] **sumptūrum,** sc. **essĕ.**

[16] The Latin often employs a relative where the English prefers a demonstrative : **quae res,** THESE *affairs.*

[17] **exspectandum,** sc. **essĕ.** See **130** and **131**

[18] See **122.**   [19] See **71** and LN. LVIII., NOTE 2.

[20] See **145.**

<div align="center">——∘o⦂⊘⦂o∘——</div>

LESSON LXXXIII.

SUBJUNCTIVE IN INDIRECT QUESTIONS.

151. The Indirect Question. A. & G. **334,** w. preceding NOTE : A. & S. **518:** B. **294,** *a,* RULE LVII. : B. & M. **1182:** G. **454; 469:** H. **528,** 2 NOTE ; **529,** I. : C. **231,** 1 w. n. 1.

EXAMPLES.

1. **Quid sui consĭlĭ[1] sit ostendĭt,** *he shows what his plan is.*
2. **Causa quae esset quaesiĭt,** *he asked what the cause was.*
3. **Ariovisto mīrum vīsum est quid ĭn Gallia Caesărĭ nĕgŏtĭ[1] esset,** *Ariovistus wondered what business Caesar had in Gaul.*

Analyze and parse.

1. Quālis esset nātūra montis, qui[2] cognoscĕrent,[3] mīsit.
2. Dīcit intellĭgĕre sēsē quanto ĭd cŭm pĕrīcŭlo fēcĕrit.
3. Ex quo jūdĭcāri pŏtest,[4] quantum hăbeat ĭn sē bŏni[1] constantia.   4. Dumnŏrĭgi custōdes pōnit,[5] ŭt, quae ăgat, quĭbuscŭm[6] lŏquātur, scīre possit.   5. Ariovistus dixit sĭbi mīrum vĭdēri,[7] quid ĭn sua Gallia, quăm bello[8] vīcisset,[9] aŭt Caesări[10]

aut omnīno pŏpŭlo Rōmāno[10] nĕgōti[1] esset. 6. Flūmen est Arar, quod pĕr fīnes Aeduōrum ĕt Sēquănōrum ĭn Rhŏdănum influit incrēdĭbĭli lēnĭtāte, ĭtă ŭt ocŭlis, ĭn utram partem[11] fluat, jūdĭcāri nōn possit. 7. Postero die castra ex eo lŏco mŏvent. Idĕm[12] făcit Caesar, ĕquĭtātŭmquĕ omnem, ăd nŭmĕrum quattuor mīlium, quem ex omni prōvincia ĕt Aeduis atquĕ eōrum sŏciis coactŭm hăbēbat,[13] praemittit, qui vĭdeant,[3] quas ĭn partes hostes ĭter făciant. 8. Caesar vĕhĕmentĕr eos incūsāvit quod, aut quăm ĭn partem aut quo consĭlio[14] dūcĕrentur,[15] sĭbi quaerendum[16] aut cōgĭtandum pŭtārent.[17] 9. Caesar dixit dē quarta vĭgĭlia sē castra mōtūrum, ŭt quăm prīmum intellĭgĕre posset, utrŭm ăpŭd eos pŭdor atquĕ offĭcium, ăn tĭmor vălēret. 10. Quŭm ex captīvis quaerĕret Caesar, quăm ŏb rem Ariovistus proelio[8] nōn dēcertāret, hanc ɪĕpĕriēbat causam.

<div align="center">Write in Latin.</div>

1. Caesar asked in what direction the river flowed. 2. We shall send (men) to ascertain[3] in what direction the river flows. 3. It cannot be determined in what direction the river flows. 4. Labienus sent forward the cavalry to see in what direction the enemy had fled. 5. Liscus censures them severely because (as he says) they think[17] they ought to ask[16] in what direction they are to be led. 6. We shall break up camp in the first watch, that we may be able to know as soon as possible whether our soldiers are brave or cowardly. 7. We shall place guards over him,[5] that we may know with[6] whom he speaks. 8. The general placed guards over the soldiers, that he might be able to ascertain what they were doing.

<div align="center">Notes and Questions.</div>

[1] **qaid sui consĭli,** *what his plan ;* lit., *what of his plan.* See A. & G. **216:** A. & S. **354:** B. **227,** Rule XVII. : B. & M. **77 ;** G. **366; 371:** H. **396, IV. : C. 133,** 4.

² **qui,** sc. **vĭros** as antecedent.   ⁸ See *136* and Ex. 10.

⁴ What is the subject of **pŏtest?**

⁵ **Dumnŏrĭgi — pŏnit,** *he places guards over* (lit. for) *Dumnorix.*

⁶ See Ln. LIX., Note 1.

⁷ **sĭbi — vĭdēri,** *he wondered;* lit., *it seemed to him wonderful;* for **sĭbi,** see *39.*

⁸ **bello,** *in war;* see *54.*

⁹ **vīcisset,** translate by the Indicative.

¹⁰ See *137.*

¹¹ **in utram partem,** *in which direction.*

¹² How does **ĭdem** differ in meaning from **idem?**

¹³ **coactum hăbēbat,** *he had collected.*   A. & G. **292,** *c:* A. & S. **547** *c:* B. & M. *1358:* G. **230:** H. **388,** 1, Note: C. **251,** 3.

¹⁴ See *79.*   ¹⁵ **dūcĕrentur,** *they were to be led.*

¹⁶ **quaerendum,** sc. **essĕ:** see *130.*   ¹⁷ See *149* and Ex. 3.

————oo◦◦◦oo————

LESSON LXXXIV.

ORATIO OBLIQUA. — INDIRECT DISCOURSE.

152. A. & G. **335,** Rem.; **336; 339:** A. & S. **515; 516:** B. **316; 317,** Rule LXXIV.: B. & M. *1295; 1296:* G. **651–653:** H. **522; 523,** I., II., 1, 2, III. ; **524:** C. **228; 229.**

EXAMPLE.

Orātĭo Recta, *Direct Discourse.*	Orātĭo Oblīqua, *Indirect Discourse.*
Ob eam rem ex cīvĭtāte prŏfūgi ĕt Rōmam vēni, quŏd nĕquĕ jūrejūrando nĕquĕ obsĭdĭbus tĕnēbar.	*Lŏcūtus est Divitiăcus:* ŏb eam rem sē ex cīvĭtāte prŏfūgisse ĕt Rōmam vēnisse, quŏd nĕquĕ jūrejūrando nĕquĕ obsĭdĭbus tĕnērētur.
I fled from the state and came to Rome for this reason, because *I* was restrained neither by an oath nor by hostages.	*Divitiacus said: he* fled from the state and came to Rome for this reason, because *he* was restrained neither by an oath nor by hostages.

<center>**Analyze and parse.**</center>

1. Divĭco respondit : Ită Helvētios ā mājōrĭbus suis instĭtūtos esse, ŭtī obsĭdes accĭpĕre,[1] nōn dăre consuērint[2]; ējus rei pŏpŭlum Rōmānum essĕ testem. 2. Lēgāti dixērunt sēsē hăbēre quasdam res, quas ex commūni consensu ăb eo pĕtĕre vellent. 3. Lŏcūtus est prō his Divitiăcus Aeduus : Galliae tōtīus factiōnes essĕ duas : hārum[3] altĕrius[4] princĭpātum tĕnēre Aeduos, altĕrius Arvernos. 4. Dixit hōrum[3] prīmo circĭtĕr mīlia quindĕcĭm Rhēnum transisse : posteāquăm agros ĕt cultum ĕt cōpias[5] Gallōrum hŏmĭnes fĕri āc barbări ădămassent, trāductos[6] plūres :[11] nunc essĕ ĭn Gallia ăd centŭm ĕt vīgintī mīlium nŭmĕrum. 5. Dixit cŭm his Aeduos eōrumquĕ clientes sĕmĕl atquĕ ĭtĕrŭm armis[7] contendisse ; magnam călămĭtātem pulsos[8] accēpisse, omnem nōbĭlĭtātem, omnem sĕnātum, omnem ĕquĭtātum[9] āmīsisse. 6. Anĭmadvertit Caesar ūnos ex omnĭbus Sēquănos nĭhĭl eārum rērum[3] făcĕre, quas cētĕri făcĕrent, sĕd tristes căpĭte[10] dēmisso terram intuēri.

<center>**Notes.**</center>

[1] See **69.**

[2] See **139** and Lɴ. LXXV., Nᴏᴛᴇ 11.

[3] See Lɴ. LXXXIII., Nᴏᴛᴇ 1.

[4] **altĕrius** modifies **factiōnis** understood.

[5] **cōpias**, *wealth.*

[6] **trāductos**, sc. **essĕ.**

[7] See **54.**

[8] See **pello.**

[9] See Lɴ. LXXXII., Nᴏᴛᴇ 10.

[10] See **122.**

[11] **plus** is declined as follows :

	N.		M. and F.	N.
	Nom. plūs,		plūres,	plūra,
	Gen. plūris,		plūrium,	plūrium,
SING.	*Dat.* ———	PLUR.	plūrĭbus,	plūrĭbus,
	Acc. plūs,		plūres,	plūra,
	Abl. ———		plūrĭbus,	plūrĭbus.

LESSON LXXXV.

INDIRECT DISCOURSE (*continued*).

EXAMPLE.

Direct Discourse.	*Indirect Discourse.*

SĪ pācem pŏpŭlus Rōmānus cŭm Helvētiis fā*ciet*, ĭn eam partem *ĭbunt* atquĕ ĭbi *ĕrunt* Helvē-ti*ĭ*, ŭbi eos *tu* constĭtu-*ĕris* atquĕ esse vŏlu*ĕris* ; sĭn bello persĕqui persĕvērā*bis*, rĕ-mĭnisc*ĕre* ĕt vĕtĕris incom-mŏdi pŏpŭli Rōmāni ĕt pristĭnae virtūtis Helvētiōrum.

Is ĭtă cŭm Caesăre ăgit: Sī pācem pŏpŭlus Rōmānus cŭm Helvētiis fă*cĕret*, ĭn eam partem *ĭtŭros* atquĕ ĭbi *fŭtŭros* Helvē-ti*os*, ŭbi eos *Caesar* constĭtu-*ĭsset* atquĕ esse vŏlu*ĭsset* ; sĭn bello persĕqui persĕvērā*ret*, rĕ-mĭnisc*ĕrētur* ĕt vĕtĕris incom-mŏdi pŏpŭli Rōmāni ĕt pristĭnae virtūtis Helvētiōrum.

He treated with Caesar as fol-lows: If the Roman people *should* make peace with the Helvetii, the Helvetii *would* go into that part and stay where *Caesar should* have determined and wished that they should be ; but if *he should* persist in con-tinuing war, *let him* recollect the old misfortune of the Roman people and former valor of the Helvetii.

If the Roman people *shall* make peace with the Helvetii, the Helvetii *will* go into that part and stay where *you shall* have determined and wished that they should be ; but if *you shall* persist in continuing war, recollect the old misfortune of the Roman people and former valor of the Helvetii.

Analyze and parse.

1. Ariovistus multa[1] praedĭcāvit: Transisse Rhēnum sēsē nōn suā sponte,[2] sĕd rŏgātum[8] ĕt arcessītum[3] ā Gallis; nōn sĭnĕ magna spe magnĭsquĕ praemiis dŏmum prŏpinquosquĕ rĕlīquisse: sēdes hăbēre[4] ĭn Gallia ăb ipsis[5] concessas,[6] obsĭdes ipsōrum[6] vŏluntāte[2] dătos; stīpendium căpĕre[4] jūre[7] belli,

quod[8] victōres victis[9] impōnĕre consuērint.[10] 2. His Caesar
ĭtă respondit : Eo[11] sĭbi mĭnŭs dŭbĭtātiōnis[12] dări, quŏd eas
res, quas lēgāti Helvētii commĕmŏrassent,[10] mĕmŏriā[21] tĕnēret,
atquĕ eo[13] grăvius ferre, quo[13] mĭnŭs mĕrĭto[7] pŏpŭli Rōmāni
accĭdissent : qui si[14] alĭcūjus injūriae[15] sĭbi[16] conscius fuisset,
nōn fuisse diffĭcĭle căvēre[17] ; sed eo[11] dēceptum,[18] quod nĕque
commissum[19] a se intellĭgĕret, quāre tĭmēret, nĕque sĭne causa
tĭmendum[20] pŭtāret.

Notes.

[1] A. & G. 188: A. & S. 438 (3): B. 269: B. & M. 658: G. 195,
REMARK 2 : H. 441: C. 113, 7.

[2] See 79.   [3] See 121 and EXS. 3 and 4.

[4] hăbēre, capĕre, sc. sĕ.   [5] ipsis, sc. Gallis.

[6] concessas, from concēdo ; ipsōrum, *their own.*

[7] The *Ablative of Cause* often designates that *in accordance with* which
anything is done : jūre, *in accordance with the law.*

[8] See 115.

[9] A. & G. 188: A. & S. 438 (2): B. 269: B. & M. 658: G. 195,
REMARK 1 : H. 441, 1 ; this rule includes Participles and Pronouns :
C. 251, 8. For the *case* of victis, see 67.

[10] See LN. LXXV., NOTE 11.   [11] eo, *for this reason.*

[12] See LN. LXXXIII., NOTE 1.   [13] See GEN. VY. under eo.

[14] qui si, *if they.*   [15] See 140.

[16] See 86 ; translate, *on their part.*

[17] See 129.   [18] dēceptum, sc. essĕ sĕ.

[19] commissum, sc. essĕ ălĭquid.

[20] tĭmendum, sc. sĭbi essĕ, and see 130.

[21] See 54.

———oo:ox:oo———

LESSON LXXXVI.

INDIRECT DISCOURSE (*continued*).

Write in Latin.

1. Caesar replies : The Romans have been so trained up by
their fathers that they do not give[1] hostages. 2. He in-

forms Caesar (that) the Helvetii are marching through the province because they have no other way. 3. He says (that) the Aquitani are hemmed in by the Pyrenees, which separate Aquitania from Spain. 4. We shall say many[2] (things) : (that) we did not cross the Rhone of our own free will, but because[3] we had been invited[3] by the Sequani; we did not set out from home[4] without great rewards; we have among the Helvetii large possessions, granted to us with their own[5] consent;[6] we levied tribute on the conquered[7] in accordance with the law[8] of war. 5. You said (that) you remembered those things which the Sequani had called to mind; that you had been deceived for this reason,[9] that[10] you had neither done anything for which[11] you should fear, nor did you think (that) you ought to fear[12] without a reason.

<hr/>

Notes.

[1] See *139.*

[2] See Ln. LXXXV., Note 1.

[3] See *121* and Ex. 3.

[4] See *107.*

[5] *their own*, ipsŏrum.

[6] See *79.*

[7] See *67* and Ln. LXXXV., Note 9.

[8] See Ln. LXXXV., Note 7.

[9] *for this reason*, eo.

[10] *that*, quŏd.

[11] *for which*, quārĕ.

[12] See *130* and *131.*

<hr/>

——∘o⟩o⟨o∘——

LESSON LXXXVII.

THE GERUND.

153. The Gerund. A. & G. **295**: A. & S. **548** (1): B. **324**: B. & M. ***1319; 1321:*** G. **426**; **427**: H. **541**; **542**, I.–IV.: C. **252.**

EXAMPLES.

1. **Hostĭbus pugnandĭ pŏtestātem fēcĭt,** *he gave the enemy an opportunity* FOR FIGHTING.

2. **Bellandī cŭpĭdī,** *fond* OF CARRYING ON WAR.

3. **Diem ăd dēlībĕrandum sūmet,** *he will take a day for* DELIB-
ERATING.

4. **Rĕpĕriēbat īn quaerendo,** *he found on* INQUIRING.

5. **Stŭdiuṃ pugnandī,** *a desire* FOR FIGHTING.

Analyze and parse.[1]

1. Qua dē causa hŏmĭnes bellandi[2] cŭpĭdi ṃagno dŏlōre[3]
affĭciēbantur.   2. His rēbus adducti ĕt auctōrĭtāte Orgĕtŏrĭgis
permōti, constĭtuērunt ea, quae ăd prŏfĭciscendum pertĭnērent,[4]
compărāre.   3. Caesar lēgātis respondit, diem sē ăd dēlībĕr-
andum sumptūrum.[5]   4. Rĕpĕriēbat īn quaerendo Caesar ĭnĭ-
tium ējus fŭgae factum[5] ā Dumnŏrĭge atquĕ ējus ĕquĭtĭbus.
5. Caesar Divitiăcum consōlātus rŏgat, fīnem ōrandi făciat.[6]
6. Ariovistus, quŭm nĕquĕ ădĭtum nĕquĕ causam postŭlandi
justam hăbēret,[7] lībĕrālĭtāte[8] sĕnātus ea praemia consĕcūtus
est.   7. Caesar lŏquendi fīnem făcit sēquĕ ăd suos[9] rĕcĭpit,
suisquĕ impĕrāvit nē quod[10] omnīno tēlum īn hostes rĕjĭcĕrent.
8. Multo[11] mājor ălacrĭtas stŭdiumquĕ pugnandi ṃājus exer-
cĭtui injectum est.   9. Proxĭmo die Caesar ăciem instruxit
hostĭbusquĕ[12] pugnandi pŏtestātem fēcit.[13]   10. Ită nostri[9]
acrĭtĕr īn hostes signo[14] dăto impĕtum fēcērunt, ŭt spătium
pīla īn hostes conjĭciendi nōn dărētur.[15]

Write in Latin.

1. He says the Romans were fond of carrying on war.
2. We shall take ten days for deliberating.   3. We shall ask
them to make[6] an end of entreating.   4. A much greater de-
sire for carrying on war was infused into all of us.[16]   5. They
gave us an opportunity for strengthening peace with them.
6. We shall give them an opportunity for strengthening peace
and friendship with us.   7. You will find on inquiring (that)
we do not easily keep the enemy from our towns.   8. They

said you would find on inquiring (that) they do not easily keep
the enemy from their cities.   9. We made an end of speaking
and betook ourselves to our (friends).   10. Although we had
no just cause for asking, we obtained many things[17] by reason
of your generosity.[8]

Notes.

[1] **Parse** the Gerunds like nouns.   [2] See *140*.

[3] A. & G. **248**, R. : A. & S. **410** (2) : B. **259**, RULE XLIV. : B. & M.
873 : G. **401** : H. **419**, III. : C. **166**, 1.

[4] A. & G. **320** : A. & S. **500** (2), (*d*) : B. **301** : B. & M. *1918 :* G. **633** :
H. **500**, I. : C. **223**, 1.

[5] **essĕ** is often omitted from the compound forms of the Infinitive.

[6] See *136* and LN. XXXVIII., NOTE 3 ; **ŭt**, as here, is sometimes
omitted.

[7] See *145*.	[8] See *79*.
[9] See LN. LXXXV., NOTE 9.	[10] See *116, second part*.
[11] See *144*.	[12] See *39*.
[13] See EXAMPLE 1.	[14] See *129* and EX. 2, *b*.
[15] See *139*.	[16] *all of us*, **omnĭbus nŏbis** ; see *67*.
[17] See LN. LXXXV., NOTE 1.	

——∞⦂⦂∞——

LESSON LXXXVIII.

THE GERUNDIVE.

154. The Gerundive.   A. & G. **296** : A. & S. **548** (2); **550** :
B. **325**, RULE LXXVI. : B. & M. *1322 :* G. **428** : H. **543** : C. **252**.

EXAMPLES.

1. **Ad mĭnuendam grātĭam,** *for* DIMINISHING *popularity.*
2. **Ad eas res confĭciendas Orgĕtŏrix dēlĭgĭtur,** *Orgetorix is
   chosen to* EXECUTE *these plans.*
3. **Spem regnī obtĭnendī,** *the hope* OF OBTAINING *the sovereignty.*
4. **Dătā făcultāte ĭtĭnĕris făciendī,** *if an opportunity for marching
   should be granted.*

Analyze, and parse.

1. Quĭbus ŏpĭbus[1] āc nervis nōn sōlum ăd mĭnuendam[2] grātiam,[3] sĕd paenĕ ăd pernĭciem suam ūtĕrētur.[4]   2. Ipse ĭn cĭtĕriōrem Galliam ăd conventus ăgendos prŏfectus est.   3. Ad eas res confĭciendas biennium sĭbi sătĭs essĕ duxērunt.   4. In Gallia ăb his, qui ăd condūcendos hŏmĭnes făcultātes hăbē- bant, regna occŭpābantur.   5. Ea, quae ăd effĕmĭnandos ănĭmos pertĭnent, important.   6. Dĕcĭma lĕgio sē essĕ ăd bel- lum gĕrendum părātissĭmam confirmāvit.   7. Ariovistus dixit omnes Galliae cīvĭtātes ăd sē oppugnandum vēnisse.   8. Frū- mentum omne, praeterquăm quod sēcum portātūri ĕrant,[5] com- būrunt, ŭt dŏmŭm[6] rĕdĭtiōnis spe[7] sublāta[8] părātiōres ăd omnia pĕrīcŭla sŭbeunda essent.   9. Liscus dīcit sī quid ac- cĭdat[9] Rōmānis, summam ĭn spem[10] pĕr Helvētios regni obtĭ- nendi Dumnŏrĭgem vēnīre.   10. Hac ōrātiōne hăbĭtā[11] summa ălacrĭtas ĕt cŭpĭdĭtas belli gĕrendi innāta est.   11. Nĕquĕ hŏmĭnes ĭnĭmīco ănĭmo,[12] dătā făcultāte pĕr prōvinciam ĭtĭnĕris făciendī, tempĕrātūros[13] ăb injūria ĕt mălĕfĭcio existimāvit. 12. Hoc proelio facto rĕlĭquas cōpias Helvĕtiōrum ŭt consĕqui posset,[14] pontem ĭn Arăre făciendum cūrat[15] atquĕ ĭtă exer- cĭtum trādūcit.

Write in Latin.

1. We consider two days sufficient for collecting the men. 2. They thought five days were sufficient for destroying the city.   3. We entertain[10] the highest hope of establishing friendship with all.   4. He says he entertains the highest hope of establishing friendship with the Gauls if anything happens[9] to us.   5. An opportunity for marching through entire Gaul was granted the Romans.   6. A very great desire for obtaining the sovereignty was infused into Dumnorix.' 7. Let us not import[16] those things which tend to enervate the mind.   8. Let us do that which tends to strengthen peace

with all men.   9. Caesar said that entire Germany had come
to attack him.   10. We shall burn up our villages, that we
may be more ready to endure all perils.

Notes.

[1] See *104.*

[2] Translate the Gerundives like Gerunds (see Ex. 1); parse them like
adjectives.

[3] **grātiam,** sc. **suam.**

[4] **ūtĕrĕtur,** translate by the Indicative.

[5] See Ln. LXX., Ex. 2.

[6] See *105 ;* **dŏmum** limits the idea of *motion* in the verbal noun
rĕdĭtiōnis.

[7] See *122.*   [8] From **tollo.**

[9] **accĭdat,** translate by the Indicative ; why is it in the Subjunctive ?
(*152*)

[10] **in spem vĕnio,** *I entertain the hope.*

[11] See Ln. LXIV., Note 2.   [12] See *144, a.*

[13] See Ln. LXXXVII., Note 5.   [14] See *136.*

[15] **pontem — cūrat,** *he attends to building a bridge over the Saône ;* lit.,
he cares for a bridge to be built, etc.   How is *Saône* pronounced ?

[16] See *134.*

---—oo¦o¦oo——---

LESSON LXXXIX.

THE SUPINE.

155. The Supine. A. & G. **302**; **303**: A. & S. **554** (2);
555: B. **326,** Rules LXXVII. and LXXVIII.: B. & M. *1360;*
1365: G. **435 – 437**: H. **546 – 547**: C. **253**; **254.**

EXAMPLES.

1. **Lēgātos mittunt rŏgātŭm auxĭlium,** *they send legates* TO ASK
    FOR *aid.*

2. **Perfăcĭle factū,** *very easy* TO DO.

1. Aedui, quŭm sē suăquĕ[1] ăb iis dēfendĕre nōn possent,[2] lēgātos ăd Caesărem mittunt rŏgātŭm auxĭlium. 2. Bello Helvētiōrum confecto tōtīus fĕrē Galliae lēgāti, princĭpes[3] cīvĭtātum, ăd Caesărem grātŭlātŭm convēnērunt. 3. Lēgāti ăb Aeduis ĕt ā Trēvĭris vĕniēbant; Aedui[4] questŭm quŏd Harūdes, qui nūpĕr ĭn Galliam transportāti essent,[5] fīnes eōrum pŏpŭlārentur[2]; sēsē nē obsĭdĭbus quĭdĕm dătis pācem Ariovisti rĕdĭmĕre pŏtuisse. 4. Divitiăcus dixit ŏb eam rem sē ex cīvĭtāte prōfūgisse ĕt Rōmam[6] ăd sĕnātum vēnisse auxĭlium postŭlātŭm, quŏd sōlus nĕquĕ jūrejūrando nĕquĕ obsĭdĭbus tĕnērētur. 5. Liscus dīcit Dumnŏrĭgem ipsum ex Helvētiis uxōrem hăbēre, sŏrōrem ex matre[7] ĕt prŏpinquas suas nuptŭm ĭn ălias cīvĭtātes collŏcasse. 6. Hostis[8] est uxor invīta[9] quae ăd vīrum nuptŭm dătur. 7. Perfăcĭle factū essĕ illis prŏbat cōnāta perfĭcĕre, proptĕreā quŏd ipse suae cīvĭtātis impĕrium obtentūrus esset.[10]

1. We have sent legates to the general to ask for troops. 2. We shall send a legate to you to ask for aid. 3. Since we cannot[2] defend ourselves and our possessions[11] from the enemy, we shall send legates to Geneva[6] to ask for aid. 4. We shall go to the consuls to congratulate (them). 5. Let us go to the praetor to congratulate (him). 6. Ambassadors came from all the states; the Gauls to complain because the Germans had crossed[2] the Rhine to attack[12] their towns; (saying that) not even after a pledge[13] had been given were they able to establish peace. 7. You are attempting that which is not very easy to do. 8. He shows (that) to march through the enemy's territory is (a thing) not easy to do.

<div align="center">**Notes.**</div>

¹ See A. & G. **19**, *c:* A. & S. **35**: B. **24**, Exc. 3: B. & M. **21**: G. **14**, REMARK 1: H. **18**, 2, 1): C. **11**.

² See **149**.   ³ See **95**.

⁴ **Aedui**, sc. **vĕniĕbant.**

⁵ See A. & G. **342**: A. & S. **523**: B. **310**, RULE LXIX.: B. & M. **1991**: G. **666**: H. **529**, II.: C. **226**.

⁶ See **105**.

⁷ **sŏrōrem ex matre**, *his half-sister.*   ⁸ See **64**.

⁹ **invīta**, *against her will*; it modifies **quae.**

¹⁰ See LN. LXX. and **149**.   ¹¹ See LN. LXXXV., NOTE 1.

¹² See **155**.   ¹³ See **129**.

<div align="center">—∘≎∘—</div>

LESSON XC.

THE ROMAN CALENDAR. — ABBREVIATIONS.

156. The Calendar. A. & G. NOTE, **376**, *a–d*: A. & S. **660** (1)–(4), *a, b*, NOTES 1, 2, (5), *a:* B. **374**, *a–c:* B. & M. **1524–1537**: G. APPENDIX, page 387: H. **641–645**: C. **313**.

157. Abbreviations. A. & G. **80**, *a–d:* A. & S. **666**, *d;* B. **373**: B. & M. **1538–1542**: H. **649–650**: C. **317**, 1.

<div align="center">**VOCABULARY.**</div>

Jānuārĭŭs, ă, ŭm, (Jān.)	*of January.*
Februārĭŭs, ă, ŭm, (Febr.)	*of February.*
Martĭŭs, ă, ŭm, (Mart.)	*of March.*
Aprīlĭs, ĕ, (Apr.)	*of April.*
Māĭŭs, ă, ŭm, (Māi.)	*of May.*
Jūnĭŭs, ă, ŭm, (Jūn.)	*of June.*
Quīntīlĭs, ĕ, (Quint.)	*of July.*
Sextīlĭs, ĕ, (Sext.)	*of August.*
Septembĕr, brĭs, brĕ, (Sept.)	*of September.*
Octōbĕr, brĭs, brĕ, (Oct.)	*of October.*
Nŏvembĕr, brĭs, brĕ, (Nŏv.)	*of November.*
Dĕcembĕr, brĭs, brĕ, (Dĕc.)	*of December.*

Kălendae, ārŭm, (Kăl.) f. pl.,   *Calends;* the first day of the Roman month.

Nōnae, ārŭm, (Nōn.) f. pl.   *Nones;* the 7th of March, May, July, and October, and the 5th of the other months.

Idūs, uŭm, (Id.) f. pl.,   *Ides;* the 15th of March, May, July, and October, and the 13th of the other months.

prīdiē, (pr. *or* prīd.) adv.,   *the day before.*

Pronounce the abbreviated words as if they were printed in full.

1. Gĕnāvam Kălendis[1] ipsis Nŏvembrĭbus[2] occŭpābit. 2. Qui dies ĕrit a. d. VI. Kăl. Nŏv.[3] (antĕ diem sextum Kălendas Nŏvembres). 3. C.[4] Jūlius Caesar Idĭbus Martiis occīsus est. 4. M. Tullius Cĭcĕro a. d. III. Nōn. Jăn. nātus est. 5. P. Scīpio a. d. XVII. Kăl. Māi. mortuus est. 6. Ap. Claudius a. d. II. Nōn. Apr. ĭn sĕnātu lŏcūtus est. 7. Tĭ. Gracchus Nōnis Jūniis Rōmā[5] prŏfectus est. 8. M. Mānīlius ăd Rōmam prŏfectus est a. d. VI. Id. Sext. 9. Multa verba ōrātōres făciunt a. d. IV. Nōn. Quint. 10. C. Caesar prīd. Nōn.[6] Febr. castra mōvit. 11. Dīxi ĕgo ĭn sĕnātu caedem tē contŭlisse[7] princĭpum ĭn a. d. V. Kăl. Nŏv. 12. Caedem princĭpum contŭlisti ex a. d. V. Kăl. Dĕc. ăd pr. Kăl.[6] Jăn. 13. T. Labiēnus prīd. Id.[6] Sept. hostes sŭpĕrāvit. 14. Is dies ĕrat a. d. V. Kăl. Apr. L. Pīsōne A. Găbīnio consŭlĭbus.[8] 15. Sī quid vellent, ăd Id. Apr. rĕvertĕrentur. 16. Hōrum est nēmo qui nesciat[9] tē prīd. Kăl.[6] Jăn. stĕtisse ĭn cŏmĭtio cŭm tēlo.

Imitate in Abbreviations the preceding Latin exercises.

1. Gaius Cassius was born on the 31st of October. 2. Marcus Flaccus died on the 4th of May. 3. Gaius Gracchus was killed on the 25th of January. 4. Titus Labienus set out from Geneva on the 15th of July. 5. Tiberius Gracchus will

break up camp on the 12th of February.   6. Lucius Piso was
elected on the 1st of December.   7. That day·was the 16th of
April, when Lucius Cassius and Appius Claudius were con-
suls.[8]   8. If you wish anything, return on the 13th of June.
9. He put off the murder of the consuls to the 30th of No-
vember.   10. There was no one of these who did not know[9]
that you stood in the Comitium on the 20th of August.

Notes.

[1] See *111.*

[2] The Latin names of months are adjectives.

[3] Such an expression as **antĕ diem sextum Kălendas Nŏvembres** is
treated as a *single word ;* hence it is often used like an Ablative of Time,
as in sentence 4 ; like a Predicate Substantive, as in sentence 2 ; or it is
governed by the prepositions **in, ex,** and rarely by **ăd,** as in sentences 11
and 12.

[4] **Gaius**: Latin pronunciation,˙*Găh-yoos ;* English pronunciation, *Gă-yus.*

[5] See *107.*

[6] See A. & G. *261,* *a :* A. & S. *660, a,* NOTE 1 : B. & M. *1010 :* H.
437, 1 : C. *313,* 3, *at end.*

[7] From **confĕro.**   [8] See *122.*

[9] A. & G. *320*: A. & S. *500, a :* B. *301,* 5 : B. & M. *1218 :* G. *634*:
H. *503,* 1 : C. *223,* 3.

————o·o·o·oo———

LESSON XCI.

GENERAL EXERCISE.

EXAMPLES.

1. **prīma lūce,** *at daybreak, at earliest dawn.*

2. **multo die,** *late in the day.*

3. **prīma nocte,** *in the first part of the night.*

4. **ăd multam noctem,** *till late at night.*

5. **prīdiē ējŭs diēi,** *on the day before.*

6. **postrīdiē ējŭs diēi,** *on the following day.*

Translate and parse.

1. Prīma lūce,[1] quŭm summus mons ā T. Lăbiēno tĕnērē-tur,[2] ipse ăb hostium castris nōn longius mille ĕt quingentis passĭbus[3] abesset, Considius ĕquo[4] admisso ăd eum accurrit, dīcit montem, quem ā Lăbiēno occŭpāri vŏluĕrit,[5] ăb hostĭbus tĕnēri. 2. Multo dēnĭquĕ die pĕr explōrātōres Caesar cog-nōvit ĕt montem ā suis tĕnēri ĕt Helvētios castra mōvisse ĕt Considium tĭmōre perterrĭtum, quŏd nōn vīdisset, prō vīso sĭbi rĕnunciasse.[6] 3. Circĭtĕr hŏmĭnum[7] mīlia sex prīma nocte ē castris Helvētiōrum ēgressi ăd Rhēnum fīnesquĕ Germānōrum contendērunt. 4. Ad multam noctĕm ĕtiăm ăd impĕdīmenta pugnātum est, proptĕreā quŏd prō vallo carros objēcĕrant. 5. Collŏquendi[8] Caesāri causā vīsa nōn est, ĕt eo[9] măgĭs, quŏd prīdiē ejus diēi[10] Germāni rĕtĭnēri nōn pŏtĕrant, quīn[11] ĭn nostros tēla conjĭcĕrent.[11] 6. Postrīdiē ējus diēi[10] praetĕr castra Caesāris suas cōpias trāduxit ĕt milĭbus[12] passuum duō-bus ultrā eum castra fēcit. 7. Postrīdiē ējus diēi Caesar praesĭdium utrisque castris, quŏd sătĭs essĕ vīsum est, rĕlī-quit.

Write in Latin.

1. The cavalry hastened to the city at full speed,[13] and pitched their camp at daybreak not farther than nine miles from ours. 2. We ascertained late in the day that the top of the mountain was held by the Sequani. 3. We set out on the day before at earliest dawn, hastened at full speed, and arrived at sunset in the vicinity of Geneva. 4. They set out in the first part of the night and arrived in the territory of the Gauls on the following day at earliest dawn. 5. We stayed at home on the fourth of July till late at night. 6. The reason for holding a conference[8] does not seem good to us, and the more[9] because the Romans cannot be restrained from hurling[11] missiles upon our men. 7. We shall leave for both camps a garrison which will seem to be sufficient.

Notes and Questions.

¹ What is the literal meaning of **prīma lūce** ? Why is the Ablative used ?

² Why is the Subjunctive used ? See A. & G. **325**: A. & S. **509**, *a:*
B. **304**, RULE LXV.: B. & M. *1244:* G. **581**, II.: H. **521**, II., 2: C.
214, 5.

³ See **133**.

⁴ See **122**; what is the literal meaning of **ĕquo admisso** ?

⁵ What mood is **vŏlŭĕrit** ? Why is that mood used in this clause ?
See **152**.

⁶ See LN. LXXV., NOTE 11.

⁷ See LN. LXXXIII., NOTE 1.   ⁸ See **153**.

⁹ **eo māgīs**, *the more ;* for **eo**, see **79**.

¹⁰ See A. & G. **214**, *g* on p. 208 : A. & S. **355** *b :* B. & M. *1005 :* H.
398, 5 : C. **133**, 7, 1.

¹¹ **quīn — conjĭcĕrent**, *from hurling ;* why is the Imperfect used ? See
135; why is the Subjunctive used ? See A. & G. **319**, *d:* A. & S. **493**,
(2): B. **297**, RULE LX.: B. & M. *1218:* G. **551**: H. **504**: C. **211**.

¹² See **147**.

¹³ *at full speed*, **ĕquis admissis** ; why the Plural ?

────⊶⊙⊰⊶────

LESSON XCII.

GENERAL EXERCISE.

EXAMPLES.

1. **plūs posse,** *to be more powerful.*

2. **plūrĭmum posse,** *to be the most powerful,* or *to be very powerful.*

3. **ei grātias ăgĕre,** *to thank him.*

4. **nŏbis est in ănĭmo iter făcĕre,** *we intend to march.*

5. **lătĕre ăperto,** *on the unprotected flank.*

6. **ex ĕquis,** *on horseback.*

7. **mĕmŏriā tĕnēre,** *to remember.*

8. **maxĭmis pŏtest ĭtĭnĕrĭbus,** *by the longest possible marches.*

Translate and parse.

1. Liscus dīcit essĕ nonnullos, qui prīvātim plus[1] possint[2] quăm ipsi măgistrātus. 2. Nōn ĕrat dŭbium, quīn tōtīus Galliae plūrĭmum[1] Helvētii possent.[3] 3. Dumnŏrix grātiā ĕt largītiōne ăpŭd Sēquănos plūrĭmum pŏtĕrat. 4. Divitiăcus dixit eos, qui ĕt sua virtūte ĕt pŏpŭli Rōmāni hospĭtio atquĕ ămīcĭtia plūrĭmum antĕ ĭn Gallia pŏtuissent,[2] coactos essĕ[4] Sēquănis[5] obsĭdes dăre. 5. Dĕcĭma lĕgio pĕr trĭbūnos mīlĭtum ei grātias ēgit. 6. Caesări rĕnunciātur[6] Helvētiis[7] essĕ ĭn ănĭmo pĕr agrum Sēquănōrum ĕt Aeduōrum ĭter ĭn Santōnum fīnes făcĕre. 7. Helvētii lēgātos ăd eum mittunt[8] qui dīcĕrent[9] sĭbi essĕ ĭn ănĭmo sĭnĕ ullo mălĕfĭcio ĭter pĕr prōvinciăm făcĕre. 8. Pars ăperto lătĕre[10] lĕgiōnes circumvĕnīre coepit.[11] 9. Capto monte[12] Boii ĕt Tulingi nostros lătĕre ăperto aggressi circumvĕnīre coepērunt. 10. Ariovistus, ex ĕquis ŭt collŏquĕrentur[13] ĕt praeter sē dēnos ŭt ăd collŏquium addūcĕrent,[13] postŭlāvit. 11. Eōrum ūna pars, quăm Gallos obtĭnēre dictum est,[14] attingit ăb[15] Sēquănis ĕt Helvētiis flūmen Rhēnum. 12. Id[16] hōc făcĭlius eis persuāsit, quŏd undĭquĕ lŏci nātūrā Helvētii contĭnentur. 13. Mōrĭbus[17] suis Orgetŏrĭgem ex vincŭlis[18] causam dīcĕre coēgērunt; damnātum[19] poenam sĕqui ŏportēbat,[20] ŭt igni crĕmārētur. 14. Caesar, quŏd mĕmŏriā[21] tĕnēbat[22] L. Cassium consŭlem occīsum exercĭtumquĕ ejus ăb Helvētiis pulsum[23] ĕt sŭb jŭgum missum,[23] concēdendum[24] nōn pŭtābat. 15. Caesări quŭm id[25] nunciātum esset,[26] eos pĕr prōvinciam nostram ĭter făcĕre cōnāri,[27] mātūrat ăb urbe prŏfĭcisci ĕt quăm maxĭmis pŏtest ĭtĭnĕrĭbus[21] ĭn Galliam ultĕriōrem contendit ĕt ăd Gĕnēvam pervĕnit. 16. Ităquĕ re[12] frūmentāriā quăm cĕlerrĭme pŏtuit cōmpărātā magnis ĭtĭnĕrĭbus ăd Ariovistum contendit. 17. Liscus dīcit Dumnŏrĭgem complūres annos[28] portōria rĕlĭquăque[29] omnia Aeduōrum vectīgālia parvo prĕtio rĕdempta hăbēre,[30] proptĕreā quŏd illo[12] lĭcente contrā lĭcēri audeat[31] nēmo.

Notes and Questions.

[1] See A. & G. **240**, *a:* A. & S. **397:** B. **222**, RULE XIII.: B. & M. **728:** G. **331**, REMARKS 2 and 3 : H. **378:** C. **128**, 2.

[2] Why is the Subjunctive used in this clause ? See **159**.

[3] Why the Subjunctive ? See LN. XCI., NOTE 11.

[4] From **cōgo.**   [5] See **39**.

[6] What is the subject of **rĕnunciātur** ? What is it that *is reported to Caesar ?*

[7] See **137;** what is it that *the Helvetii intend* (have in mind) *to do?* What then is the subject of **essĕ ?**

[8] See LN. LXXXII., NOTE 1.

[9] See **136** and Example 10 ; what question does **qui dicĕrent** answer ?

[10] **lătĕre** is an Ablative of *Place,* answering the question *Where ?*

[11] What kind of a verb is **coepit ?** See **127.**

[12] See **122.**   [13] See **136** and Example 9.

[14] What is the subject of **dictum est ?**

[15] **ăb,** *on the side of.*

[16] **Id — quŏd,** *he persuaded them to this the more easily, because;* lit., *he persuaded this to them,* etc.; for **hŏc,** see **79.**

[17] See LN. LXXXV., NOTE 7.

[18] **ex vincŭlis,** *in chains;* what is its literal meaning ?

[19] **damnātum,** *if condemned;* see **121;** it modifies **eŭm** understood, the object of **sĕqui.**

[20] What kind of a verb is **ŏportēbat?** See **128;** what is its subject? See LN. LXIX., EXAMPLES 6 and 7.

[21] See **54.**

[22] What- kind of a clause is **quŏd — tĕnēbat?** See **149;** what is the object of **tĕnēbat** ?

[23] See LN. LXXXVII., NOTE 5.

[24] **concēdendum,** sc. **essĕ ;** translate, *that it ought to be grantcd.*

[25] To what does **id** refer ? What *had been reported* to Caesar ?

[26] See LN. XCI., NOTE 2.   [27] **cōnāri** is in apposition with **id.**

[28] See **93.**   [29] See LN. LXXXIX., NOTE 1.

[30] **rĕdempta hăbēre,** *had bought up.*

[31] What kind of a verb is **audeat ?** See A. & G. **136:** A. & S. **196,** *a·* B. **110,** *a :* B. & M. **312:** G. **182:** H. **268,** 3 : C. **81,** 1.

SELECTIONS FOR READING.

I. FABLES.

1. The Mouse and the Kite.

Milvius laqueis irretītus muscŭlum exorāvit, ut eum, corrō-
sis plagis, liberāret.   Quo facto, milvius līberātus murem
arripuit et devorāvit.

Haèc fabŭla ostendit, quam gratiam mali pro beneficiis red-
dĕre soleant.

2. The Kid and the Wolf.

Haedus, stans in tecto domus, lupo praetereunti maledixit.
Cui lupus, *Non tu,* inquit, *sed tectum mihi maledīcit.*

Saepe locus et tempus homĭnes timĭdos audāces reddit.

3. The Crane and the Peacock.

Pavo, coram grue pennas suas explĭcans, *Quanta est,* inquit,
formosĭtas mea et tua deformĭtas !   At grus evŏlans, *Et quanta
est,* inquit, *levĭtas mea et tua tardĭtas !*

Monet haec fabŭla, ne ob alĭquod bonum, quod nobis natūra
tribuit, alios contemnāmus, quibus natūra alia et fortasse ma-
jōra dedit.

4. The Goat and the Wolf.

Lupus capram in alta rupe stantem conspicātus, *Cur non,*
inquit, *relinquis nuda illa et sterilia loca, et huc descendis in
herbĭdos campos, qui tibi laetum pabŭlum offĕrunt?* Cui
respondit capra : *Mihi non est in anĭmo dulcia tutis praepo-
nere*

5. The Dog in the Manger.

Canis jacēbat in praesēpi bovesque latrando a pabŭlo
arcēbat. Cui unus boum, *Quanta ista,* inquit, *invidia est,
quod non patĕris ut eo cibo vescāmur, quem tu ipse capĕre nec
velis nec possis !*
Haec fabŭla invidiae indŏlem declārat.

6. The Fox and the Lion.

Vulpes, quae nunquam leōnem vidĕrat, quum ei forte occur-
risset, ita est perterrĭta, ut paene morerētur formidĭne. Eun-
dem conspicāta itĕrum, timuit quidem, sed nequāquam, ut
antea. Tertio illi obviam facta, ausa est etiam propius acce-
dĕre eumque allŏqui.

7. The Oxen.

In eōdem prato pascebantur tres boves in maxĭma concordia,
et sic ab omni ferārum incursiōne tuti erant. Sed dissidio
inter illos orto, singŭli a feris petīti et laniāti sunt.
Fabŭla docet quantum boni sit in concordia.

8. The Ass in the Lion's Skin.

Asĭnus, pelle leōnis indūtus, territābat homĭnes et bestias
tamquam leo esset. Sed forte, dum se celerius movet, aures

eminēbant; unde agnĭtus in pistrīnum abductus est, ubi poenas petulantiae dedit.

Haec fabŭla stolĭdos notat, qui immerĭtis honorĭbus superbiunt.

9. The Golden Egg.

Mulier quaedam habēbat gallīnam, quae ei quotidie ovum pariēbat aureum.   Hinc suspicāri coepit, illam auri massam intus celāre, et gallīnam occīdit.   Sed nihil in ea repĕrit, nisi quod in aliis gallīnis reperīri solet.   Ităque dum majorĭbus divitiis inhiābat, etiam minōres perdĭdit.

10. The Travellers and the Ass.

Duo qui unā iter faciēbant, asĭnum oberrantem in solitudĭne conspicāti, accurrunt laetĭ, et uterque eum sibi vindicāre coepit, quod eum prior conspexisset.   Dum vero contendunt et rixantur, nec a verberĭbus abstĭnent, asĭnus aufŭgit et neuter eo potītur.

11. The Trumpeter.

Tubĭcen ab hostĭbus captus, *Ne me,* inquit, *interficĭte ; nam inermis sum, neque quidquam habeo praeter hanc tubam.*   At hostes, *Propter hoc ipsum,* inquiunt, *te interimēmus, quod, quum ipse pugnandi sis imperītus, alios ad pugnam incitāre soles.*

Fabŭla docet, non solum malefĭcos esse puniendos sed etiam eos, qui alios ad male faciendum irrītent.

12. Sour Grapes.

Vulpes uvam in vite conspicāta ad illam subsiliit omnium virium suārum contentiōne, si eam forte attingĕre posset.

Tandem defatigāta ināni labōre discēdens dixit : *At nunc etiam acerbae sunt, nec eas in via repertas tollĕrem.*

Haec fabŭla docet, multos ea contemnĕre, quae se assĕqui posse despērent.

13. The Mice.

Mures aliquando habuērunt consilium, quomŏdo sibi a fele cavērent.   Multis aliis proposĭtis, omnĭbus placuit ut ei tin-tinnabŭlum annecterētur; sic enim ipsos sonĭtu admonĭtos eam fugĕre posse.   Sed quum jam inter mures quaererētur, qui feli tintinnabŭlum annectĕret, nemo repertus est.

Fabŭla docet, in suadendo plurĭmos esse audāces, sed in ipso pericŭlo timĭdos.

14. The Wolf and the Crane.

In faucĭbus lupi os inhaesĕrat.   Mercēde igĭtur condūcit gruem, qui illud extrăhat.   Hoc grus longitudĭne colli facĭle effēcit.   Quum autem mercēdem postulāret, subrīdens lupus et dentĭbus infrendens, *Num tibi,* inquit, *parva merces vidētur, quod caput incolŭme ex lupi faucĭbus extraxisti?*

II. STORIES FROM EARLY ROMAN HISTORY.

Saturn.

1. Antiquissĭmis temporĭbus Saturnus in Italiam venisse dicĭtur.   Ibi haud procul a Janicŭlo arcem condĭdit, eamque Saturniam appellāvit.   Hic Itălos primus agricultūram do-cuit.

Latīnus and Aenēas.

2. Postea Latīnus in illis regionĭbus imperāvit. Sub hoc rege Troja in Asia eversa est. Hinc Aenēas, Anchīsae filius, cum multis Trojānis, quibus ferrum Graecōrum pepercĕrat, aufūgit et in Italiam pervēnit. Ibi Latīnus rex ei benigne recepto filiam Laviniam in matrimonium dedit. Aenēas urbem condĭdit, quam in honōrem conjŭgis Lavinium appellāvit.

Founding of Alba Longa by Ascanius.

3. Post Aenēae mortem Ascanius, Aenēae filius, regnum accēpit. Hic sedem regni in alium locum transtŭlit, urbemque condĭdit in monte Albāno, eamque Albam Longam nuncupāvit. Eum secūtus est Silvius, qui post Aenēae mortem a Lavinia genĭtus erat. Ejus postĕri omnes usque ad Romam condĭtam Albae regnavērunt.

Other Kings of Alba.

4. Unus horum regum, Romŭlus Silvius, se Jove majōrem esse dicēbat, et, quum tonāret, militĭbus imperāvit, ut clypeos hastis percutĕrent, dicebatque hunc sonum multo clariōrem esse quam tonitru. Fulmĭne ictus et in Albānum lacum praecipitātus est.

5. Silvius Procas, rex Albanōrum, duos filios relīquit Numitōrem et Amulium. Horum minor natu, Amulius, fratri optiōnem dedit, utrum regnum habēre vellet, an bona, quae pater reliquisset. Numĭtor paterna bona praetŭlit; Amulius regnum obtinuit.

Birth of Romulus and Remus.

6. Amulius, ut regnum firmissĭme possidēret, Numitōris filium per insidias interēmit et filiam fratris Rheam Silviam

Vestālem virgĭnem fecit.   Nam his Vestae sacerdotĭbus non
licet viro nubĕre.   Sed haec a Marte gemĭnos filios Romŭlum
et Remum pepĕrit.   Hoc quum Amulius comperisset, matrem
in vincŭla conjēcit, puĕros autem in Tibĕrim abjĭci jussit.

7. Forte Tibĕris aqua ultra ripam se effudĕrat, et, quum
puĕri in vado essent posĭti, aqua refluens eos in sicco relīquit.
Ad eōrum vagītum lupa accurrit, eosque uberĭbus suis aluit.
Quod videns Faustŭlus quidam, pastor illīus regiōnis, puĕros
sustŭlit et uxōri Accae Laurentiae nutriendos dedit.

Foundation of Rome, B. C. 753.

8. Sic Romŭlus et Remus pueritiam inter pastōres transe-
gērunt.   Quum adolevissent et forte compĕrissent quis ipsō-
rum avus, quae mater fuisset, Amulium interfecērunt et
Numitōri avo regnum restituērunt.   Tum urbem condidērunt
in monte Aventīno quam Romŭlus a suo nomĭne Romam vo-
cāvit.   Haec quum moenĭbus circumdarētur, Remus occīsus
est, dum fratrem irrīdens moenia transiliĕbat.

How Romulus increased the Number of Citizens.

9. Romŭlus, ut civium numĕrum augēret, asȳlum patefēcit,
ad quod multi ex civitatĭbus suis pulsi accurrērunt.   Sed
novae urbis civĭbus conjŭges deĕrant.   Festum ităque Neptūni
et ludos instituit.   Ad hos quum multi ex finitĭmis popŭlis
cum mulierĭbus et libĕris venissent, Romāni inter ipsos ludos
spectantes virgĭnes rapuērunt.

War with the Sabines. — Tarpeia.

10. Popŭli illi, quorum virgĭnes raptae erant, bellum ad-
versus raptōres suscepērunt.   Quum Romae appropinquārent,
forte in Tarpēiam virgĭnem incidērunt, quae in arce sacra pro-

curābat.　Hanc rogābant, ut viam in arcem monstrāret, eīque
permisērunt, ut munus sibi poscĕret.　　Illa petiit, ut sibi
darent, quod in sinistris manĭbus gerĕrent, ānŭlos aureos et
armillas signifĭcans.　At hostes in arcem ab ea perducti scutĭs
Tarpēiam obruērunt; nam et ea in sinistris manĭbus gerē-
bant.

Treaty with the Sabines.

11.　Tum Romŭlus cum hoste, qui montem Tarpēium tenē-
bat, pugnam conseruit in eo loco, ubi nunc forum Romānum
est.　In media caede raptae processērunt, et hinc patres hinc
conjŭges et socĕros complectebantur, et rogābant, ut caedis
finem facĕrent.　Utrīque his precĭbus commōti sunt.　Romŭlus
foedus icit et Sabīnos in urbem recēpit.

Institutions of Romulus. — His Death.

12.　Postea civitātem descripsit.　Centum senatōres legit
eosque quum ob aetātem tum ob reverentiam iis debĭtam patres
appellāvit.　Plebem in triginta curias distribuit, easque rap-
tārum nominĭbus nuncupāvit.　Anno regni tricesĭmo septĭmo,
quum exercĭtum lustrāret, inter tempestātem ortam repente
ocŭlis homĭnum subductus est.　Hinc alii eum a senatorĭbus
interfectum, alii ad deos sublātum esse existimavērunt.

Reign of Numa Pompilius, B. C. 716 - 673.

13.　Post Romŭli mortem unīus anni interregnum fuit.
Quo elapso, Numa Pompilius Curĭbus, urbe in agro Sabinōrum,
natus rex creātus est.　Hic vir bellum quidem nullum gessit;
nec minus tamen civitāti profuit.　Nam et leges dedit, et
sacra plurĭma instituit, ut popŭli barbări et bellicōsi mores
mollīret.　Omnia autem, quae faciēbat, se nymphae Egeriae,

conjŭgis suæ, jussu facĕre dicēbat.   Morbo decessit, quadra-
gesĭmo tertio impĕri anno.

Reign of Tullus Hostilius, B. C. 673 – 641.

14. Numae successit Tullus Hostilius, cujus avus se in
bello adversus Sabīnos fortem et strenuum virum praestitĕrat.
Rex creātus bellum Albānis indixit, idque trigeminōrum Hora-
tiōrum et Curiatiōrum certamĭne finīvit.   Albam propter per-
fidiam Metti Fufĕti diruit.   Quum triginta duōbus annis
regnasset, fulmĭne ictus cum domo sua arsit.

Reign of Ancus Marcius, B. C. 640 – 616.

15. Post hunc Ancus Marcius, Numae ex filia nepos, sus-
cēpit imperium.   Hic vir aequitāte et religiōne avo simĭlis,
Latīnos bello domuit, urbem ampliāvit, et nova ei moenia cir-
cumdĕdit.   Carcĕrem primus aedificāvit.   Ad Tibĕris ostia
urbem condĭdit, Ostiamque vocāvit.   Vicesĭmo quarto anno
impĕri morbo obiit.

Reign of Tarquinius Priscus, B. C. 616 – 578.

16. Deinde regnum Lucius Tarquinius Priscus accēpit,
Demarāti filius, qui tyrannos patriae Corinthi fugiens in Etru-
riam venĕrat.   Ipse Tarquinius, qui nomen ab urbe Tarquiniis
accēpit, aliquando Romam profectus erat.   Advenienti aquĭla
pileum abstŭlit, et, postquam alte evolavĕrat, reposuit.   Hinc
Tanăquil conjux, mulier auguriōrum perīta, regnum ei portendi
intellexit.

17. Quum Romæ commorarētur, Anci regis familiaritātem
consecūtus est, qui eum filiōrum suōrum tutōrem relīquit.   Sed
is pupillis regnum intercēpit.   Senatorĭbus, quos Romŭlus
creavĕrat, centum alios addĭdit, qui minōrum gentium sunt

appellāti. Plura bella felicīter gessit, nec paucos agros hostī-
bus ademptos urbis territorio adjunxit. Primus triumphans
urbem intrāvit. Cloācas fecit; Capitolium inchoāvit. Tri-
cesīmo octāvo impĕri anno per Anci filios, quibus regnum
eripuĕrat, occīsus est.

Reign of Servius Tullius, B. C. 578 – 534.

18. Post hunc Servius Tullius suscēpit imperium, genĭtus
ex nobĭli femĭna, captīva tamen et famŭla. Quum in domo
Tarquini Prisci educarētur, flamma in ejus capĭte visa est.
Hoc prodigio Tanăquil ei summam dignitātem portendi intel-
lexit, et conjŭgi persuāsit, ut eum sicŭti libĕros suos educāret.
Quum adolevisset, rex ei filiam in matrimonium dedit.

19. Quum Priscus Tarquinius occīsus esset, Tanăquil de
superiōre parte domus popŭlum allocūta est, dicens; *regem
grave quidem sed non letāle vulnus accepisse ; eum petĕre, ut
popŭlus, dum convaluisset, Servio Tullio obedīret.* Sic Servius
regnāre coepit, sed bene imperium administrāvit. Montes tres
urbi adjunxit. Primus omnium censum ordināvit. Sub eo
Roma habuit octoginta tria milia civium Romanōrum cum his,
qui in agris erant.

20. Hic rex interfectus est scelĕre filiae Tulliae et Tarquini
Superbi, fili ejus regis, cui Servius successĕrat. Nam ab ipso
Tarquinio de gradĭbus curiae dejectus, quum domum fugĕret,
interfectus est. Tullia in forum properāvit, et prima conjŭgem
regem salutāvit. Quum domum redīret, aurīgam super patris
corpus in via jacens carpentum agĕre jussit.

Reign of Tarquinius Superbus, the last king of Rome, B. C. 534 – 510.

21. Tarquinius Superbus cognōmen morĭbus meruit. Bello
tamen strenuus plures finitimōrum populōrum vicit. Tem-

plum Jovis in Capitolio aedificāvit. Postea, dum Ardeam
oppugnābat, urbem Lati, imperium perdĭdit. Nam quum
filius ejus Lucretiae, nobilissĭmae femĭnae, conjŭgi Tarquini
Collatīni, vim fecisset, haec se ipsam occīdit in conspectu marīti,
patris, et amicōrum, postquam eos obtestāta fuĕrat, ut hanc
injuriam ulciscerentur.

22. Hanc ob causam L. Brutus, Collatīnus, aliīque nonnulli
in exitium regis conjurārunt, populōque persuasērunt, ut ei
portas urbis claudĕret. Exercĭtus quoque, qui civitātem Ar-
deam cum rege oppugnābat, eum relīquit. Fugit ităque cum
uxōre et libĕris suis. Ita Romae septem reges regnavērunt
annos ducentos quadraginta tres.

NOTES ON THE SELECTIONS FOR READING.

The References are mainly to the Sections of this Book.

I. FABLES.

1. ut — **liberăret,** see *136* and LN. XXXVIII., NOTE 3. — **corrōsis
plagis,** *by gnawing the nets;* see *122.* — **quo,** see *122 ;* what is its ante-
cedent ? — **ostendit,** what is its object ? — **mali,** see LN. LXXXV., NOTE 9.
— **soleant,** see *151* and LN. XCII., NOTE 31.

2. **lupo,** see *132.* — **praetereunti** (praeter and **eo),** see *126 ;* translate
the Participle by a Relative Clause. — **inquit,** see A. & G. **144,** *b* : A. &
S. **249** (5): B. **111,** *c,* 2 : B. & M. *444 :* G. **190,** 2 : H. **297,** II., 2 : C.
86, 2. — **reddit,** see A. & G. **205,** *b :* A. & S. **320:** B. **287,** *a :* B. & M.
644 : G. **281,** EXCEPTION 2 : H. **463,** II., 2 : C. **110,** 2, *b.*

3. **explĭcans,** *spreading.* — **inquit,** see note on **inquit,** Fable 2. — **alĭ-
quod,** see *116, a.* — **quod,** see *34* and *115.* — **contemnămus,** see *136.* —
alia, majōra, see LN. LXXXV., NOTE 1.

4. **laetum,** *abundant.* — **mihi,** see *137.* — **est,** what is its subject ? —
dulcia, see LN. LXXXV., NOTE 1. — **tutis,** see *67.*

5. **boves,** see A. & G. **61,** page 33 : A. & S. **110,** bōs : B. **138 :** B. & M.
123 : G. **80 :** H. **66 :** C. **31.** — **latrando,** see *153* and *54.* — **quod** —

patĕris, see *149.* — cibo, see *54* and *104.* — vellis, see *125* and LN. LXXXIX., NOTE 5.

6. occurrisset, see A. & G. *325*: A. & S. *509*, *a:* B. *304*, RULE LXV.: B. & M. *1244:* G. *581*, II.: H. *521*, II., 2 : C. *214*, 5. — morerētur, see *139.* — nequāquam, antea, what do they modify ? — obviam facta, *having met;* obviam is used with the Dative. — ausa est, see LN. XCII., NOTE 31.

7. pascebantur, what does the Imperfect Tense denote ? see *36.* — boves, see note on boves, Fable 5. — petīti, sc. sunt. — boni, see LN. LXXXIII., NOTE 1. — sit, see *151.*

8. pelle, see *54.* — indūtus, *having clothed himself.* — esset, see A. & G. *312*: A. & S. *481*, (2): G. *604*: H. *513*, II. : C. *220.* — movet, see LN. LXXXII., NOTE 11. — unde, *for which reason,* i. e. because his ears stuck out. — agnītus, from *agnosco;* render as if it were agnītus est, and supply *and.* — dedit, *suffered.* — honorĭbus, see *79.*

9. suspicāri, see *69.* — coepit, see *127.* — illam, why in the Accusative ? why Feminine ? — quod is here equivalent to id quod; compare the English *what,* equivalent to *that which.* — solet, see LN. XCII., NOTE 31. — majorĭbus, see *84* and *85.* — divitiis, see *67.* — minōres, what does it modify ?

10. duo, see *108* and LN. LXXXV., NOTE 9. — accurrunt, see LN. LXXXII., NOTE 1. — laeti, *joyfully;* see A. & G. *191*: A. & S. *557*, *h:* B. *270*, *b:* B. & M. *663:* G. *324*, REMARK 6: H. *443*: C. *113*, 6. — prior, see note on laeti; the comparative is used when two only are mentioned. — conspexisset, see *149.* — eo, see *104.*

11. tubĭcen, what is its derivation? see GEN. VY. — inquit, see note on inquit, Fable 2. — interficĭte, see *47.* — inermis, derivation ? see GEN. VY. — propter hoc ipsum, *for this very reason;* what is the reason ? — pugnandi, see *153* and *140.* — sis, see *145.* — soles, see LN. XCII., NOTE 31. — esse puniendos, see *130.* — eos, why in the Accusative ? — irrītent, see A. & G. *320*: A. & S. *500*, (2), (*d*): B. *301*: B. & M. *1220*, *b:* G. *633*: H. *500*, I.: C. *223*, 1.

12. vulpes, see A. & G. *30*, *b:* A. & S. *84*: B. *118*, III., REM. 2: B. & M. *41:* G. *20*, 3 : H. *43*, 3 : C. *13*, I., 3. — omnium — contentiōne, *with all its might;* what is the literal translation ? for the Abl. contentiōne, see *54.* — Si, (*to see*) *whether.* — posset, see *151.* — repertas, from reperio; see *121.* — tollĕrem, see *143* and A. & G. *310*, *a;* A. & S. *477*, *e:* B. *305*, *third clause:* G. *594*, 2: H. *507*, NOTE 7: C. *219*; *250.* — quae, see *34.* — se, see *53.* — despārent, see note on irrītent, Fable 11.

13. quomŏdo, (*to see*) *by what means.* — sibi, see A. & G. *227*, *c:* A. & S. *378*: B. *239*: B. & M. *836:* G. *347*: H. *385*, 1 : C. *160.* — cavērent.

see *151.* — **aliis,** see Ln. LXXXV., Note 1 and *122.* — **placuit,** what is
its subject ? — **annectaretur,** see A. & G. *332,* *a :* A. & S. **494,** *a :* B.
301, Rule LXII. : B. & M. *1222 :* G. **558 :** H. **501,** I., 1 : C. **208.** — **sic**
— **posse;** this Infinitive Clause depends upon some such expression as
they thought, they said. — **quaereretur,** see note on **occurrisset,** Fable 6 ;
what is the subject of **quaereretur ?** — **suadendo,** see *153.* — **plurimos,** see
85 and Ln. LXXXV., Note 9.

14. **inhaeserat,** from **inhaereo.** — **mercede,** see *146.* — **extrahat,** see
136. — **hoc,** what was *this* that the crane accomplished ? — **postularet,** see
note on **occurrisset,** Fable 6. — **num,** what answer is implied ? See Ln.
LXI., Note 1. — **merces,** see *64.* — **videtur,** what is its subject ? — **fauci-
bus,** how declined in the Singular ? in the Plural ? See Gen. Vy.

II. STORIES FROM EARLY ROMAN HISTORY.

1. **Janicŭlo,** *the Janiculum* is a hill on the west side of the Tiber ; *the
seven hills* are on the east side ; these are *the Palatine, Capitoline, Quiri-
nal, Aventine, Coelian, Esquiline,* and *Viminal.* — **eam Saturniam,** see *58.*
— **Itălos, agricultūram,** see *71.* — **primus** — **docuit,** *was the first who
taught;* see A. & G. **191:** A. & S. **557** *h :* B. **271,** Remark: B. & M.
663 : G. **324,** 7 : H. **442,** Note: C. **113,** 6, note 1.

2. **in** — **regionĭbus;** what country is meant ? — **sub,** *in the reign of.* —
Troja, *Troy* is said to have been destroyed in b. c. 1184. — **hinc,** *from this
place,* i. e. from Troy. — **Aeneae, Anchisae,** how declined ? See A. & G. **37 :**
A. & S. **94 :** B. **125 :** B. & M. *52 :* G. **72 :** H. **50 :** C. **20.** — **quibus,** see
132. — **Lavinium** was situated about 16 miles south of Rome, three miles
from the coast.

3. **Aeneae,** see note on **Aeneae** in preceding section. — **transtŭlit,** see
123. — **Albam Longam,** *Alba Longa* was about 16 miles southeast of
Rome, situated on the western slope of the Alban Mount and overlooking
the Alban Lake. — **secūtus est,** *succeeded.* — **genĭtus erat,** from **gigno.** —
ad Romam condĭtam, *until the founding of Rome ;* what is the literal trans-
lation ? — **Albae,** see *106.*

4. **Jove,** see *133* and A. & G. **60,** *b,* page 32 : A. & S. **111,** (3): B. **138 :**
B. & M. *123 :* H. **66,** 3 : C. 31. — **tonāret,** see *128* and note on **occurrisset,**
Fable 6. — **multo,** see *144.* — **tonitru,** what case? why ? — **ictus, sc. est.** —
Albānum Lacum, see note on **Albam Longam** in section 3.

5. **minor natu = junior;** for **natu,** see *124.* — **vellet,** see *125* and *151,*
reliquisset, see Ln. LXXXIX., Note 5.

6. **vestālem virgĭnem,** *a vestal virgin* was bound by a vow of chastity ; if she broke her vow she was buried alive. — **licet,** what is its subject ? — **viro nubĕre,** *to marry;* for **viro,** see *132 ;* what does **nubĕre** mean ? — **pepĕrit,** from **pario.** — **hoc,** what was it that Amulius had found out ?

7. **essent posĭti,** see A. & G. **326:** A. & S. **510** (2): B. **302,** 1: B. & M. *1251:* G. **587:** H. **517:** C. **214,** 3. — **quod,** what is its antecedent ? what did *a certain Faustulus see ?* — **regiōnis,** what *region* is meant ? — **nutriendos,** *to be nourished,* modifies **pueros,** and expresses the purpose of **dedit.**

8. **adolevisset,** from **adolesco ;** see note on **occurrisset,** Fable 6. — **quis,** see *64.* — **avus,** sc. **fuisset** and see *151.* — **monte Aventino,** *Mount Aventine,* one of the seven hills of Rome. The best authorities agree that Rome was built at first on the Palatine, which hill stands a short distance northeast of the Aventine.

9. **civĭbus,** see A. & G. **231,** *a:* A. & S. **380:** B. **242,** REM. 3: B. & M. *820:* H. **386:** C. **154.** — **inter,** *in the midst of.* — **ipsos,** *very.* — **spectantes,** translate by a relative clause.

10. **Romae,** see *67.* — **in incidĕrunt,** *they came unexpectedly upon.* — **quod,** see note on **quod,** Fable 9. — **gerĕrent,** see LN. LXXXIX., NOTE 5. — **et ea,** *these also,* i. e. as well as the rings and bracelets.

11. **Montem Tarpēium,** *the Tarpeian mount;* probably the Capitoline hill. — **forum Romānum,** *the Roman Forum,* an open space in the valley between the Capitoline and Palatine, surrounded by temples and other buildings ; here the Roman people, *the Populus Romanus,* met to transact business. — **media,** *midst of.* — **raptae,** sc. **muliĕres.** — **hinc — hinc,** *here* — *there.* — **utrique,** who are meant ? — **icit,** compare the English expression, *strike a bargain ;* the Romans were accustomed to offer a sacrifice to confirm a treaty, and hence this use of **ico.**

12. **quum — tum,** *both — and.* — **raptārum,** sc. **muliĕrum.** — **inter,** *in the midst of.* — **ortam,** *which had arisen.* — **ocŭlis,** see *67.* — **hinc,** i. e. by reason of the fact mentioned in the preceding sentence. — **alii — alii,** *some — others.* — **interfectum,** sc. **esse.** — **sublātum esse** from **tollo.**

13. **quo,** what is its antecedent ? — **Curĭbus,** see *106.* — **jussu,** see *79,* **facĕre,** what is its object ? — **morbo decessit,** i. e. Numa died a natural death, which has not always been the lot of kings ; with **decessit** supply **de vita.**

14. **praestitĕrat,** what does it govern ? see *58.* — **creātus,** see LN. LXIII. and EXAMPLES. — **Horatiōrum.** The Horatii fought for Rome, the Curiatii for Alba. The three Curiatii fell, but one of the Horatii survived ; this gave the victory to the Romans. — **Metti Fufēti,** see *17 ;* for his treachery he was torn asunder by horses driven in opposite directions, and his city Alba razed to the ground. The inhabitants of Alba were removed

to Rome and located on the Caelian Hill; this was the origin of the Roman *Plebs.* — **annis** expresses *duration of time;* what is the more usual construction? see *93.* — **arsit,** fr. **ardeo, ardēre, arsi, arsum,** *burn.*

15. **aequitāte,** see *194.* — **avo,** see *86.* — **bello,** see *54.* — **ei,** see A. & G. *225, d:* A. & S. *379:* B. *242,* REM. 3: B. & M. *859:* G. 348: H. *384,* II., 2: C. *152.* — **primus,** see note on **primus,** section *1.* — **obiit,** see *126* and note on **morbo decessit,** section *13.*

16. **deinde,** i. e. after the death of Ancus Marcius. — **qui** refers to **Damarāti.** — **advenienti,** sc. **ei** and see A. & G. *229:* A. & S. *380:* B. *242,* REM. 3: B. & M. *899:* H. **386,** 2: C. **151.** — **abstŭlit** from **aufĕro, auferre, abstŭli, ablātum,** *carry off;* derived from **ab** *away, off;* and **fero** *carry.* — **auguriōrum,** see *140.*

17. **Romae,** see *106.* — **commorarētur,** see note on **occurrisset,** Fable 6. — **tutōrem,** *as guardian;* compare *58.* — **pupillis,** see *67.* — **gentium** modifies **senatōres** understood. — **plura,** *several;* how declined? See LN. LXXXIV., NOTE 11.— **ademptos,** from **adīmo.** — **primus,** see note on **primus,** section *1.* — **Cloācas.** The main *sewer,* known as the Cloaca Maxima, and a branch running from the Forum are still in use. — **Capitolium,** *the Capitol,* signifies here the temple of Jupiter on the Capitoline. — **per filios,** *at the instigation of the sons;* they hired assassins to murder him: **a filiis** would signify that they killed him with their own hands. — **quibus,** see note on **ei,** section *16.*

18. **genĭtus,** from **gigno.** — **captīva,** see *25.* — **domo,** how declined? See *97.* — **conjŭgi,** see *132* and Ex. 1. — **educāret,** see *136.*

19. **domus;** this stood on the Palatine. — **regem** — **obedīret;** change this to the Direct Discourse; see *152.* — **eum** refers to **regem.** — **coepit,** see *127.* — **montes** — **adjunxit.** The Palatine, Capitoline, Quirinal, and Aventine had been previously occupied. — **milia,** how declined? see *108.* — **civium,** see LN. LXXXIII., NOTE 1.

20. **scelēre,** see *79.* — **filiae,** see *25.* — **curiae.** The *senate-house* stood near the Forum. — **domum,** see *105;* how declined? — **prima,** see note on **primus,** section *1.* — **regem,** *as king;* compare *58.*

21. **cognōmen,** i. e. **Superbus,** *the Proud.* — **morĭbus,** see *79.* — **bello,** see *111.* — **plures,** how declined? see note on **plura,** section *17.* — **populō-rum,** see LN. LXXXIII., NOTE 1. — **Templum.** This *temple* had been begun by Tarquinius Priscus; see section *17.* — **Jovis,** how declined? see note on **Jove,** section *4.* — **Lucretiae,** see *39.* — **vim,** how declined? See GEN. VY. — **ut** — **ulciscerentur,** see *136* and LN. XXXVIII., NOTE 3.

22. **in,** *for.* — **conjurārunt,** see LN. LXXV., NOTE 11. — **populo,** see *132.* — **ei,** *against him;* see *39.* — **civitātem = urbem.** — **Ardea** was situated about 18 miles south of Rome.

GENERAL VOCABULARY.

I. Latin-English.

Numerals and Pronouns not given in this Vocabulary can be found in the Grammar.

The References are to Sections of this book.

The English words in SMALL CAPITALS are derived either directly or indirectly from the Latin words under which they stand, or from the same Root.

The parts in Parentheses give the derivation of the Latin words. For Abbreviations see page xii.

A.

A., abbreviation of *Aulus*, a Roman praenomen.

ăb, ā, prep. w. abl. *from, away from ; by : on the side of.*

ab-dūco, dūcĕrĕ, duxī, ductŭm (ab *away,* duco *lead*), *lead away.* ABDUCT, ABDUCTION.

ab-jĭcio, jĭcĕrĕ, jēcī, jectŭm (ab *away, down ;* jacio *cast*), *cast away or down.* ABJECT.

abs-tĭneo, tĭnērĕ, tĭnuī, tentŭm (ab(s) *from,* teneo *keep*), *keep from,* ABSTAIN. ABSTINENCE.

ab-sŭm, essĕ, fuī (ab *away,* sum *be*) *be away, be* ABSENT, *be distant.*

āc. See **atquĕ.**

Accă, ae, f., *Acca Lārentia,* the wife of Faustulus.

ac-cēdo, cēdĕrĕ, cessī, cessŭm (ad *towards,* cedo *go*), *go towards, draw near, approach ; assault.* ACCEDE, ACCESSION.

ac-cĭdo, cĭdĕrĕ, cĭdī (ad *upon,* cado *fall*), *fall upon, befall, happen.* ACCIDENT.

ac-cĭpio, cĭpĕrĕ, cēpī, ceptŭm (ad *to* one's self, capio *take*), *receive,* ACCEPT, *take.*

ac-curro, currĕrĕ, cŭcurrī and **currī, cursŭm** (ad *to,* curro *run*), *run to, hasten to.*

accūso, ārĕ, āvī, atŭm (ad *to,* causa *a lawsuit*), ACCUSE, *blame, censure.* ACCUSATION.

ācĕr, ācrĭs, ācrĕ, *sharp.* ACRID.

ăcerbŭs, ă, ŭm, *sour.* ACERBITY.

ăciēs, ăciēī, f., *edge; line, line of battle; army* in battle-array. See **agmen**.

ācrĭtĕr, ācrĭŭs, ăcerrĭmē, adv. (acer *sharp*), *sharply, fiercely, violently.*

ăd, prep. w. acc. *to, towards; for; near;* w. numerals, *about;* w. names of towns, *towards, in* or *into the vicinity of.*

ăd-ămo, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm (ad denoting *a beginning,* amo *love*), *begin to love, acquire a liking for.*

ad-do, dĕrĕ, dĭdī, dĭtŭm (ad *to, beside;* do *put*), ADD.

ad-dūco, dūcĕrĕ, duxī, ductŭm (ad *to,* duco *lead*), *lead to, lead; influence.*

ăd-eo, īrĕ, iī, ĭtŭm (ad *to,* eo *go*), *go to.* See *126.*

ăd-ĭmo, ĭmĕrĕ, ēmī, emptŭm (ad *to* one's self, emo *take*), *take away.*

ădĭtŭs, ūs, m. (adeo *go to*), *approach, access.*

ad-jungo, jungĕrĕ, junxī, junctŭm (ad *to,* jungo *join*), *join to, join.*

ad-mĭnistro, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm (ad without additional force, ministro *serve*), ADMINISTER, *manage.* ADMINISTRATION, ADMINISTRATOR.

ad-mitto, mittĕrĕ, mīsī, missŭm (ad *to,* mitto *let go*), *allow,* ADMIT; *give the reins to;* equo admisso, *at full speed.* ADMISSION.

ad-mŏneo, mŏnērĕ, mŏnuī, mŏnĭtŭm (ad w. no perceptible additional force, moneo *admonish*), ADMONISH, *warn.* ADMONITION.

ădŏlesco, ădŏlescĕrĕ, ădŏlēvī, ădultŭm (adoleo *cause to grow up*), *grow, increase, grow up.* ADULT.

ad-sŭm, ad-essĕ, af-fuī (ad *near,* sum *be*), *be near, be present: assist.*

ad-vĕnio, venīrĕ, vēnī, ventŭm (ad *to,* venio *come*), *come to, arrive, come.* ADVENTURE.

adventŭs, ūs, m. (advenio *come to*), *arrival, approach.* ADVENT.

adversŭs and adversŭm, prep. w. acc. *towards, against.*

ad-verto, vertĕrĕ, vertī, versŭm (ad *towards,* verto *turn*), *turn towards;* id anĭmum advertĕre, *to turn the mind towards it, to perceive it.* ADVERT.

aedĭfĭcĭŭm, ī, n. (aedifico *build*), *building,* EDIFICE.

aedĭfĭco, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm (aedes *building* for habitation, facio *make*), *build.* EDIFY, EDIFICATION.

Aeduī, ōrŭm, m. pl., *a tribe in Central Gaul.*

aegĕr, aegră, aegrŭm, *sick.*

Aenēas, ae, m., *a Trojan prince, son of Venus and Anchises.*

aequĭtās, ātĭs, f. (aequus *fair, equitable*), EQUITY, *justice, moderation.*

aequŭs, ă, ŭm, *even, level;* EQUAL; *like; fair, equitable.*

aestās, ātĭs, f., *summer.*

aetās, ātĭs, f., *age.*

af-fĕro, af-ferrĕ, at-tŭlĭ, al-lātŭm (ad *to,* fero *bring*), *bring to, carry to; offer; carry.*

af-fĭcio, fĭcĕrĕ, fēcī, fectŭm (ad *to,* facio *do*), AFFECT, *influence;* **magno dolōre afffcĭ,** *to be very grievously affected.*

ăgĕr, agrī, m., *field, land; country, territory.*

aggĕr, aggĕrĭs, m., *mound; materials for a mound.*

ag-grĕdior, grĕdī, gressŭs sŭm (ad *to,* gradior *go*), *go to, approach; go against, attack.* AGGRESSION, AGGRESSIVE.

agmĕn, agmĭnĭs, n. (ago *put in motion*), *army* on the march, *line of march;* [**acies,** *army* in battle array; **exercĭtus,** a disciplined *army*]; **agmen novissĭmum,** *the rear;* **prīmum agmen,** *the van.*

ag-nosco, noscĕrĕ, nōvī, nĭtŭm (ad denoting *reference,* (g)nosco *know*), *recognize; know.*

ăgo, ăgĕrĕ, ēgī, actŭm, *put in motion; lead, drive, conduct; act, do, perform.* ACTION, AGENT.

agrĭcultūră, ae, f. (ager *field,* colo *cultivate*), AGRICULTURE.

ălăcĕr, ălacrĭs, ălacrĕ, *lively, cheerful; eager, fierce.*

ălacrĭtās, ātĭs, f. (alacer *lively*), *liveliness, eagerness, zeal.* ALACRITY.

Albă or **Albă Longă,** the mother city of Rome, built by Ascanius.

Albānŭs, ĭ, m., *an Alban,* an inhabitant of Alba.

alĭquandŏ, adv. (aliquis *some one*), *at some time, once, formerly.*

ălĭquĭs, indef. pron. [see *116, a*], *some one, somebody, something, some; any one, anybody, anything, any.*

ălĭŭs, ălĭă, ălĭŭd [see *24*], *other, another.*

Allobrŏgēs, um, m. pl., a people in the southeastern part of Gaul.

al-lŏquor, lŏquī, lŏcūtŭs sŭm (ad *to,* loquor *speak*), *speak to, address.*

ălo, ălĕrĕ, ălŭī, ălĭtŭm or **altŭm,** *nourish, feed, support.*

Alpēs, Alpiŭm, f. pl. *the* ALPS.

altē, altiŭs, altissĭmē (altus *high, low*), *on high, highly; low, lowly.*

altĕr, altĕră, altĕrŭm [see *24*], *one of two, the other, the second;* **altĕr — altĕr,** *the one — the other.*

altĭtūdo, altĭtūdĭnĭs, f. (altus *high, deep*), *height; depth;* ALTITUDE.

altŭs, ă, ŭm (alo *nourish*), *high, lofty: deep.*

ămīcĭtĭă, ae, f. (amīcus *friendly*), *friendship.*

ămīcŭs, ă, ŭm (amo *love*), *loving, friendly;* **ămīcŭs, ĭ,** m. *friend.* AMICABLE.

ā-mitto, mittĕrĕ, mīsī, missŭm (ab *away*, mitto *let go*), *lose*.

amplio, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm (amplus *of large extent*), *enlarge*.

ampliŭs, adv. *more, farther*.

Amuliŭs, ī, m., son of Silvius Procas and brother of Numitor.

ăn, adv. *or*.

Anchīsēs, ae, m., a Trojan, the father of Aenēas.

Ancŭs Marciŭs, ī, m., the fourth king of Rome.

angustiae, ārŭm, f. pl. (angustus *narrow*), *narrow pass, defile; difficulty*.

ănĭm-ad-verto, vertĕrĕ, vertī, versŭm (animus *mind*, adverto *turn towards*), *notice*. ANIM-ADVERT, ANIMADVERSION.

ănĭmăl, ănĭmālĭs, n., ANIMAL.

ănĭmŭs, ī, m., *mind, soul; disposition; affection; feeling, courage.* [anĭmus denotes the human *soul*, including all its faculties, including mens; mens denotes the thinking, MENTAL faculty.]

an-necto, nectĕrĕ, nexuī, nexŭm (ad *to*, necto *tie, fasten*), *tie to, fasten to*. ANNEX.

annŭs, ī, m., *year*. ANNUAL.

antĕ, prep. w. acc., *before;* adv. *before, previously.* ANTE in ANTECEDENT, etc.

anteā, adv. (ante *before*, ea *that*), *before, previously*.

antīquŭs, ă, ŭm (ante *before*), *ancient, old; of long continuance.* ANTIQUE, ANTIQUATED.

ānŭlŭs, ī, m., *ring*. ANNULAR.

Ap., abbreviation of *Appius*, a Roman prænomen.

ăpertŭs, ă, ŭm (aperio *uncover*), *uncovered, unprotected*.

ap-pello, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm (ad *to*, pello *bring* one's self to a person), *address; name, call.* APPEAL, APPELLATION.

ap-prŏpinquo, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm (ad *to*, propinquo *draw near*), *draw near to, approach*.

ăpŭd, prep. w. acc., *at, near, in presence of, among*.

ăquă, ae, f., *water.* AQUEDUCT.

ăquĭlă, ae, f., *eagle*.

Aquĭlēĭă, ae, f., a town at the head of the Adriatic Sea.

Aquĭtānī, ōrŭm, m. pl., inhabitants of Aquitania.

Aquĭtānĭă, ae, f., the southwestern division of Gaul.

Arăr, Arărĭs, acc. Arărĭm, m., *the Saône* [pronounced *Sōne*], a river in Gaul, tributary to the Rhone.

arcesso, arcessĕrĕ, arcessīvī, arcessītŭm, *invite, summon*.

arceo, arcērĕ, arcuī, *drive away; ward off, keep from; restrain*.

Ardea, ae, f., a city of Latium, capital of the Rutŭli.

armă, ōrŭm, n. pl., ARMS, *weapons*.

armillă, ae, f., *bracelet* or *ring*, worn on the left arm by soldiers as a reward for valor.

Ariovistus, ī, m., a powerful German king in the time of Caesar.

ar-rĭpio, rĭpĕrĕ, rĭpŭī, reptŭm (ad *upon*, rapio *seize*), *seize upon*.

arrŏgantiă, ae, f. (arrogans *assuming*), *haughtiness, insolence,* ARROGANCE.

Arvernī, ōrŭm, m. pl., *a people in the eastern part of Aquitania.*

arx, arcĭs, f., *citadel, fortress.*

Ascaniŭs, ī, m., *son of Aeneas.*

Asia, ae, f., ASIA.

ăsĭnŭs, ī, m., *an ass.*

as-sĕquor, sĕquī, sĕcūtŭs sŭm (ad with no perceptible additional force, sequor *follow*), *follow; overtake; obtain.*

ăsȳlŭm, ī, n. ASYLUM.

ăt, conj. *but.*

at-tĭngo, tĭngĕrĕ, tĭgī, tactŭm (ad *against*, tango *touch*), *touch against, border upon; touch, reach.*

atquĕ, āc, conj. (ad *in addition*, que *and*), *and also, and.*

auctōrĭtās, ātĭs, f. (auctor *producer*), AUTHORITY, *influence.*

audāciă, ae, f. (audax *bold*), *boldness,* AUDACITY.

audācĭtĕr or audactĕr, audāciŭs, audācissĭmē, adv. (audax *bold*), *boldly, courageously.*

audax, gen. audācĭs (audeo *dare*), *bold, daring,* AUDACIOUS.

audeo, audērĕ, ausŭs sŭm [see LN. XCII., NOTE 31], *dare, venture.*

audio, īrĕ, īvī, ītŭm, *hear.* AUDIT, AUDITOR, AUDIENCE.

au-fŭgio, fŭgĕrĕ, fūgī, fŭgĭtŭm (ab *away.* fugio *flee*), *flee away, escape; flee.*

augeo, augērĕ, auxī, auctŭm, *increase,* AUGMENT.

augŭrium, ī, n. (auguror fr. augur *diviner*), AUGURY, *divination.*

aureŭs, ă, ŭm (aurum *gold*), *golden.*

aurīgă, ae, m. (aurea *bridle*, ago *manage*), *charioteer.*

aurĭs, aurĭs, f. *ear.* AURI-CULAR.

aurŭm, ī, n., *gold.*

aut, conj. *or; aut — aut, either — or.*

autĕm, conj., *but, yet, moreover.*

auxĭlium, ī, n. (augeo *increase*), *help, aid;* pl. AUXILIARIES.

Aventīnŭs, ī, m., *the Aventine.*

aversŭs, ă, ŭm (averto *turn away*), *turned away; aversus hostis, a retreating enemy.*

ā-verto, vertĕrĕ, vertī, versŭm (ab *away*, verto *turn*), *turn away, turn aside,* AVERT. AVERSION.

ăvŭs, ī, m., *grandfather.*

B.

barbărŭs, ă, ŭm, *foreign; uncivilized; savage, rude,* BARBAROUS. BARBARIAN.

beātŭs, ă, ŭm (beo *bless*), *happy.* BEATIFIC.

Belgae, ārŭm, m. pl., *a powerful people dwelling in Northern Gaul.*

bellĭcōsŭs, ă, ŭm, *warlike.*

bello, ārĕ, āvī, atŭm (bellum *war*), *carry on war.*

bellŭm ī, n., *war.*

bĕnĕ, adv., *well, finely.*

bĕnĕfĭcĭum, ī, n., *kindness,* BENE-FIT. BENEFICIAL.

bĕnignē, adv. (benignus *kind*), *kindly;* BENIGNLY. BENIGN, BENIGNANT.

bestĭă, ae, f., BEAST.

Bĭbractĕ, ĭs, n., the chief town of the Aedui.

biennĭum, ī, n. (bis *twice,* annus *year*), *two years.* BIENNIAL.

Bŏĭī, ōrŭm, m. pl., *the Boii* [pronounced *Bó-yī*], a nomadic people dwelling chiefly in Gaul, Italy, and Germany.

bŏnŭs, ă, ŭm, *good, friendly;* bŏnŭm, ī, n. *a good thing, an advantage;* bŏnă, ōrŭm, n. pl., *goods, an estate.*

bōs, bŏvĭs, m. and f., *ox, cow.*

brĕvĭs, brĕvĕ, *short,* BRIEF.

Brūtŭs, ī, m. (brutus *stupid*), *L. Junius Brutus,* the deliverer of Rome from regal dominion.

C.

C., abbreviation of Gāiŭs [pronounced *Gá-yus*], a Roman praenomen.

caedēs, caedĭs, f. (caedo *kill*), *murder, slaughter, carnage.*

caedo, caedĕrĕ, cĕcīdī, caesŭm, *cut, cut down;* kill, mur-der.   -CIDE in PARRI-CIDE, MATRI-CIDE, etc.

Caesăr, Caesărĭs, m., *Caius Julius Caesar,* a distinguished Roman general, orator, statesman, and author.

Cāiŭs Vălĕrĭŭs Procillus, a distinguished Gaul, friend of Caesar.

călămĭtās, ātĭs, f., CALAMITY, *disaster, misfortune.*

campŭs, ī, m., *plain, field;* Campus, *the Campus Martius,* a grassy plain just outside the walls of Rome on which the people assembled for elections, military drills, and games.

cănĭs, cănĭs, m. and f., *dog.*

căpio, căpĕrĕ, cēpī, captŭm, *take,* CAPTURE.

Căpĭtōlĭum, ī, n. (caput *head*), THE CAPITOL, the temple of Jupiter on the Capitoline hill at Rome; *the Capitoline hill,* including both temple and citadel.

căpră, ae, f., *a she-goat.*

captīvŭs, ă, ŭm (capio *capture*), CAPTIVE; captīvŭs, ī, m., *a captive, a prisoner.*

căpŭt, căpĭtĭs, n., *head.* OCCIPUT.

carcĕr, carcĕrĭs, m., *prison.* IN-CARCER-ATE.

cāreo, cārērĕ, cāruī, cārĭtŭm *be without, lack.*

carpentŭm, ī, n., *chariot.*

carrŭs, ī, m., CART, *wagon.*

cārŭs, ă, ŭm, *dear, beloved.*

Cassĭŭs, ī, m., a Roman name.

castellŭm, ĭ, n. (castrum *a forti-fied place*), CASTLE, *fort, strong-hold.*

Castĭcŭs, ĭ, m., a chief of the Sequani.

castră, ŏrŭm, n. pl., *soldiers' huts, camp.*

causă, ae, f., CAUSE, *reason, mo-tive;* causā, *for the sake of,* when following a Genitive; causam dīcĕre, *to plead one's cause.*

căveo, căvĕrĕ, cāvī, cautŭm, *be on one's guard.* CAUTIOUS.

cĕlĕr, cĕlĕrĭs, cĕlĕrĕ (cello *im-pel*), *swift, speedy.* CELERITY.

cĕlĕrĭtĕr, cĕlĕrĭŭs, cĕlerrĭmē, adv. (celer *swift*), *swiftly, quick-ly, immediately.*

cēlo, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm, CONCEAL, *hide.*

censŭs, ūs, m. (censeo *assess, register*), CENSUS.

Centrōnēs, ŭm, m. pl., a tribe in Southeastern Gaul.

centŭm, num. adj. indecl., *hun-dred.*

certāmĕn, certāmĭnĭs, n. (certo *contend*), *contest; battle.*

certŭs, ă, ŭm (cerno *determine*), CERTAIN, *sure;* Caesarĕm certiōrem facĕre, *to inform Caesar.*

cētĕrī, ae, ă, adj. pl., *the rest.*

cĭbŭs, ĭ, m., *food.*

cingo, cingĕrĕ, cinxī, cinctŭm, *surround, encircle.* CINCTURE.

circĭtĕr, adv. (circus *circle*), *about, near.*

circŭm, prep. w. acc. (circus *circle*), *around; near, in the en-virons of.* CIRCUM- is a prefix in many English words; e. g. CIRCUM-FERENCE, CIRCUM-NAVIGATE.

circum-do, dărĕ, dĕdī, dătŭm (circum *around*, do *put*), *put around, surround.*

circum-vĕnio, vĕnīrĕ, vēnī, ventŭm (circum *around*, ve-nio *come*), *come around, sur-round;* CIRCUMVENT.

cĭtĕrior, cĭtĕriŭs [see *85*], *hither.*

cĭtrā, prep. w. acc., *this side of.*

cīvĭs, cīvĭs, m. and f., *citizen.* CIVIL.

cīvĭtās, ātĭs, f. (civis *citizen*), *a body of citizens, a state; citizen-ship.*

clārŭs, ă, ŭm, CLEAR; *famous.*

claudo, claudĕrĕ, clausī, clau-sŭm, *close, enclose, shut;* agmen claudĕre, *to bring up the rear.* IN-CLUDE, EX-CLUDE.

cliens, clientĭs, m. and f., (clu-ens fr. clueo *hear*), CLIENT, *vassal.*

clĭpeŭs or clўpeŭs, ĭ, m., *shield.*

cloācă, ae, f., *drain, sewer;* Clo-āca maxĭma, the great sewer in Rome, constructed by Tar-quinius Priscus.

coepī, coepissĕ [see *127*], *have begun, began.*

cōgĭto, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm (cum de-noting *completeness*, agĭto *weigh in the mind*), *consider, reflect upon.* COGITATE.

cognŏmĕn, cognŏmĭnĭs, n. (cum denoting *similarity,* (g)nomen *name*), *a surname.*

co-gnosco, gnoscĕrĕ, gnōvī, gnĭtŭm (cum denoting *completeness,* (g)nosco *know*), *know completely; find out, ascertain, learn, discover.* COGNITION.

cōgo, cōgĕrĕ, coēgī, coactŭm (cum *together,* ago *drive*), *drive or lead together, collect; compel.* COGENT.

cohors, cohortĭs, f., COHORT, *the tenth part of a legion.*

co-hortor, ārī, ātŭs sŭm (cum *intensive,* hortor *urge*), *exhort, encourage.*

Collātīnŭs, ĭ, m., cognomen of L. Tarquĭnius.

collĭs, collĭs, m., *a hill.*

col-lŏco, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm (cum denoting *completeness,* loco *place*), *lay, put, place;* nuptum — collocāre, *to give in marriage.* COLLOCATE, COLLOCATION.

collŏquĭŭm, ĭ, n. (colloquor *speak together*), *conference, interview.* COLLOQUY.

col-lŏquor, lŏquī, lŏcūtŭs sŭm (cum *with,* loquor *speak*), *speak with, hold a conference.*

collŭm, ĭ, n., *neck.*

cŏlo, cŏlĕrĕ, cŏluī, cultŭm, *dwell; till,* CULTIVATE; *honor.*

com-būro, būrĕrĕ, bussī, bustŭm (cum denoting *completeness,* (b)uro *burn*), *burn up.* COMBUSTION.

comĭtĭum, ĭ, n. (cum *together,* eo *go*), *the comitium,* a place where the Romans assembled to vote.

commeātŭs, ūs, m. (commeo *come and go*), *supplies, provisions.*

com-mĕmŏro, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm (cum *intensive,* memoro *remind of*), *call to mind; relate.* COMMEMORATION.

com-meo, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm (cum denoting *frequency,* meo *go*), *come and go, resort;* ad Belgas commeāre, *to visit the Belgae.*

com-mitto, mittĕrĕ, mīsī, missŭm (cum *together,* mitto *cause to go*), *join; begin;* COMMIT. COMMISSION.

commodē, adv. (commodus *advantageous*), *advantageously, fitly, conveniently;* satis commŏde, *conveniently enough, with sufficient ease.*

commŏdŭs, ă, ŭm (cum denoting *completeness,* modus *measure*), *advantageous, suitable, fit.* COMMODIOUS.

com-mŏror, ārī, ātŭs sŭm (cum denoting *completeness,* moror *tarry*), *stop; reside, stay at; remain.*

com-mŏveo, mŏvērĕ, mŏvī, mōtŭm (cum *intensive,* moveo *move*), *move, affect, excite, disturb, stir up, induce.* COMMOTION.

com-mūnĭo, mūnīrĕ, mūnīvī and **mūnĭī, mūnītŭm** (cum

denoting *completeness*, **munio** *fortify*), *fortify on all sides.*

commūnĭs, commūnĕ (cum *together*, **munis** *serving*), COMMON.

com-păro, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm (cum *intensive*, **paro** *prepare*), *prepare with zeal, make ready.*

com-pĕrio, pĕrīrĕ, pĕrī, pertŭm, *learn, discover.*

com-plector, plectī, plexŭs sŭm (cum *with*, **plector** *entwine one's self*), *embrace.*

complūrēs, complūră (rarely **complūriă**), gen. **complūriŭm,** adj. pl. (cum *together*, **plures** *several*), *several together, very many.*

com-porto, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm (cum *together*, **porto** *bring*), *bring together, collect.* COMPORT.

cōnātŭm, ī, n. (conor *to attempt*), *an attempt.*

con-cēdo, cēdĕrĕ, cessī, cessŭm (cum denoting *completeness*, **cedo** *yield*), *grant;* CONCEDE. CONCESSION.

concĭlio, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm (concilium *a calling together*), *bring together; win,* CONCILIATE.

concĭlium, ī, n. (cum *together*, **calo** *call*), COUNCIL, *assembly.*

concordiă, ae, f. (concors fr. cum denoting *similarity*, **cor** *heart*), CONCORD, *harmony.*

con-curro, currĕrĕ, cŭcurrī and **currī, cursŭm** (cum *together*, **curro** *run*), *rush together; hasten.* CONCURRENT.

condĭtio, condĭtĭōnĭs, f. (condo *put together*), CONDITION.

condo, condĕrĕ, condĭdī, condĭtŭm (cum *together*, do *put*), *found, build.*

con-dūco, dūcĕrĕ, duxī, ductŭm (cum *together*, duco *lead*), *lead together, collect; hire;* CONDUCE.

con-fĕro, ferrĕ, tŭlī, col-lātŭm (cum *together*, fero *bring*), *bring together, collect; put off;* CONFER; **se conferre,** *to betake one's self.* CONFERENCE, COLLATE, COLLATION.

con-fĭcio, fĭcĕrĕ, fēcī, fectŭm (cum denoting *completeness*, **facio** *make*), *execute, accomplish, finish.* CONFECTION.

con-fĭrmo, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm (cum denoting *completeness*, **firmus** *firm*), *establish, strengthen,* CONFIRM; *encourage; assert.* CONFIRMATION.

con-jĭcio, jĭcĕrĕ, jēcī, jectŭm (cum *intensive*, **jacio** *throw*), *hurl.* CONJECTURE.

conjūrātio, conjūrātĭōnĭs, f. (conjūro *swear together*), *conspiracy.*

con-jūro, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm (cum *together*, juro *swear*), *swear together; conspire.* CONJURE.

conjux, conjŭgĭs, m. and f. (conjungo fr. cum *together*, jungo *join*), *spouse, husband, wife.*

cōnor, ārī, ātŭs sŭm, *attempt, try.* CONATIVE.

conscĭu̇s, ă, ŭm (cum *with*, scio *know*), CONSCIOUS.

con-sensŭs, ūs, m. (consentio *think together*), *agreement,* CON-SENT.

con-sĕquor, sĕqui, sĕcūtŭs sŭm (cum denoting *completeness*, sequor *follow*), *follow after, follow; gain; obtain.* CONSEQUENT.

con-sĕro, sĕrĕrĕ, sĕrui, sertŭm (cum *together*, sero *join*), *join together, join;* **pugnam con-serĕre**, *to join battle, to fight.*

Considiŭs, ĭ, m., *Publius Consi-dius,* an officer in Caesar's army.

con-sīdo, sīdĕrĕ, sēdī, sessŭm (cum *together*, sido *sit down*), *sit down together, encamp.*

consĭli̇ŭm, ĭ, n., *deliberation,* COUNSEL, *plan, design.*

con-sisto, sistĕrĕ, stĭtī, stĭtŭm (cum denoting *complĕteness*, sisto *place one's self*), *take a stand; keep a position; halt.* CONSIST, CONSISTENT.

con-sōlor, ārī, ātŭs sŭm (cum *intensive*, solor *comfort*), *comfort greatly,* CONSOLE; *encourage, cheer.*

conspectŭs, ūs, m. (conspicio *look at*), *sight, view, presence.*

con-spĭcio, spĭcĕrĕ, spexī, spec-tŭm (cum denoting *complete-ness*, specio *look*), *behold, see.*

conspĭcor, ārī, ātŭs sŭm (con-spicio), *behold, see.*

constantiă, ae, f. (constans *standing firm*), *firmness, stead-fastness,* CONSTANCY.

con-stĭtuo, stĭtuĕrĕ, stĭtuī, stĭ-

tūtŭm (cum denoting *complete-ness*, statuo *cause to stand*), *re-solve, determine: establish, station.* CONSTITUTE, CONSTITUENT.

consuesco, ccnsuescĕrĕ, con-suēvī, consuētŭm, *become ac-customed, be wont.*

consŭl, consŭli̇s, m. (akin to consulo *consult*), CONSUL; *one of the two chief magistrates at Rome, chosen annually.*

con-sūmo, sūmĕrĕ, sumpsī, sumptŭm (cum denoting *com-pleteness*, sumo *take*), CONSUME, *waste, destroy.* CONSUMPTION.

con-temno, temnĕrĕ, tempsī, temptŭm, *despise,* CONTEMN. CONTEMPT.

con-tendo, tendĕrĕ, tendī, ten-tŭm (cum denoting *complete-ness*, tendo *stretch*), *hasten, march in haste; contend, dispute, fight;* w. inf. *proceed, set out eagerly.*

contentio, contentiōnĭs, f. (con-tendo *contend*), CONTENTION, *strife.*

con-tĭneo, tĭnērĕ, tĭnuī, tentŭm (cum *together*, teneo *hold*), *hold together; encompass, hem in, bound; occupy, restrain.* CON-TENT, CONTINENT.

contĭnentĕr, adv. (contĭnens *hanging together*), *continually, without cessation.*

con-tingo, tingĕrĕ, tĭgī, tactŭm (cum denoting *completeness*, tango *touch*), *touch on all sides; touch, border upon.* CONTACT.

contrā, prep. w. acc., *against.*

contŭmēlĭă, ae, f. (cum *intensive*, tumeo *swell*), *insult, abuse; disgrace.* CONTUMELY.

con-vălesco, vălescĕrĕ, văluī (cum denoting *completeness*, valesco *grow strong*), *regain health, recover.* CONVALESCENT.

con-vĕnio, vĕnīrĕ, vēnī, ventŭm (cum *together*, venio *come*), *come together, assemble;* CONVENE. CONVENTION.

conventŭs, ūs, m. (convenio *come together*), *court;* conventum agĕre, *to hold a court.*

con-verto, vertĕrĕ, vertī, versŭm (cum denoting *completeness*, verto *turn*), *turn about, change;* in fugam convertĕre, *to put to flight.* CONVERT, CONVERSION.

con-vŏcŏ, āre, āvī, ātŭm (cum *together*, voco *call*), *call together, summon,* CONVOKE. CONVOCATION.

cōpĭă, ae, f. (cum denoting *completeness*, ops *means* of any kind), *plenty, abundance, supply; number;* pl., *forces, troops; riches.*

cōpĭōsŭs, ă, ŭm (copia *plenty*, osus *full of*), *wealthy, well-supplied;* COPIOUS.

cōrăm, prep. w. abl., *in the presence of; before:* adv., *openly.*

Cŏrinthŭs, ī, f., *Corinth,* a city in Greece.

corpŭs, corpŏrĭs, n., *body;* CORPSE.

cornū, ūs, n., *horn; wing, flank* of an army.

cor-rōdo, rōdĕrĕ, rōsī, rōsŭm (cum denoting *completeness*, rodo *gnaw*), *gnaw to pieces, gnaw;* CORRODE.

Crassus, *M. Licinius Crassus,* a celebrated Roman.

crĕmo, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm, *burn.* CREMATION.

creo, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm, CREATE, *elect, choose, appoint.* CREATION.

crūs, crūrĭs, n., *leg.*

cultŭs, ūs, m. (colo *cultivate*), CULTURE, *civilization.*

cŭm, prep. w. abl., *with, together with.*

cŭpĭdĭtās, ātĭs, f. (cupidus *desirous*), *desire, wish, longing; eagerness, enthusiasm;* CUPIDITY.

cŭpĭdŭs, ă, ŭm, (cupio *desire*), *desirous, fond.*

cŭpio, cŭpĕrĕ, cŭpīvī and cŭpiī, cupītŭm, *desire.*

cūr, interrog. adv., *why? wherefore?*

cūră, ae, f. (quaero *seek*), *care.*

Cŭrēs, Cŭriŭm, f. pl., chief town of the Sabines.

cūrĭă, ae, f., *curia* or *ward; senate-house.*

Curiātiī, ōrŭm, m. pl., the name of an Alban tribe. Three brothers belonging to this tribe fought with the Horatii.

cūro, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm (cura *care*), *care for, attend to, cause* something *to be done.* CURATE.

custōs, custōdĭs, m. and f., *guard, watch.* CUSTODIAN.

D.

damno, ārĕ, āvī, atum (dam-num *penalty*), CONDEMN.

dē, prep. w. abl., *down from, from; of; about, concerning; for.*

deă, ae, f. [see *11*], *goddess.*

dēbeo, ērĕ, uī, ĭtŭm (de *from,* habeo *have*), *owe.*

dē-cēdo, cēdĕrĕ, cessī, cessŭm (de *away,* cedo *go*), *go away, depart, retire.*

dē-certo, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm (de *intensive,* certo *contend*), *fight, contend.*

dĕcĭmŭs, ă, ŭm (decem *ten*), *tenth.*

dē-cĭpio, cĭpĕrĕ, cēpī, ceptŭm (de *intensive,* capio *ensnare*), DECEIVE. DECEPTION.

declāro, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm, *show,* DECLARE.

dē-dūco, dūcĕrĕ, duxī, ductŭm (de *down, away,* duco *lead*), *lead down* or *away, withdraw, lead.* DEDUCE, DEDUCT, etc.

dē-fătīgo, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm (de *denoting completeness,* fatigo *weary*), *weary completely, fatigue.*

dē-fendo, fendĕrĕ, fendī, fensŭm, DEFEND.

dēformĭtās, ātĭs, f., DEFORMITY, *ugliness.*

deinde, adv., *then, after that.*

dē-jĭcio, jĭcĕrĕ, jēcī, jectŭm (de *down,* jacio *throw*), *throw* or *cast down.* DEJECTION.

dēlectŭs, ă, ŭm (deligo *choose*), *chosen.*

dēleo, dēlērĕ, dēlēvī, dēlētŭm *destroy.* DELETERIOUS.

dē-lībĕro, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm (de *denoting completeness,* libro *weigh* in one's mind), *weigh well in mind,* DELIBERATE. DELIBERATION.

dē-lĭgo, lĭgĕrĕ, lēgī, lectŭm (de *apart,* lego *gather*), *select, choose.*

Dēmărātŭs, ī, m., *a Corinthian, father of Tarquinius Priscus.*

dē-mitto, mittĕrĕ, mīsī, missŭm (de *down,* mitto *let go*), *let go down;* capĭte demisso, *with bowed head.*

dē-monstro, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm (de *intensive,* monstro *show*), *point out, show,* DEMONSTRATE; *declare.* DEMONSTRATION.

dēnī, ae, ă, num. adj. pl., *ten each.*

dēnĭquĕ, adv., *at last, finally.*

dens, dentĭs, m., *tooth.* DENTAL.

dē-pōno, pōnĕrĕ, pŏsuī, pŏsĭtŭm (de *down,* pono *put*), *put down, lay aside, get rid of.* DEPOSIT, DEPONENT.

de-scendo, scendĕrĕ, scendī, scensŭm (de *down,* scando *go*), DESCEND.

de-scrībo, scrībĕrĕ, scripsī, scriptŭm, DESCRIBE; *divide.* DESCRIPTION.

dē-signo, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm (de *intensive,* signo *mark*), DESIG-NATE, *describe, mean.*

de-spēro, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm (de *denoting negation,* spero *hope*) *despair.* DESPERATION.

de-stĭtuo, stĭtuĕrĕ, stĭtuī, stĭtū-

tŭm (de *away*, statuo *put*), *forsake, abandon.* DESTITUTE, DESTITUTION.

dē-sŭm, de-essĕ, dē-fuī (de *away*, sum *be*), *be wanting.*

dētĕriŏr, dētĕriŭs [see *85*], *worse.*

dētrĭmentŭm, ī, n. (detero fr. de *away*, tero *rub*), *loss; damage, injury;* DETRIMENT. DETRIMENTAL.

deŭs, ī, m. [see *20*], *god;* DEITY.

dē-veho, vehĕrĕ, vexī, vectŭm (de *away*, veho *carry*), *carry away, bring.*

dē-vŏro, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm (de *down*, voro *swallow*), DEVOUR, *eat up.*

dextĕr, dextrā, dextrŭm, *right;* dextrā (sc. manu *hand*), *on the right.* DEXTEROUS.

dīco, dīcĕrĕ, dixī, dictŭm, *say, tell, speak; appoint; call, name;* causam dicĕre, *to plead one's cause.* DICTUM.

diēs, diēī, m., *day.*

dif-fĕro, dif-ferrĕ, dis-tŭlī, dī-lātŭm (dis *in different directions*, fero *carry*), *carry different ways; put off;* DIFFER.

diffĭcĭlĭs, ĕ (dis *negative*, facilis *easy*), DIFFICULT; *impracticable.*

dignĭtās, ātĭs, f. (dignus *worthy*), DIGNITY, *rank; honor, office.*

dignŭs, ă, ŭm, *worthy.* DIGNIFY.

dī-mitto, mittĕrĕ, mīsī, missŭm (dis *hither and thither*, mitto *send*), DISMISS.

dī-ruo, ruĕrĕ, ruī, rūtŭm (dis *asunder*, ruo *hurl down*), *destroy; overthrow; raze.*

dīs, m. and f.; dītĕ, n.; gen. dītĭs [dītiŏr, dītissĭmŭs], *rich.*

dis-cēdo, cēdĕrĕ, cessī, cessŭm (dis *away*, cedo *go*), *go away, depart, leave.*

dissĭdiŭm, ī, n. (dissideo fr. dis *apart*, sedeo *sit*), *dissension.*

dis-trĭbuo, trĭbuĕrĕ, trĭbuī, trĭbūtŭm (dis *among several*, tribuo *give*), DISTRIBUTE, *divide.*

dĭtio, dĭtiōnĭs, f., *dominion, power.*

diū, diūtiŭs, diūtissĭmē, adv., *a long time.*

dīvĕs, gen. dīvĭtĭs, adj., *rich.*

Divĭco, ōnĭs, m., *a distinguished man among the Helvetii.*

dī-vĭdo, vĭdĕrĕ, vīsī, vīsŭm (dis *asunder*, root vĭd *separate*), DIVIDE; *separate.* DIVISION.

Divitiăcŭs, ī, m., *a chief of the Aedui.*

dīvĭtiae, ārŭm, f. pl. (dives *rich*), *riches, wealth.*

do, dărĕ, dĕdī, dătŭm, *give.*

dŏceo, dŏcērĕ, dŏcuī, doctŭm *teach, instruct; inform.* DOCTOR.

dŏlŏr, dŏlōrĭs, m. (doleo *feel pain*), *grief, sorrow, trouble.* DOLOROUS.

dŏlŭs, ī, m., *fraud, deceit, stratagem.*

dŏmo, ārĕ, dŏmuī, dŏmĭtŭm, *subdue, conquer.*

dŏmŭs, ūs and ī [see *97*], *house;* dŏmī, *at home;* dŏmŭm, *home,*

homeward; **dŏmŏ,** *from home.*
DOME.

dŭbĭtātĭo, ōnĭs, f. (dubĭto *waver
in opinion*), *doubt, hesitation.*

dŭbĭŭs, ă, ŭm, *doubtful.* DUBI-
OUS.

dŭcentī, ae, ă, num. adj. pl. (duo
two, centum *hundred*), *two hun-
dred.*

dūco, dūcĕrĕ, duxī, ductŭm,
*lead, draw; suppose, consider;
put off.* DUCT, AQUEDUCT.

dulcĭs, dulcĕ, *sweet, pleasant.*
DULCET.

dum, conj., *while, as long as; un-
til.*

Dumnŏrix, Dumnŏrĭgĭs, m., *one
of the Aedui.*

dŭŏ, ae, ŏ, num. adj. [see *108*],
two.

dux, dŭcĭs, m. and f., *leader,
guide; commander, general.*

E.

ēdŭco, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm (edūco
bring up a child), EDUCATE.
EDUCATION.

ē-dūco, dūcĕrĕ, duxī, ductŭm
(ex *out,* duco *lead*), *lead out,
lead forth.* EDUCE, EDUCTION.

effēmĭno, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm (ex
denoting *change* of nature, fe-
mĭna *woman*), *enervate.* EF-
FEMINATE.

ef-fĭcio, fĭcĕrĕ, fēcī, fectŭm
(ex *out,* facio *make*), EFFECT,
accomplish.

ef-fundo, fundĕrĕ, fūdī, fūsŭm

(ex *out,* fundo *pour*), *pour out,
overflow.* EFFUSION.

Egĕrĭă, ae, f., a nymph, celebrated
in Roman mythology as the wife
and instructress of Numa.

ĕgŏ, pers. pron. [see *112*], *I.*

ē-grĕdĭor, grĕdī, gressŭs sŭm
(ex *out,* gradior *go*), *go out,
depart.* EGRESS.

ē-lābor, lābī, lapsŭs sŭm (ex
out, labor *slip*), *glide away,
escape.* ELAPSE.

ē-mĭneo, mĭnērĕ, mĭnuī (ex *out,*
mineo *jut*), *rise above; appear.*
EMINENT.

ĕmo, ĕmĕrĕ, ēmī, emptŭm, *buy.*

ĕnim, conj., *for.*

ē-nuncĭo, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm (ex
out of a place, nuncio *carry a
report*), *divulge, report.*

ĕŏ, īrĕ, īvī, ĭtŭm [see *126*], *go.*

ĕō, adv., *to that place, thither,
there;* eō — quō, *the — the.*

ĕquĕs, ĕquĭtĭs, m. (equus *horse,*
eo *go*), *rider, horseman; cavalry-
man;* pl., *cavalry.*

ĕquestĕr, trĭs, trĕ (eques *horse-
man*), *of horsemen, of cavalry.*
EQUESTRIAN.

ĕquĭtātŭs, ūs, m. (equĭto *to be a
horseman*), *cavalry.*

ĕquŭs, ī, m., *horse.*

ē-rĭpio, rĭpĕrĕ, rĭpuī, reptŭm
(ex *out,* rapio *tear*), *tear out
or from, take from.*

ĕt, conj., *and, even;* ĕt — ĕt, *both
— and.*

ĕtĭăm, conj. (et-jam), *and also,
also, even.*

et-sĭ, conj., *even if, although.*

Etrūrĭă, ae,f., a country of Italy, modern Tuscany.

ē-verto, vertĕrĕ, vertī, versŭm (ex *out*, verto *turn*), *turn out; overturn, destroy.*

ē-vŏlo, āre, āvī, ātŭm (ex *out*, volo *fly*), *fly out, fly away.*

ex, ē, prep. w. abl. [see Lɴ. IV., Vʏ., 1], *out of, from among; from; of.*

exemplŭm, ĭ, n. (exĭmo fr. ex *out*, emo *take*), Exᴀᴍᴘʟᴇ.

ex-eo, īrĕ, iī, ĭtŭm (ex *out*, eo *go*), *go out, go forth, depart;* pass., *be gone.*

exercĭtātĭo, ōnĭs, f. (exercĭto *to exercise*), *practice.*

exercĭtŭs, ūs, m. (exerceo *exercise*), *army.* See agmen

ex-ĭgo, ĭgĕrĕ, ēgī, actŭm (ex *out*, ago *drive*), *drive out, lead out, spend;* aestas exacta est, *the summer is gone.* Exᴀᴄ-ᴛɪᴏɴ.

existĭmo, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm, *think, suppose; believe, imagine.*

exĭtĭŭm, ĭ, n. (exeo *go out*), *destruction, ruin.*

ex-ōro, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm (ex *effectually*, oro *entreat*), *move by entreaty; obtain by entreaty.*

expĕdītŭs, ă, ŭm (expedio fr. ex *away from*, pes *foot*), *unincumbered, passable.* Exᴘᴇᴅɪᴛɪ-ᴏᴜs.

ex-plĭco, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm (ex *out*, plico *fold*), *unfold, explain, spread.* Exᴘʟɪᴄᴀᴛɪᴏɴ.

explōrātŏr, ōrĭs, m. (explōro *explore*), *spy, scout.*

ex-pugno, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm (ex *effectually*, pugno *fight*), *take by assault; storm, capture.*

ex-specto, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm (ex *very much*, specto *look for*), Exᴘᴇᴄᴛ, *long for; wait.* Ex-ᴘᴇᴄᴛᴀᴛɪᴏɴ.

extrā, prep. w. acc., *without, beyond.*

ex-trăho, trăhĕrĕ, traxī, tractŭm (ex *out*, traho *draw*), *draw out*, Exᴛʀᴀᴄᴛ. Exᴛʀᴀᴄᴛɪᴏɴ.

extrēmŭs, ă, ŭm [see 85], *furthermost, most distant*, Exᴛʀᴇᴍᴇ.

ex-ūrŏ, ūrĕrĕ, ussī, ustŭm (ex *entirely*, uro *burn*), *burn up.*

F.

fābŭlă, ae, f. (fari *to speak*). *story*, Fᴀʙʟᴇ.

făcĭlĕ, făcĭlĭŭs, făcillĭmē, adv. (facilis *easy*), *easily, readily, without difficulty.*

făcĭlĭs, făcĭlĕ (facio *do*, ilis denoting *capability*), *easy, practicable.* Fᴀᴄɪʟᴇ.

făcio, făcĕrĕ, fēcī, factŭm, *do, make; incite, furnish;* iter facĕre, *to march, to journey.*

factio, factiōnĭs, f. (facio *take part* with one), Fᴀᴄᴛɪᴏɴ, *political party.*

factŭm, ĭ, n. (facio *do*), *deed, act.*

făcultās, ātĭs, f. (facilis *which see*), *ability, opportunity.* Fᴀᴄ-ᴜʟᴛʏ.

fămĭlĭă, ae, f. (**famulus** *servant*), *household,* FAMILY.

fămĭlĭārĭtās, ātĭs, f. (**familiāris** *intimate*), *intimacy, friendship,* FAMILIARITY.

fămŭlă, ae, f., *maid, maid-servant.*

fauce, abl., f. sing., *throat;* **faucēs, faucĭŭm,** f. pl., *throat.*

Faustŭlŭs, ĭ, m., *the shepherd by whom Romulus and Remus were brought up.*

făveo, făvērĕ, făvī, fautŭm, *favor, show favor.*

fēlēs and **fēlĭs, fēlĭs,** f., *cat.* FELINE.

fēlīcĭtĕr, adv. (**felix** *happy*), *happily, successfully.*

fēlix, gen. **fēlĭcĭs,** adj. (**feo** *produce*), *happy, fortunate.* FELICITOUS.

fēmĭnă, ae, f., *female, woman.* FEMININE.

fĕrē, adv., *almost, nearly.*

fĕro, ferrĕ, tŭlī, lātŭm, *bear, bring, carry; endure.*

fĕrŭs, ă, ŭm, *wild, uncultivated;* **fĕră, ae,** f., *wild beast.*

ferrŭm, ĭ, n., *iron; sword.*

festŭm, ĭ, n., FEAST.

fĭdēs, fĭdĕī, f. (**fido** *trust*), *faith, confidence; pledge, promise; protection.* FIDELITY.

fīlĭă, ae, f. [see *11*], *daughter.*

fīlĭŭs, ĭ, m., *son.*

fīnio, fīnīrĕ, fīnīvī, fīnītŭm (**finis** *end*), *end,* FINISH.

fīnĭs, fīnĭs, m., *end, limit, boundary;* pl., *territory.* FINAL.

fīnĭtĭmŭs, ă, ŭm (**finis** *boundary*), *neighboring;* **fīnĭtĭmī, ōrŭm,** m. pl., *neighbors.*

fīo, fīĕrī, factŭs sŭm [see *126*], *be made; become; occur, happen.*

firmĭtĕr, adv. (**firmus** *firm*), *firmly, securely.*

flăgĭto, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm, *demand.*

flammă, ae, f., FLAME.

fleo, flērĕ, flēvī, flētŭm, *weep.*

flens, gen. **flentĭs,** *weeping.*

flōs, flōrĭs, m., *flower.* FLORAL

flūmĕn, flūmĭnĭs, n. (**fluo** *flow*), *river.*

fluo, fluĕrĕ, fluxī, fluxŭm, *flow.* FLUENT, FLUENCY.

fŏdio, fŏdĕrĕ, fŏdī, fossŭm, *dig.* FOSSIL.

foedŭs, foedĕrĭs, n., *league, treaty.* FEDERAL.

formīdo, formīdĭnĭs, f., *fear, terror.*

formōsĭtās, ātĭs, f., *beauty.*

fortassĕ, adv. (**fors** *chance*), *perhaps.*

fortĕ, adv. (**fors** *chance*), *accidentally, by chance.*

fortĭs, fortĕ, *brave, bold, courageous, valiant; strong.*

fortĭtĕr, fortĭŭs, fortissĭmē, adv. (**fortis** *brave*), *bravely, valiantly.*

fortūnă, ae, f., FORTUNE.

fŏrŭm, ĭ, n., *market-place;* FORUM; *court of justice.*

fossă, ae, f. (**fodio** *dig*), *ditch, trench.*

frātĕr, frātrĭs, m., *brother.* FRATERNAL.

frīgŭs, frīgŏrĭs, n., *cold, frost.*

frūmentārĭŭs, ă, ŭm (frumen-
tum, *corn*), *of corn;* res fru-
mentarĭa, *supplies.*

frūmentŭm, ĭ, n., *corn, grain.*

fruor, fruī, fructŭs sŭm, *enjoy*
[see *104*].

fŭgă, ae, f., *flight.*

fŭgio, fŭgĕrĕ, fūgī, fŭgĭtŭm, *flee;*
escape. FUGITIVE.

fulmĕn, fulmĭnĭs, n. (fulgeo
flash), *thunder-bolt, lightning.*
FULMINATE.

fūnŭs, fūnĕrĭs, n., *funeral proces-*
sion, burial; FUNERAL.

G.

Găbīnĭŭs, ĭ, m., *Aulus Gabinius,*
a Roman consul.

Gallĭă, ae, f., *Gaul;* it embraced
modern France, Belgium, that
part of the Netherlands south
of the Rhine, the provinces of
Germany west of the Rhine,
and a large part of Switzer-
land; all this was known as
Gallia ulterior, *farther Gaul,*
and as Gallia transalpīna,
Gaul across the Alps, i. e. from
Rome: the northern part of
modern Italy was known as
Gallia citerior, *hither Gaul,*
and as Gallia cisalpīna, *Gaul*
this side the Alps, i. e. towards
Rome.

gallīnă, ae, f., *hen.*

Gallŭs, ĭ, m., *a Gaul.*

Garumnă, ae, f., a river of Gaul,
the Garonne.

gĕmĭnŭs, ă, ŭm, *double;* gemĭni
filii, *twin-sons.*

gĕnĕr, gĕnĕrī, m., *son-in-law.*

Gĕnāvă, ae, f., a town of the Al-
lobroges, on Lake Lemannus,
modern GENEVA.

gens, gentĭs, f. (gigno *beget*),
nation, tribe. GENTILE.

gĕnŭs, gĕnĕrĭs, n., *birth, kind*
race.

Germānī, ōrum, m. pl., THE
GERMANS.

gĕro, gĕrĕrĕ, gessī, gestŭm, *bear,*
carry; carry on, wage; pass.
happen, take place.

gigno, gignĕrĕ, gĕnuī, gĕnĭtŭm,
beget; bear; pass., *be born.*

glōrĭă, ae, f., GLORY, *renown.*

glōrior, ārī, ātŭs sŭm (gloria
glory), *boast,* GLORY.

grădŭs, ūs, m. (gradior *to step*),
step, stair. GRADE.

Graecŭs, ă, ŭm, GRECIAN,
GREEK.

grātĭă, ae, f. (gratus *beloved,*
dear), *favor: influence, popu-*
larity; GRACE: pl., *thanks.*

grātŭlor, ārī, ātŭs sŭm, CON-
GRATULATE.

grăvĭs, grăvĕ, *heavy, burden-*
some; GRIEVOUS, *painful, se-*
vere. GRIEF.

grăvĭtĕr, grăvĭŭs, grăvissĭmē,
adv. (gravis *heavy*), *heavily;*
grievously, severely.

grūs, gruĭs, m. and f., *crane* (a
bird).

H.

hăbeo, ĕrĕ, uĭ, ĭtŭm, HAVE, *hold;
regard, consider; deliver.*

Harūdēs, ŭm, m. pl., *a people of
Southern Germany.*

hastă, ae, f., *spear, lance.*

haud, adv., *not at all, by no
means.*

haedŭs and **hoedŭз, ĭ,** m., *kid, a
young goat.*

Helvētiĭ, ōrŭm, m. pl., *an an-
cient people occupying a large
part of the country now called
Switzerland.*

Helvētiŭs, ă, ŭm, *of the Helvetii.*

herbĭdŭs, ă, ŭm (herba *grass*),
grassy.

hībernă, ōrŭm, n. pl. (hiems
winter), *winter-quarters;* [prop-
erly an adjective with **castra**
understood.] HIBERNATE.

hĭc, haec, hŏc, *this;* pl., *these*
[see *113*].

hĭc, adv. (hic *this*), *here, in this
place.*

hiĕmo, ārĕ, āvĭ, ātŭm (hiems
winter), *pass the winter.*

hinc, adv. (hic *this*), *hence, from
this place.*

Hispāniă, ae, f., SPAIN.

hŏdiē, adv. (contracted fr. **hoc**
and **die,** *on this day*), *to-day.*

hŏmŏ, hŏmĭnĭs, m. and f., *human
being, person, man.* [See LN.
XXV., NOTE 1.]

hŏnŏr, hŏnōrĭs, m., HONOR.

hŏră, ae, f., HOUR.

Horātiĭ, ōrum, m. pl., *three Ro-*
man brothers who fought against
the Curiatii.

hortor, ārĭ, ātŭs sŭm, EXHORT,
urge. HORTATORY.

hospĭtiŭm, ĭ, n. (hospes *guest*),
HOSPITALITY. HOSPITAL, HOS-
PITABLE.

hostĭs, hostĭs, m. and f., *enemy,
public enemy;* [**inimīcus** is a
personal enemy.] HOSTILE.

hūc, adv. (hic *this*), *hither, to this
place.*

hūmānĭtās, ātĭs, f. (humanus *of
or belonging to man*), HUMANI-
TY, *refinement, culture.*

I.

Ĭbĭ, adv. (is), *there, in that place,
then.*

Ĭco, Ĭcĕrĕ, Ĭcĭ, ĭctŭm, *strike;*
foedus Ĭcĕre, *to ratify* or *make
a treaty.* ICTUS.

Ĭdem, eădem, Ĭdem (is and dem.
suffix dem), *the same* [see *118*].

Ĭdōneŭs, ă, ŭm, *fit, suitable.*

ĭgĭtŭr, conj., *therefore.*

ignĭs, ĭs, m., *fire.*

illĕ, illă, illŭd, *that, he;* pl., *those.*

immĕrĭtŭs, ă, ŭm (in *negative,*
merĭtus *deserving*), *not deserv-
ing; not deserved.*

immortālĭs, immortāle (in *neg-
ative,* mortālis *mortal*), IMMOR-
TAL.

immortālĭtās, ātĭs, f. (immortā-
lis *immortal*), IMMORTALITY.

impĕdīmentŭm, ĭ, n. (impedio
fr. in *in the way of,* pedes *feet*),

hindrance pl., *baggage* of an army, including beasts of burden and their drivers; [**sarcīnae** are packs carried by the soldiers.] IMPEDIMENT.

im-pendeo, pendēre, no perf. nor sup. (in *over*, pendeo *hang*), *overhang;* IMPEND.

impĕrātŏr, ōrĭs, m. (impero *command*), *commander-in-chief, general.*

impĕrītŭs, ă, ŭm (in *negative,* perītus *skilled*), *unskilled, inexperienced.*

impĕriŭm, ī, n. (impero *command*), *command; government;* EMPIRE, *supreme power.*

impĕro, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm (in *upon,* paro *put*), *give orders, order; command; rule.*

impĕtŭs, ūs, m., *attack, assault.* IMPETUS.

im-plōro, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm, *beseech, entreat,* IMPLORE.

im-pōno, pōnĕrĕ, pŏsuī, pŏsĭtŭm (in *upon,* pono *place*), *place upon; levy upon.* IMPOSE, IMPOSITION.

im-porto, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm (in *into,* porto *bring*), *bring into,* IMPORT.

ĭn, prep. w. acc and abl.; w. acc., *into, to, towards, against;* w. abl., *in, on, upon, among.*

ĭnānĭs, ĭnānĕ, *empty; vain, ineffectual.*

incendo, incendĕrĕ, incendī, incensŭm, *set on fire, burn.* INCENDIARY.

ĭnchoo, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm, *begin.*

in-cĭdo, cĭdĕrĕ, cĭdī (in *into,* cado *fall*), *fall into* or *upon; chance to meet with.* INCIDENT, INCIDENTAL.

in-cĭto, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm (in *without* additional force, cito *put in quick motion*), *instigate, encourage;* INCITE.

in-cŏlo, cŏlĕrĕ, cŏluī, cultŭm (in *in,* colo *dwell*), *inhabit, dwell.*

incolŭmĭs, ĕ, *unhurt, safe.*

incommŏdŭm, ī, (incommŏdus fr. in *negative,* commŏdus *convenient*), *inconvenience, misfortune, defeat.*

incrēdĭbĭlĭs, ĕ (in *negative,* credo *believe,* bilis denoting *capability*), INCREDIBLE; *extraordinary.*

incursĭo, ōnĭs, f. (incurro fr. in *into. against;* curro *run*), *attack;* INCURSION.

in-cŭso, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm (in *against,* causa *cause*), *censure, blame.*

in-dīco, dīcĕrĕ, dixī, dictŭm (in *among,* dico *speak*), *declare, proclaim.*

indignŭs, ă, ŭm (in *negative,* dignus *worthy*), *unworthy.*

indŏlēs, ĭs, f., *disposition, nature.*

in-dūco, dūcĕrĕ, duxī, ductŭm (in *into,* duco *lead*), *lead into;* INDUCE.

indulgeo, indulgĕrĕ, indulsī, indultŭm, *favor, show favor;* INDULGE.

in-duo, dŭĕrĕ, dŭĭ, dŭtŭm, *put on, dress; clothe.*

Inermĭs, ĕ (in *negative,* arma *arms*), *unarmed; defenceless.*

infĕrĭŏr, infĕrĭŭs, *lower.* INFE-RIOR [see *85*].

in-fĕro, in-ferrĕ, in-tŭlĭ, il-lātŭm (in *into, upon,* fero *bring*), *bring into or upon, make upon.* INFER, INFERENCE.

in-fluo, fluĕrĕ, fluxĭ, fluxŭm (in *into,* fluo *flow*), *flow into, empty.* INFLUENCE, INFLUX.

in-frendeo, frendĕrĕ, *gnash* with the teeth.

ingens, gen. ingentĭs, *vast, enormous, large.*

in-haereo, haerĕrĕ, haesĭ, hae-sŭm (in *to, in;* haereo *stick*), *stick* or *cleave to* or *in.*

in-hio, ārĕ, āvĭ, ātŭm (in *for,* hio *gape*), *gape for, desire.*

Inĭmīcŭs, ă, ŭm (in *negative,* amicus *friendly*), *unfriendly, hostile;* INIMICAL. See hostis.

inĭtium, ĭ, n. (ineo fr. in *upon,* eo *enter*), *beginning.* INITIAL.

in-jĭcio, jĭcĕrĕ, jēcĭ, jectŭm (in *into,* jacio *throw*), *throw into; inspire, infuse.* INJECT.

injūrĭă, ae, f. (injurius fr. in *negative,* jus *right*), INJURY, *wrong; injustice, damage, insult.*

in-nascor, nascĭ, natŭs sŭm (in *in,* nascor *be born*), *spring up in.*

inŏpĭă, ae, f. (inŏpes fr. in *negative,* opes *resources*), *want, scarcity.*

inquam and inquio, defective verb, *say.*

insĭdiae, ārŭm, f. pl., *treachery, deceit.* INSIDIOUS.

insignĭs, insignĕ (in *upon,* signum *mark*), *remarkable, extraordinary;* insignĕ, ĭs, n., *sign.*

in-stĭtuo, stĭtuĕrĕ, stĭtuĭ, stĭ-tūtŭm, *appoint,* INSTITUTE; *train up, instruct.*

instĭtūtŭm, ĭ, n., *custom;* INSTITUTION.

in-struo, struĕrĕ, struxĭ, struc-tŭm (in without additional force, struo *arrange*), *arrange, form, draw up.* INSTRUCT, INSTRUCTIVE, INSTRUCTION.

intel-lĭgo (lĕgo), lĭgĕrĕ, lexĭ, lectŭm (inter *between,* lego *choose*), *understand, know.* INTELLIGENT.

intĕr, prep. w. acc., *between, among.*

inter-cēdo, cēdĕrĕ, cessĭ, ces-sŭm (inter *between,* cedo *go*), *intervene.* INTERCEDE, INTER-CESSION.

inter-cĭpio, cĭpĕrĕ, cēpĭ, cep-tŭm (inter *between,* capio *take*), *usurp; take away fraudulently;* INTERCEPT.

inter-fĭcio, fĭcĕrĕ, fēcĭ, fectŭm (inter *between,* facio *make*), *kill, slay.*

inter-ĭmo, ĭmĕrĕ, ēmĭ, emptŭm, *kill, put to death.*

internĕcio, ōnĭs, f. (internĕco fr. inter *completely,* neco *kill*), *slaughter.*

interregnŭm, ĭ, n. (inter *between*, regnum *reign*), INTERREGNUM.

inter-sŭm, essĕ, fuĭ (inter *between*, sum *be*), *be between, intervene.*

intervallŭm, ĭ, n. (intĕr *between*, vallum *rampart*), INTERVAL, *distance.*

intro, ārĕ, āvĭ, ātŭm, *enter.*

in-tueor, tuērĭ, tuĭtŭs sŭm (in *upon, at;* tueor *look*), *look at or upon.*

intŭs, adv., *within.*

invĭdĭă, ae, f. (invideo *look askance at*), ENVY, *hatred.*

invītŭs, ă, ŭm, *unwilling;* sē invīto, *against his will.*

ipsĕ, ipsă, ipsŭm [see *113*], *self; himself, herself, itself; very;* ipse-rex, *the very king.*

irrētio, īrĕ, īvĭ, ītŭm (in *in*, rete *net*), *entangle, ensnare.*

ir-rīdeo, rīdērĕ, rīsĭ, rīsŭm (in *at*, rideo *laugh*), *laugh at, deride.*

irrīto, ārĕ, āvĭ, ātŭm, *provoke, incite*, IRRITATE. IRRITATION.

ĭs, eă, ĭd, *he, her, it; this; that* [see *113*].

Isocrătēs, ĭs, m., *a celebrated Greek orator and rhetorician.*

ĭtă, adv. (is), *so, thus, in this manner, as follows.*

Ĭtălĭă, ae, f., ITALY.

Ĭtălŭs, ă, ŭm, *Italian.*

ĭtă-quĕ, conj., *and so, accordingly, therefore.*

ĭtĕm, adv. (is), *in like manner, likewise.*

ĭtĕr, ĭtĭnĕrĭs, n. (eo *go*), *journey;*

march; *way, road, route;* ĭter facĕre, *to march.* ITINERANT.

ĭtĕrŭm, adv. (is), *again, a second time.*

J.

jăceo, ērĕ, uĭ, jăcĭtŭm, *lie.*

jăcio, jăcĕrĕ, jēcĭ, jactŭm, *throw, hurl, cast.*

jăm, adv., *now, already.*

Jānĭcŭlŭm, ĭ, n., *a hill across the Tiber from Rome.*

jŭbeo, jŭbērĕ, jussĭ, jussŭm, *command, order.*

jūdĭcĭŭm, ĭ, n., (judex *judge*), *judgment; trial; sentence; decision.* JUDICIAL.

jūdĭco, ārĕ, āvĭ, ātŭm (jus *law*, dico *point out*), JUDGE; *determine, conclude; think.* ADJUDICATE.

jŭgŭm, ĭ, n. (jungo *join*), *yoke; ridge, summit:* in war a frame made of two upright spears supporting a third in a horizontal position, under which a conquered army was made to pass in token of subjection.

jūmentŭm, ĭ, n., *beast of burden* as a horse or an ox.

Juppĭter and Jūpĭter, Jŏvĭs, m., son of Saturn, father of gods and king of men.

Jūră, ae, m., *the Jura*, a chain of mountains extending from the Rhine to the Rhone and forming the western boundary of Switzerland.

jūs, jūrĭs, n., *right, law.* JURIST.

jūsjūrandŭm, jūrisjūrandī, n., *oath* [see *110*].

jussū, m. abl. (jubeo *command*), *by command.*

justŭs, ă, ŭm (jus *law*, suffix tus denoting *fulness*), JUST, *right.*

jŭvo, jŭvārĕ, jūvī, jūtŭm, *help, aid, assist.* AD-JUTANT.

L.

L., abbreviation of *Lucius*, a Roman praenomen.

Lăbiēnŭs, ī. m., one of Caesar's lieutenants in the Gallic war.

lăbŏr, lăbōrĭs, m., LABOR, *toil.*

lacrĭmă, ae, f., *tear.*

lăcŭs, ūs, m., LAKE.

laetor, ārī, ātŭs sŭm (laetus *joyful*), *rejoice, exult.*

laetŭs, ă, ŭm, *joyful.*

lănio, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm, *tear in pieces.*

lăpĭs, lăpĭdĭs, m., *stone.* LAPID-ARY.

lăquĕŭs, ī, m., *noose, snare.*

Lārentiă, ae, f. See Acca.

largĭtio, ōnĭs, f. (largior *give bountifully*), *liberality.*

lātē, adv. (latus *broad*), *widely, extensively.*

Lătīnŭs, ī, m., an ancient king of the Laurentes, a people of Italy.

latro, latrōnĭs, m., *robber.*

latro, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm, *bark, bark at.*

lătŭs, lătĕrĭs, n., *side; flank.* LATERAL.

lātŭs, ă, ŭm, *broad, wide; large, spacious.* LAT-ITUDE.

Lāvīniă, ae, f., daughter of Latinus and second wife of Aenēas.

Lāvīniŭm, ī, n., a city in Italy built by Aenēas.

lēgātio, ōnĭs, f. (lego *send on an embassy*), *embassy.* LEGA-TION.

lēgātŭs, ī, m. (lego *send as a representative*), *ambassador, envoy,* LEGATE; *lieutenant.*

lĕgio, lĕgiōnĭs, f. (lego *levy*), LEGION, a body of infantry varying in number from 4000 to 6000, and generally accompanied by about 300 cavalrymen.

lĕgo, lĕgĕrĕ, lēgī, lectŭm, *choose.*

Lĕmannŭs, ī, m., Lake Leman or Geneva in Switzerland.

lēnitas, ātĭs, f., *smoothness.*

leo, leōnĭs, m., LION.

lētālĭs, ĕ (letum *death;* suffix alis, *belonging to*), *fatal, deadly.*

lēvĭtās, ātĭs, f. (lēvis *smooth*), *smoothness.*

lĕvĭtās, ātĭs, f. (lĕvis *light*), *lightness.* LEVITY.

lex, lēgĭs, f., *law.* LEGAL.

lībĕr, lībĕră, lībĕrŭm, *free.*

lībĕrālĭtās, ātĭs, f. (liberalis fr. liber *free*), LIBERALITY, *generosity.*

lībĕrē, lībĕriŭs, adv. (liber *free*), *freely, unreservedly.*

lībĕrī, ōrŭm, m. pl., *children.*

lībĕro, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm (liber *free*), *to free,* LIBERATE.

līceor, līcērī, līcītūs sūm, *bid at an auction.*

līcĕt, līcĕrĕ, līcŭīt or līcītūm est, *it is permitted, allowed; one may* [see *128* and Ln. LXIX., Examples 2 – 5].

līcĕt, *although.*

Lingŏnēs, ŭm, m. pl, *a people in Northeastern Gaul.*

lingŭă, ae, f., *tongue;* LANGUAGE. LINGUIST, LINGUAL.

Līsoŭs, I, m., *a magistrate among the Aedui.*

līttĕră and līttĕră, ae, f. (lino *besmear*), LETTER *of the alphabet;* pl., *letter, epistle.* LITERATURE.

lŏcŭs, I, m. [pl. loci and loca], *place.* LOCAL, LOCALITY.

longē, longiŭs, longissĭmē, adv. (longus *long*), *far, by far;* often used to strengthen superlatives.

longissĭmē, adv., *very far.*

longĭtūdo, ĭnĭs, f. (longus *long*), *length.* LONGITUDE.

longŭs, ă, ŭm, *long.*

lŏquor, lŏquī, lŏcūtŭs sŭm, *speak, talk.* LOQUACIOUS.

Lūcĭus, I, m., *a Roman praenomen.*

Lūcrētĭă, ae, f., *a Roman matron, wife of Collatīnus.*

lūdŭs, I, m., *play, game.*

lŭpă, ae, f., *she-wolf.*

lŭpŭs, I, m, *wolf.*

lustro, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm, *review.*

lux, lūcĭs, f. (luceo *shine*), *light.*

lўră, ae, f., *lyre.*

M.

M., abbreviation of *Marcus,* a Roman praenomen.

M'., abbreviation of *Mānius,* a Roman praenomen.

măgĭs, maxĭmē, adv., *more, rather.*

măgistrātŭs, ūs, m. (magister fr. mag-, root of magnus, signifying *to be great*), *magistrate.*

magnĭtūdo, ĭnĭs, f. (magnus *great*), *size,* MAGNITUDE.

magnŭs, ă, ŭm, *great, large, big, mighty.* MAGNI-.

mājestās ātĭs, f., MAJESTY, *dignity.*

mājŏr, mājŭs, gen. mājōrĭs (comp. of magnus), *larger, greater, bigger;* mājōrēs, ŭm, m. pl., *ancestors.* MAJOR.

mălĕ, pējŭs, pessĭmē, adv., *badly, ill, wickedly.*

mălĕ-dīco, dīcĕrĕ, dīxī, dictŭm (male *ill*, dico *speak*), *speak ill of, revile, rail at;* [with dat.] MALEDICTION.

mălĕfĭcĭŭm, ī, n. [maleficus *doing evil*), *mischief, damage.*

mălĕfĭcŭs, ă, ŭm (male *wickedly,* facio *do*), *wicked;* mălĕfĭcŭs, ī, m., *an evil-doer.*

mālo, māllĕ, māluī (magis *more,* volo *be willing*), *be more willing, choose rather, prefer* [see *125*].

mălŭs, ă, ŭm, *bad, wicked, evil, destructive.*

măneo, mănērĕ, mansī, mansŭm, *stay,* RE-MAIN.

mandātŭm, ĭ, n. (mando fr. ma-
nus *hand*, do *pu'*; *put in one's
hand*), *charge, order, command.*
MANDATE.

mănŭs, ūs, f., *hand; force* of
soldiers. MANUFACTURE.

Maniŭs, ĭ, m. See M'.

Marciŭs, ĭ m., a Roman name.

Marcŭs, ĭ, m. See M.

mărĕ, mărĭs, n., *sea.*

mărītŭs, ĭ, m. (marīta *wife*), be-
longing to a wife, *husband.*

Mars, Martĭs, m., son of Jupiter
and Juno, and god of war.
MARTIAL.

massă, ae, f., MASS, *lump.*

mătĕr, mātrĭs, f., MOTHER; *ma-
tron.*

mātrĭmōnium, ĭ, n. (mater
mother), *marriage;* in matri-
monium dare, *to give in mar-
riage;* in matrimonium du-
cĕre, *to marry.* MATRIMONY.

Matrŏna, ae, m., a river in Gaul,
the modern *Marne.*

mātūrē, adv. (matūrus *ripe*),
early, soon.

mātūro, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm, *hasten,
make haste.*

mātūrŭs, ă, ŭm, *ripe*, MATURE.

mĕdiocrĭtĕr, adv. (mediocris fr.
medius denoting *a middle state*),
moderately; non mediocrĭter,
exceedingly.

mĕdiŭs, ă, ŭm, *in the middle* or
*midst; in the middle of; middle,
central.*

mĕl, mellĭs, n., *honey.* MELLI-
FLUENT.

mĕliŏr, mĕliŭs, gen. mĕliŏrĭs
(comp. of bonus), *better.*

mĕmĭnī, mĕmĭnissĕ, *remember*
[see *127*].

mĕmŏr, gen. mĕmŏrĭs, *mindful
of, mindful.*

mĕmŏriă, ae, f. (memor *mind-
ful of*), MEMORY, *recollection,
remembrance.*

mens, mentĭs, f., *mind.* See
anĭmus. MENTAL.

mensĭs, mensĭs, m., *month.*

mercātŏr, ōrĭs, m. (mercor *to
trade*), *trader*, MERCHANT.

mercēs, mercēdĭs, f., *wages,
hire, reward, price.*

mĕreo. ĕrĕ, uī, ĭtŭm, *deserve,
acquire.*

mĕrĭtŭm, ĭ, n., *desert.* MERIT.

Messălă, ae, m., a Roman name.

mētior, mētīrī, mensŭs sŭm,
MEASURE, *deal out.*

Mettiŭs, ĭ, m., *Mettius Fufetius,*
an Alban general, put to death
by Tullus Hostilius.

meŭs, ă, ŭm, *my, mine.*

mīlĕs, mīlĭtĭs, m., *soldier.*

mīlĭtārĭs, ĕ (miles *soldier*, aris
belonging to), MILITARY; res
militāris, *military science.*

millĕ, pl. mīlia, mīliŭm, *thou-
sand* [see *108*].

milviŭs, ĭ, m., *kite* (a bird).

mĭnĭmē [parvĕ, mĭnŭs, mĭnĭ-
mē], adv., *least, by no means.*

mĭnĭmŭs, ă, ŭm, *least* [see *85*].

mĭnŏr, mĭnŭs, *smaller, less* [see
85]; minor natu, *younger.*

mĭnuo, mĭnŭĕrĕ, mĭnuī, mĭnū-
tŭm, DI-MINISH. DIMINUTION.

mĭnŭs, adv. *less.*   See minĭme.

mīror, ārī, ātŭs sŭm, AD-MIRE;
wonder at.

mīrŭs, ă, ŭm (miror *wonder at*),
wonderful.

mĭsĕr, mĭsĕră, mĭsĕrŭm, *wretch-
ed, pitiable, lamentable,* MISER-
ABLE.

mitto, mittĕrĕ, mīsī, missŭm,
send.

moeniă, moeniŭm, n. pl., *walls*
of a city.

mollio, īrĕ, īvī, ītŭm (mollis
soft), *soften, subdue.*

mŏneo, ērĕ, uī, ĭtŭm, *remind;
advise,* AD-MONISH.

mons, montĭs, m., MOUNTAIN,
MOUNT.

monstro, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm (mon-
strum *a divine omen*), *show,
point out.* DE-MONSTRATE.

morbŭs, ī, m., *disease.* MORBID.

mŏrior, mŏrī and mŏrīrī, mor-
tŭŭs sŭm, *die.*

mŏror, ārī, ātŭs sŭm, *tarry, de-
lay, hinder.*

mors, mortĭs, f., *death.* MORTAL.

mōs, mōrĭs, m., *custom, manner;
usage;* pl., *character.* MORAL.

mŏveo, mŏvērĕ, mōvī, mōtŭm,
MOVE; *excite:* castra movēre,
to break up camp.

mŭlĭĕr, mŭlĭĕrĭs, f., *woman.*

multĭtūdo, ĭnĭs, f. (multus
much), MULTITUDE.

multŭs, ă, ŭm, *much, many a;*
pl. *many.* MULTI-PLY.

mūnio, īrĕ, ivi, ītŭm (moenia
wall, rampart), *fortify.*

mūnītio, ōnĭs, f. (munio *fortify*),
fortification. MUNITION.

mūnŭs, mūnĕrĭs, n., *gift, reward.*
RE-MUNER-ATE.

mūs, mūrĭs, m., *mouse.*

muscŭlŭs, m. (mus), *a little
mouse.*

N.

năm, conj., *for.*

nascor, nascī, nātŭs sŭm, *be
born.* NASCENT.

nātū, abl. sing. m., *by birth;* mi-
nor natu, *younger.*

nātūră, ae, f. (nascor *be born*),
NATURE.

nātŭs, ă, ŭm (nascor *be born*),
old.

nāvĭs, nāvĭs, f., *ship.* NAV-AL,
NAVI-GATE.

nē, adv., *not;* conj., *that not; that.*

nĕ, interrog. particle; is appended
to first word of the question and
asks for information.

nĕc.   See nĕquĕ.

nĕco, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm, *kill, put to
death.*

nĕgo, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm, *deny, re-
fuse.* NEGATION.

nĕgōtiŭm, ī, n. (nec *not*, otium
leisure), *business;* quid negō
ti? *what business?* NEGOTI-
ATE.

nēmo, nēmĭnĭs, m. and f. (ne
not, homo *a man*), *no one, no-
body.*

něpōs, něpōtǐs, m., *grandson.*
NEPOTISM.

Neptūnǔs, ǐ, m., *Neptune,* god of
the sea.

nēquāquǎm, adv., *by no means.*

něquě, něc, conj., *and not;*
něquě — něquě, *neither —*
nor.

nervǔs, ǐ, m., NERVE, *vigor, en-*
ergy.

nescio, ǐrě, ǐvī and **ǐī, ǐtǔm** (ne
not, scio *know*), *not know.*

neutěr, neutrǎ, neutrǔm (ne
not, uter *one or the other*), *nei-*
ther [see *24*]. NEUTER.

nǐhǐl, n. indecl., *nothing.*

nǐhǐlō mǐnǔs, adv., *none the less,*
nevertheless.

nǐhǐlǔm, ǐ, n., *nothing.*

nǐsǐ, conj. (ne *not,* si *if*), *if not,*
unless, except.

nǐtor, nǐtī, nǐsǔs or **nixus sǔm,**
strive, endeavor.

nōbǐlǐs, nōbǐlě (nosco *know,*
bilis denoting *capability*), *well*
known, NOBLE, *of high rank.*

nōbǐlǐtās, ātǐs, f. (nobǐlis *noble*),
NOBILITY.

nōlo, nollě, nōluī (non *not,* volo
willing), *be unwilling.*

nōměn, nōmǐnǐs, n., NAME.

nōn, adv., *not.*

nonně, interrog. particle, expects
the answer *yes.*

non-nullǔs, ǎ, ǔm, *some one;*
nonnullī, ōrǔm, m. pl., *several*
persons.

Norēǐǎ, ae, f., a town in Norǐcum.

Norǐcǔs, ǎ, ǔm, *of Norǐcum,* a

country lying between the Up-
per Danube and Eastern Alps.

nōs, pers. pron., *we* [see *112*].

nostěr, nostrǎ, nostrǔm, *our,*
ours.

nŏto, ārě, āvī, ātǔm (nota, *a*
mark), *mark.* NOTE, NOTA-
TION.

Noviodūnǔm, ǐ, n., the name of
several cities in Gaul.

nŏvǔs, ǎ, ǔm, *new, strange; re-*
cent, fresh; novae res, *revolu-*
tion; agmen novissǐmum, *the*
rear. NOVEL.

nox, noctǐs, f., *night.*

nūbēs, nūbǐs, f., *cloud.*

nūbo, nūběrě, nupsǐ, nuptǔm,
veil herself for the bridegroom,
marry [of a bride]. NUPTIAL.

nūdǔs, ǎ, ǔm, *naked, bare;* NUDE.

nullǔs, ǎ, ǔm (ne *not,* ullus *any*
one), *no, none, not any one.*

nǔm, *whether;* in direct questions
to be omitted in translation.

Nǔma, ae, m., *Numa Pompilius,*
the second king of Rome.

nǔměrǔs, ǐ, m., NUMBER.

Nǔmǐtŏr, ōrǐs, m., father of
Rhea Silvia.

nunc, adv., *now.*

nuncio, ārě, āvī, ātǔm (nuncius
messenger), AN-NOUNCE, *report.*

nuncǔpo, ārě, āvī, ātǔm. *to name.*

nunquǎm and **numquǎm,** adv.
(ne *not,* unquam *ever*), *never.*

nūpěr, adv. (novus *new*), *newly,*
recently.

nutrio, ǐrě, ǐvī, ǐtǔm, *nourish.*
NUTRITION, NUTRIMENT.

nymphă, ae, f., *a nymph;* the nymphs were demi-goddesses inhabiting the sea, rivers, fountains, woods, trees, and mountains.

O.

ŏb, prep. w. acc., *on account of, for.*

ŏbēdio, Irĕ, Ivī, Itŭm (ob without any additional force, **audio** *listen to*), *listen to, obey; be subject to.* OBEDIENT.

ŏb-eo, Irĕ, Ivī and iī, Itŭm (ob *towards,* **eo** *go*), *die.*

ŏb-erro, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm (ob *about,* **erro** *wander*), *wander about, wander.*

ob-jĭcio, jĭcĕrĕ, jēcī, jectŭm (ob *before, at;* **jacio** *throw*), *throw before, at, or against; throw up.* OBJECT, OBJECTION.

oblīviscor, oblīviscī, oblītŭs sŭm, *forget.*

ob-ruo, ruĕrĕ, ruī, rŭtŭm (ob without additional force, **ruo** *cast down with violence*), *overwhelm; cover.*

ob-secro, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm (ob *on account of,* **sacra** *sacrifices*), *beseech, implore.*

obsĕs, obsĭdĭs, m. (obsideo *stay*), *hostage.*

ob-testor, ārī, ātŭs sŭm (ob with no additional force, **testor** *bear witness*), *conjure, beseech.*

ob-tĭneo, tĭnĕrĕ, tĭnuī, tentŭm (ob with no additional force, **teneo** *hold*), *hold,* OBTAIN, *possess.*

obviăm, adv., *in the way;* **obviam Irĕ** or **fiĕri,** *to meet.*

occāsŭs, ūs, m. (occīdo *fall*), *going down;* **solis occāsu,** *at sunset.*

oc-cĭdo, cĭdĕrĕ, cĭdī, cīsŭm (ob *against,* **caedo** *cut, strike*), *kill, slay.*

oc-culto, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm, *hide, conceal.* OCCULT.

oc-cŭpo, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm (ob with no additional force, **capio** *take*), *seize, take possession of,* OCCUPY. OCCUPATION.

oc-curro, currĕrĕ, cŭcurrī and currī, cursŭm (ob *towards,* **curro** *run*), *meet.* OCCUR, OCCURRENCE.

Oceănŭs, I, m., OCEAN.

Ocĕlŭm, I, n., *a town in the western part of Cisalpine Gaul.*

octāvŭs, ă, ŭm, *eighth.* OCTAVE.

octō-dĕcĭm, num. adj., *eighteen.*

octō-gintā, num. adj, *eighty.*

ŏcŭlŭs, I, m., *eye.* OCULIST.

ōdī, ōdissĕ, *hate* [see *127*].

of-fendo, fendĕrĕ, fendī, fensŭm, OFFEND, *wound.* OFFENCE.

of-fĕro, of-fĕrrĕ, ob-tŭlī, ob-lātŭm (ob *towards,* **fero** *bring*), OFFER, *present.*

offĭcium, I, n. (opes *aid,* **facio** *render*), *service, duty; obedience, allegiance.* OFFICE.

omnĭnō, adv. (omnis *all*), *alto-gether, at all*.

omnĭs, omnĕ, *all, every, the whole.* OMNI-SCIENCE, OMNI-POTENT, OMNI-PRESENT.

ŏnŭs, ŏnĕrĭs, n., *load, burden; weight; size.* ONEROUS.

ŏpĭs, ŏpĕm, ŏpĕ [nom., dat., and voc. sing. not used; pl. entire]; pl., ŏpēs, ŏpŭm, ŏpĭbŭs, etc.; f., *power; means, resources.*

ŏportĕt, ŏportērĕ, ŏportuĭt, *it behooves, it is necessary, one ought* [see *128* and LN. LXIX., Examples 6 – 8].

oppĭdŭm, I, n., *town, walled town.*

op-pugno, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm (ob *against*, pugno *fight*), *attack, besiege, assault.*

optio, ōnĭs, f. (opto *choose*), *choice,* OPTION.

ŏpŭs, ŏpĕrĭs, n., *work, labor.*

ōrātio, ōrātiōnĭs, f. (oro *speak*), *speech, harangue;* ORATION.

ōrātōr, ōrātōrĭs, m. (oro *plead*), ORATOR.

ordĭno, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm (ordo *arranging*), *arrange, order.*

Orgĕtŏrix, ĭgĭs, m., the noblest and richest among the Helvetii.

ŏriens, gen. ŏrientĭs (part. fr. orior), *rising.* ORIENT.

ŏrior, ŏrīrī, ortŭs sŭm, *rise, arise, begin.*

ornāmentŭm, I, n. (orno *adorn*), ORNAMENT, *distinction.*

ōro, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm (os *mouth*), *beseech, beg; implore, pray.*

ŏs, ōrĭs, n., *mouth; face.* ORAL.

ŏs, ossĭs, n., *bone.* OSSI-FY.

os-tendo, tendĕrĕ, tendī, ten-tŭm (ob *before*, tendo *spread*), *show, point out, exhibit.* OSTEN-SIBLE.

Ostĭă, ae, f., a town at the mouth of the Tiber, ҍuilt by Ancus Marcius.

ostĭŭm, I, n., *mouth of a river.*

ōvŭm, I, n., *egg.* OVAL.

P.

P., abbreviation of *Publius*, a Ro-man praenomen.

pābŭlātio, ōnĭs, f., *foraging.*

pābŭlŭm, I, n. (pasco *feed*), *food.*

pāco, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm (pax *peace*), PACIFY; *subdue.*

paenĕ, adv., *almost, nearly.*

pāgŭs, I, m., *district, canton.*

pār, gen. părĭs, *equal, like.* PAR.

părātŭs, ă, ŭm (part. of paro *prepare*), PRE-PARED, *ready.*

parco, parcĕrĕ, pĕpercī and parsī, parcĭtŭm and parsŭm (parcus *spare*), *to spare.*

părio, părĕrĕ, pĕpĕrī, părĭtŭm and partŭm, *bear, bring forth;* ovum parĕre, *to lay an egg.*

pars, partĭs, f., PART, *share; side; direction.*

parvŭs, ă, ŭm [comp., minor, superl., minĭmus], *small, little, insignificant.*

pascor, pascī, pastŭs sŭm, *feed, graze.*

passŭs, ŭs, m. (pando *stretch out the feet*), *step*, PACE; as a measure of length, about five feet.

pastŏr, pastōrĭs, m. (pasco *feed*), *shepherd*. PASTOR.

pătĕ-făcio, făcĕrĕ, fēcī, factŭm (pateo *be open*, facio *make*), *make open, open*.

pătĕr, pătrĭs, m., FATHER.

pătĕrnŭs, ă, ŭm (pater *father*), PATERNAL.

pătior, pătī, passŭs sŭm, *let, allow; suffer*. PASSION, PASSIVE.

pătria, ae, f. (pater *father*), *native land, fatherland*. PATRIAL.

paucī, ae, ă, adj. pl., *few*.

paulŭs, ă, ŭm, *little*; paulo, n. abl. sing., *by a little, little*.

pāvo, ōnĭs, m. and f., *peacock*.

pax, pācĭs, f., PEACE. PACIFY.

pellĭs, pellĭs, f., *skin*.

pello, pellĕrĕ, pĕpŭlī, pulsŭm, *drive out* or *away, banish; rout*. RE-PULSE.

pennă, ae, f., *feather*. PEN.

pĕr, prep. w. acc., *through; by means of, by*.

per-cŭtio, cŭtĕrĕ, cussī, cussŭm (per *through*, quatio *strike*), *strike through, strike*. PERCUS-SION.

per-do, dĕrĕ, dĭdī, dĭtŭm (per *through*, do *put*), *lose*. PERDI-TION.

per-dūco, dūcĕrĕ, duxī, ductŭm (per *through*, duco *lead*), *lead through* or *to, conduct; fossam perducĕre, to extend* or *make a trench*.

per-făcĭlĭs, ĕ (per *very*, facĭlis *easy*), *very easy*.

per-fĭcio, fĭcĕrĕ, fēcī, fectŭm (per *completely*, facio *make*), *accomplish*. PERFECTION.

perfĭdiă, ae, f. (perfidus *one who breaks his promise*), PERFIDY.

pĕrīcŭlōsŭs, ă, ŭm (periculum *danger;* suffix **ōsus** *full of*), *dangerous*.

pĕrīcŭlŭm, ī, n., *danger, risk*, PERIL.

pĕrītŭs, ă, ŭm, *skilful, experienced*.

per-mitto, mittĕrĕ, mīsī, missŭm (per *through*, mitto *let go*), PERMIT, *allow*. PERMIS-SION.

per-mŏveo, mŏvērĕ, mōvī, mōtŭm (per *completely*, moveo *move*), *prevail upon*.

pernĭciēs, pernĭciēī, f. (pernĕco fr. per *completely*, neco *kill*), *ruin, destruction*. PERNICIOUS.

perpaucī, ae, ă (per *very*, pauci *few*), *very few*.

per-sĕquor, sĕquī, sĕcūtŭs sŭm (per *perseveringly*, sequor *follow*), *pursue*. PERSECUTE.

per-sĕvēro, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm (persevērus *very strict*), PERSE-VERE, *continue*.

per-suādeo, suādērĕ, suāsī, suāsŭm (per *thoroughly*, suadeo *advise*), PERSUADE, *prevail upon*. PERSUASION.

per-terreo, ērĕ, uǐ, ǐtŭm (per *thoroughly,* terreo *frighten*), *thoroughly frighten, terrify.*

per-tǐneo, tǐnērĕ, tǐnuǐ, tentŭm (per *thoroughly,* teneo *hold, lay hold of*), *extend; reach, tend;* PERTAIN, *belong.*

per-turbo, ārĕ, āvǐ, ātŭm (per *thoroughly,* turbo *disturb*), *greatly disturb,* DISTURB. PERTURB, PERTURBATION.

per-vĕnio, vĕnǐrĕ, vēnǐ, ventŭm (per *quite through,* venio *come*), *come through, come to; arrive; reach.*

pēs, pĕdǐs, m., *foot.* PEDAL.

pĕto, pĕtĕrĕ, pĕtīvǐ and pĕtiǐ, pĕtītŭm, *ask, request; beseech, beg for; seek; attack.* PETITION.

pĕtŭlantiǎ, ae, f. (pĕtŭlans *saucy*), *sauciness; insolence;* PETULANCE.

pīleŭs, ǐ, m., *hat; cap.*

pīlŭm, ǐ, n., *javelin.*

Pīso, ōnǐs, m., a Roman consul.

pistrīnŭm, ǐ, n. (pistor *miller*), *mill.*

plăceo, plăcērĕ, plăcuǐ, plăcǐtŭm, PLEASE; **plăcĕt,** impers., *it pleases, it seems good.*

plăgǎ, ae, f., *hunting-net, toil.*

plebs, plēbǐs, f., *commons, common people.*

plūrǐmŭs, ǎ, ŭm [superl. of **multus**], *most.*

plŭs, plūrǐs [compar. of **multus**, see *85*], *more.*

poenǎ, ae, f., *punishment.* PENAL.

pollǐceor, pollǐcērǐ, pollǐcǐtŭs sŭm (insep. prefix pot *largely,* liceor *offer*), *promise.*

pōno, pōnĕrĕ, pŏsuǐ, pŏsǐtŭm, *place, put;* **castra pŏnĕrĕ,** *to pitch a camp.* POSITION.

pons, pontǐs, m, *bridge.*

pŏpŭlātio, ōnǐs, f., *ravaging.*

pŏpŭlor, ārǐ, ātŭs sŭm (populus *people*), *ravage, lay waste.* DE-POPULATE.

pŏpŭlŭs, ǐ, m., PEOPLE; pl., *nations, tribes.*

portǎ, ae, f., *gate.* PORTAL.

por-tendo, tendĕrĕ, tendǐ, tentŭm, *fortell, predict, presage; betoken;* PORTEND.

porto, ārĕ, āvǐ, ātŭm, *carry, bear,* TRANS-PORT. EX-PORT.

portōriŭm, ǐ, n. (porto *carry*), *duty paid on goods imported or exported.*

posco, poscĕrĕ, pŏposcǐ, no sup., *demand.*

possessio, ōnǐs, f. (possideo *possess*), POSSESSION.

pos-sǐdeo, sǐdērĕ, sēdǐ, sessŭm (potis *powerful,* sedeo *sit*), *be master of;* POSSESS.

pos-sŭm, pos-sĕ, pot-uǐ (potis *able,* sum *be*), *be able, can* [see *68*].

post, prep. w. acc., *after.*

posteǎ, adv. (post *after,* ea *that*), *after that, afterwards.*

post-eā-quăm, *after that, after.*

postĕrŭs, ǎ, ŭm [comp., posterior; superl., **postrēmus** and **postŭmus**], *following, ensuing,*

succeeding; **postero die,** *on the following day;* **postĕrī, ōrŭm,** m. pl., *descendants.*

post-quăm, conj., *after, as soon as.*

postrīdĭē, adv. (postero *following,* die *on the day*), *on the following day.*

postŭlo, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm, *ask for, demand.*

pŏtens, gen. **pŏtentĭs** (possum *be able*), *able, powerful, influential.* POTENT.

pŏtestās, ātĭs, f. (potens *able*), *ability, power; opportunity;* **ălĭcuī pŏtestātĕm făcĕrĕ,** *to give any one an opportunity.*

pŏtior, pŏtīrī, pŏtītŭs sŭm (potis *able*), *acquire, obtain, get possession of.*

pŏtiŭs, adv., *rather, sooner.*

prae-cēdo, cēdĕrĕ, cessī, cessŭm (prae *before,* cedo *go*), *surpass, excel;* PRECEDE. PRECEDENCE, PRECEDENT.

praecĭpĭto, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm (praeceps *headlong*), *throw violently, throw.* PRECIPITATE.

praecĭpuē, adv. (praecipuus fr. praecipio fr. prae *before,* capio *take*), *especially, chiefly.*

prae-dĭco, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm (prae *publicly,* dico *tell*), *proclaim, declare; boast.* PREDICATE.

prae-fĕro, ferrĕ, tŭlī, lātŭm (prae *before,* fero *bear*), PREFER.

prae-fĭcio, fĭcĕrĕ, fēcī, fectŭm (prae *over,* facio *place*), *place over, put in command of.*

prae-mitto, mittĕrĕ, mīsī, missŭm (prae *forward,* mitto *send*), *send forward.*

praemĭŭm, ī, n. (prae *beyond* others, emo *take*), *profit, reward.* PREMIUM.

prae-pōno, pōnĕrĕ, pŏsuī, pŏsĭtŭm (prae *before, first;* pono *put*), *put before* or *first; prefer.* PREPOSITION.

praesēpĕ, ĭs, n. (praesepio, *to fence in front*), *manger.*

praesĭdĭŭm, ī, n. (praesideo fr. prae *before,* sedeo *sit*), *defence, protection; guard, garrison.*

prae-sto, stārĕ, stĭtī, stĭtŭm and **stātŭm** (prae *before,* sto *stand*), *stand before, excel;* **sē praestārĕ,** *to show one's self.*

prae-sŭm, essĕ, fuī (prae *over,* sum *be*), *be over, rule over, be in command of.*

praetĕr, prep. w. acc. (prae *before* and suffix **ter**), *past, by; besides, except.*

praeter-eo, īrĕ, iī, ĭtŭm (praeter *by,* eo *go*), *go by.* PRETERIT.

praeter-quăm, adv., *except.*

praetŏr, praetōrĭs, m., *praetor,* a Roman magistrate, next in rank to a consul and elected annually.

prātŭm, ī, n., *meadow.*

prĕcī, prĕcĕm, prĕcĕ [nom. and gen. sing. not used], pl., **prĕcēs, prĕcŭm,** etc., *request, prayer.*

prĕmo, prĕmĕrĕ, pressī, pres-

sŭm, PRESS, *press upon.* OP-PRESSION.

prĕtĭŭm, ī, n., *worth, value, price.* AP-PRECIATE.

prīdĭē, adv., *on the day before.*

prīmo, adv. (primus), *at first.*

prīmŭm, adv. (primus), *at first;* quăm prīmŭm, *as soon as possible.*

prīmŭs, ă, ŭm [see *85*], *first;* prīmŭm (agmĕn), *the van of an army.* PRIME, PRIMAL, PRIMARY.

princeps, gen. princĭpĭs, adj. (primus *first,* capio *take*), *first, chief;* princeps, ĭpĭs, m., *chief, leader.* PRINCE, PRINCIPAL.

princĭpātŭs, ūs, m. (princeps *chief*), *first place; pre-eminence;* princĭpātum tenēre, *to be at the head.*

prĭŏr, prius [superl. prīmŭs, see *85*], *the former; first.*

Priscus, ī, m., *a surname of the elder Tarquin.*

pristīnŭs, ă, ŭm, *former;* PRISTINE.

priusquăm, adv., *before.*

prīvātim, adv. (privus *single*), *as a private citizen.*

prīvātŭs, ă, ŭm (part. of privo *deprive*), PRIVATE.

prŏ, prep. w. abl., *before, for, instead of.*

prŏbo, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm (probus *good*), *show;* PROVE. PROBATION.

Prŏcās, ae, m. See Silvius.

prō-cēdo, cēdĕrĕ, cessī, cessŭm (pro *forward,* cedo *go*), *go forth,* PROCEED, *advance.* PROCESSION.

prŏcŭl, adv. (procello *drive forward*), *afar off, far.*

prō-cūro, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm (pro *for,* curo *care*), *care for, take care of, manage.* PROCURE.

prōdĭgĭŭm, ī, n. (pro *beforehand,* root dic *point out*), PRODIGY.

proelĭŭm, ī, n., *battle.*

prŏfectio, ōnĭs, f. (proficiscor *set out*), *departure.*

prō-fĭciscor, fĭciscī, fectŭs sŭm (pro *forwards,* facio *put one's self*), *set out, depart; go, march, travel.*

prō-fŭgĭo, fŭgĕrĕ, fūgī, fŭgĭtŭm (pro *before,* fugio *flee*), *flee before, flee.*

prō-hĭbeo, hĭbērĕ, hĭbuī, hĭbĭtŭm (pro *in front,* habeo *hold*), *restrain, prevent, keep from;* PROHIBIT. PROHIBITION.

prō-jĭcio, jĭcĕrĕ, jēcī, jectŭm (pro *forward,* jacio *throw*), *throw forward, cast away;* se prō-jĭcĕrĕ, *to throw one's self forward* or *down.* PROJECT.

prō-mŏveo, mŏvērĕ, mōvī, mōtŭm (pro *forward,* moveo *move*), *move forward, advance.* PROMOTION.

prŏpĕ, prŏpĭŭs, proxĭmē, adv., *near, almost.*

prŏpĕro, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm (prŏpĕrus *speedy*), *hasten.*

prŏpinquŭs, ī, m. (prope *not far,* hinc *hence*), *relative;* prŏpin-

quă, ae, f., *kinswoman.* PRO-
PINQUITY.

prŏpĭŏr, prŏpĭŭs [superl. proxĭ-
mŭs, see *85*], *nearer.*

prō-pōno, pōnĕrĕ, pŏsuĭ, pŏsĭ-
tŭm (prŏ *before,* pono *place*),
expose to view; PROPOSE. PRO-
POSAL, PROPOSITION.

proptĕr, prep. w. acc., *on account
of.*

proptĕr-ĕā, adv., *for this reason.*

protĕreā quŏd, *because.*

prō-spĭcĭo, spĭcĕrĕ, spexĭ,
spectŭm (pro *forwards,* spe-
cio *look*), *look forwards; look
out for.* PROSPECT, PROSPEC-
TIVE.

prō-sŭm, prōd-essĕ, prō-fuĭ
(pro(d) *for,* sum *be*), *be for,
be useful; benefit, profit.*

prōvincĭă, ae, f., *province.*

proxĭmē, adv. [positive prŏpĕ,
compar. prŏpĭŭs], *very near,
very recently, last.*

proxĭmŭs, ă, ŭm [see *85*], *next,
nearest; ensuing, last.* PROX-
IMITY, APPROXIMATE.

publĭcē, adv. (publicus fr. po-
pŭlus *people*), *in the name of
the state.*

Publĭŭs, ī, m., a Roman name.

pŭdŏr, pŭdōrĭs, m. (pudeo *feel
shame*), *shame, feeling of shame.*

puellă, ae, f., *girl.*

pŭĕr, pŭĕrī, m., *boy.* PUER-ILE.

pŭĕrĭtia, ae, f. (puer *boy*), *boy-
hood, childhood.*

pugnă, ae, f., *battle.* PUGNA-
CIOUS.

pugno, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm, *fight.*

pulchĕr, pulchră, pulchrŭm
(polio *polish*), *beautiful.*

pūnio, īrĕ, īvī, ītŭm (poena
punishment), PUNISH.

pūpillus, ĭ, m. (pupŭlus *a little
boy*), PUPIL, *ward.*

pŭto, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm, *think, be-
lieve.*

Pȳrēnaeŭs, ă, ŭm, *Pyrenean;*
Pȳrēnaeī montes, *the Pyrenees.*

Q.

quā, adv. (qui) *where.*

quădrāgēsĭmŭs, ă, ŭm (quadra-
ginta *forty*), *fortieth.*

quădrāgintā, num. adj. indecl.
(quattuor *four*), *forty.*

quaero, quaerĕrĕ, quaesīvī and
quaesiī, quaesītŭm, *see, ask,*
IN-QUIRE. IN-QUEST, IN-QUI-
SITION.

quālĭs, quālĕ, *of what sort; as.*

quăm, conj. and adv., *than; as.*

quăm-ob-rĕm, adv., *on account
of which thing; for which rea-
son; wherefore.*

quam-quăm, conj., *although.*

quamvĭs, conj. (quam *as,* vis
you will), *as you will; however
much; although.*

quantŭs, ă, ŭm, *how much; how
great; as;* quantum boni,
how much good.

quārē, adv. (abl. of quae and
res), *for which thing, for which.*

quartŭs, ă, ŭm (quattuor *four*),
fourth. QUART.

quattuŏr, num. adj. indecl., *four.*

quĕ, conj., *and* [see LN. XXIII., VY., 1].

quĕror, quĕrī, questŭs sŭm, *complain.* QUERULOUS.

quī, quae, quŏd, rel. pron., *who, which, what; that* [see *114*].

quī, quae, quŏd [interrog. pronoun used adjectively, see *116*], *which? what? what sort of a? what kind of a?*

quĭd, *why?* [see LN. XCII., NOTE 1].

quīdăm, quaedăm, quoddăm or **quiddăm**; gen. **cujusdăm**; [indef. pron. declined like **qui**], *a certain.*

quĭdĕm, adv., *indeed;* **ne — quĭdem**, *not — even.*

quĭn, conj. (qui *by which*, ne *not*), *but that, that not.*

quindĕcĭm, num. adj. indecl. (quinque *five*, decem *ten*), *fifteen.*

quingentī, ae, ă (quinque *five*, centum *hundred*), *five hundred.*

quīnī, ae, ă (quinque *five*), *five each.*

quĭs, quae, quĭd, interrog. pron., *who? what?* [see *116*].

quĭs, indef. pronoun, *anybody, anything* [see *116*].

quisquăm, quaequăm, quidquăm or **quicquăm**; gen. **cujusquăm**; [indef. pron. declined like **quis**], *any one, anything, any.*

quŏ, adv., *that, in order that.*

quŏd, conj., *because, that.*

quŏmŏdŏ, adv. (qui *what*, modus *manner*), *in what manner, by what means, how.*

quŏquĕ, conj., *also.*

quŏtĭdĭē, adv. (quot *every*, dies *day*), *every day, daily.*

quŭm and **cŭm**, rel. adv., *when, as;* conj., *since; although;* **quŭm — tŭm**, *both — and.*

R.

rădix, rādīcĭs, f., *root;* **radix** or **radices montis**, *the foot of a mountain.* RADISH.

răpīnă, ae, f. (rapio *seize*), *plundering;* RAPINE.

răpio, răpĕrĕ, răpuī, raptŭm, *seize, plunder.* RAPTURE.

raptŏr, ōrĭs, m. (rapio *seize*), *one who seizes; robber.*

Raurăcī, ōrŭm, m., *a people in Northeastern Gaul, neighbors of the Helvetii.*

rĕcens, gen. **rĕcentĭs**, RECENT, *fresh, new.*

rĕ-cĭpio, cĭpĕrĕ, cēpī, ceptŭm (re *back*, capio *take*), *take back;* RECEIVE; **se recipĕre**, *to betake one's self, withdraw.* RECEPTION.

red-do, dĕrĕ, dĭdī, dĭtŭm (re(d) *back again*, do *give*), *return.* RENDER, RENDITION.

rĕd-eo, īrĕ, iī, ĭtŭm (re(d) *back*, eo *go*), *go back, return.*

rĕd-ĭmo, ĭmĕrĕ, ēmī, emptŭm (re(d) *back*, emo *buy*), *buy back, release, ransom; purchase; hire,*

farm. REDEEM, REDEMP-
TION.

rĕdĭtio, ōnĭs, f. (redeo *go back*),
going back, return.

rĕ-dūco, dūcĕrĕ, duxī, ductŭm
(re *back*, duco *lead*), *lead back,
lead.* REDUCE, REDUCTION.

rĕ-fĕro, ferrĕ, tŭlī, lātŭm (re
back, fero *bear*), *bear or bring
back, restore.* REFER, RE-
LATE.

re-fluo, fluĕrĕ, no perf. nor sup.
(re *back*, fluo *flow*), *flow back.*
REFLUENT, REFLUX.

rĕgio, ōnĭs, f., REGION.

rĕgiŭs, ă, ŭm (rex *king*), *royal.*

regno, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm (regnum
rule), *reign, rule.*

regnŭm, ī, (rego *to rule*), *royal
power, sovereignty; government;
kingdom.*

rĕ-jĭcio, jĭcĕrĕ, jēcī, jectŭm (re
back, jacio *throw*), *throw back,
hurl back.* REJECT, REJEC-
TION.

rĕlĭgio, ōnĭs, f., RELIGION, *sanc-
tity.*

rĕ-linquo, linquĕrĕ, līquī, lic-
tŭm (re *behind*, linquo *leave*),
*leave behind, leave; quit, aban-
don.* RELINQUISH.

rĕlĭquŭs, ă, ŭm (relinquo *let re-
main*), *remaining, rest of.*

rĕ-mǎneo, mǎnērĕ, mansī,
mansŭm (re *behind*, maneo
stay), *stay behind*, REMAIN.

rĕmĭniscor, rĕmĭniscī, *recall to
mind, recollect.* REMINISCENCE.

rĕ-mǒveo, mǒvērĕ, mōvī, mō-

tŭm (re *back*, moveo *move*),
REMOVE. REMOTE.

Rĕmŭs, ī, m., twin brother of
Romulus.

rĕ-nuncio, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm (re
back, nuncio *bring word*), *re-
port.* RENOUNCE.

rĕpentĕ, adv. (repens *sudden*),
suddenly.

rĕ-pĕrio, pĕrīrĕ, pĕrī, pertŭm
(re *again*, pario *produce*), *find,
discover.*

rĕ-pōno, pōnĕrĕ, pŏsuī, pŏsĭ-
tŭm (re *again*, pono *place*),
place again, restore. REPOSE.

rēs, rĕī, f., *thing, affair.*

re-scindo, scindĕrĕ, scĭdī, scis-
sŭm (re *away*, scindo *cut*), *cut
away, destroy.* RESCIND.

re-spondeo, spondĕrĕ, spondī,
sponsŭm (re *in return*, spon-
deo *promise*), *reply, answer.*
RESPOND.

responsŭm, ī, n. (respondeo *re-
ply*), *answer.* RESPONSE.

respublĭcă, reīpublĭcae, f. (res
affair, publica *belonging to the
people*), REPUBLIC, *common-
wealth* [see *110*].

re-stĭtuo, stĭtuĕrĕ, stĭtuī, stĭ-
tūtŭm (re *again*, statuo *set
up*), *restore.* RESTITUTION.

rĕ-tĭneo, tĭnērĕ, tĭnuī, tentŭm
(re *back*, teneo *hold*), *hold back,
restrain, prevent.* RETENTION.

rĕvĕrentĭă, ae, f. (revereor *stand
in awe of*), REVERENCE.

rĕ-verto, vertĕrĕ, vertī, ver-
sŭm and

rĕ-vertor, vertī, versŭs sŭm (re *back*, verto *turn*), *turn back*, *return*. REVERT, REVERSION.

rĕ-vŏco, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm (re *back*, voco *call*), *call back*. REVOKE.

rex, rēgĭs, m., *king*. REGAL.

Rhea, ae, f., *Rhea Silvia*, the mother of Romulus and Remus.

Rhēnŭs, ī, m., *the Rhine*.

Rhŏdănŭs, ī, m., *the Rhone*.

rīpă, ae, f., *bank* (of a stream).

rixor, ārī, ātŭs sŭm (rixa *quarrel*), *to quarrel*.

rŏgo, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm, *ask, demand, request*.

Rŏmă, ae, f., *Rome*.

Rōmānŭs, ă, ŭm, *Roman*; Rōmānŭs, ī, m., *a Roman*.

Rŏmŭlŭs, ī, m., the founder and first king of Rome; Romŭlus Silvius, a king of Alba.

rūpes, rūpĭs, f. (rumpo *break*), *rock, cliff.*

S.

Săbīnī, ōrŭm, m., *the Sabines*, an ancient Italian people adjoining the Latins.

săcĕr, sacră, sacrŭm, SACRED; sacră, ōrŭm, n. pl., *sacred rites, sacrifices*.

săcerdōs, ōtĭs, m. and f. (sacer *sacred*, do *give*), *priest; priestess*.

saepĕ, saepiŭs, saepissĭme, adv., *often*.

saepĕ-nŭmĕro, adv., *oftentimes, frequently*.

sălūto, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm (salus *greeting*), *greet*, SALUTE. SALUTATION.

sanguĭs, sanguĭnĭs, m., *blood*. SANGUINE, SANGUINARY.

Santōnēs, ŭm and Santōnī, ōrŭm, m. pl., a people of Aquitania.

săpientiă, ae, f. (sapiens *wise*), *wisdom*.

sarcĭnă, ae, f. (sarcio *to patch*), *bundle*; pl., *baggage* carried by soldiers. See impedimenta.

sătĭs, adv., *enough, sufficiently*; used adjectively in the sense of *sufficient*.

sătis-făcio, făcĕrĕ, fēcī, factŭm (satis *enough*, facio *do*), *do enough*, SATISFY, *give* SATISFACTION.

Sāturniă, ae, f., a town built by Saturn on the Capitoline Hill.

Sāturnŭs, ī, m. (sero *sow*), *Saturn*, the father of Jupiter; honored as the god of agriculture.

scĕlŭs, scĕlĕrĭs, n., *crime, guilt, wickedness*.

scio, scīrĕ, scīvī and sciī, scītŭm, *know, understand*. SCIENCE.

scrībo, scrībĕrĕ, scripsī, scriptŭm, *write*. SCRIBE, DE-SCRIBE, SCRIPT, SCRIPTURE.

scūtŭm, ī, n., *a shield*; [scutum was an oblong *shield*, made of wood, and covered with leather; clipeus, a round brazen *shield*.]

sĕd, conj., *but*.

sēdēs, sēdĭs, f. (sedeo *sit*), *seat*;

dwelling-place; **sedes regni,** *seat of government.*

Sĕgŭsiānī, ōrŭm, m. pl., a people of Gaul, neighbors of the Allobroges and Aedui.

sĕmĕl, adv., *once.*

sempĕr, adv., *always, continually.*

sĕnātŏr, ōrĭs, m. (senex *old*), SENATOR.

sĕnātŭs, ūs, m. (senex *old*), SENATE.

sēnī, ae, ă (sex *six*), *six each.*

sententĭă, ae, f. (sentio *think*), *opinion.* SENTENCE.

septĕm, num. adj. indecl., *seven.*

septentriōnēs (septemtriōnēs), ŭm, m. pl., *the north;* **sub septentrionĭbus,** *towards the north.*

septĭmŭs, ă, ŭm (septem *seven*), *seventh.*

Sēquănă, ae, m., a river of Gaul, *the* modern *Seine.*

Sēquănī, ōrŭm, m. pl., a people of Gaul, dwelling on the Sequana.

Sēquănŭs, ă, ŭm, *of the Sequani.*

sĕquor, sĕquī, sĕcūtŭs sŭm, *follow; accompany.* SEQUENCE.

sermo, sermōnĭs, m., *discourse, conversation.* SERMON.

servĭtus, ūtĭs, f. (servus *slave*), *slavery, bondage.*

Servĭŭs, ī, m., *Servius Tullius,* the sixth king of Rome.

servŭs, ī, m., *slave,* SERVANT.

sex, num. adj. indecl., SIX.

sī, conj., *if; whether; see whether.*

sīc, adv., *so, thus.*

siccŭs, ă, ŭm, *dry;* **siccŭm, ī,** n., *dry land.*

sīc-ŭt and **sīc-ŭtī,** adv., *as; as if.*

signĭfĭco, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm (signum *sign,* facio *make*), *mean,* SIGNIFY. SIGNIFICANT.

signŭm, ī, n., SIGN, *mark;* SIGNAL.

sĭlvă, ae, f., *woods, forest.* SILVAN.

Silvĭă, ae, f., *Rhea Silvia,* the mother of Romulus and Remus.

Silvĭŭs, ī, m., name of several kings of Alba; **Silvius Procas,** a king of Alba and father of Numitor and Amulius.

sĭmĭlĭs, sĭmĭlĕ, *like,* SIMILAR.

sĭn, conj. (si *if,* ne *not*), *but if.*

sīnĕ, prep. w. abl., *without.*

singŭlī, ae, ă, SINGLE, *one by one; each.*

sĭnistĕr, sĭnistră, sĭnistrŭm, *left.* SINISTER.

sŏcĕr, sŏcĕrī, m., *father-in-law.*

sŏcĭŭs, ī, m., *ally.* AS-SOCI-ATE.

sōl, sōlĭs, m., *sun.* SOLAR.

sŏleo, sŏlērĕ, sŏlĭtŭs sŭm, *be wont, be accustomed.*

sōlĭtūdo, ĭnĭs, f. (solus *alone*), *desert; solitary place;* SOLITUDE.

sōlŭm, adv. (solus *alone*), *only, alone.*

sŏlŭm, ī, n., *ground,* SOIL.

sōlŭs, ă, ŭm, *alone, only* [see *24*].

sŏnĭtŭs, ūs, m (sono *make a noise*), *sound, noise.*

sŏnŭs, ĭ, m. (sono *make a noise*), noise.

sŏrŏr, sŏrōrĭs, f., *sister.*

spătĭŭm, ĭ, n., SPACE; *opportunity.*

specto, ārĕ, āvĭ, ātŭm (specio *look*), *look at, behold, see; face, front, be situated.*

spēs, spĕĭ, f. *hope, expectation.*

spīrĭtŭs, ūs, m. (spiro *breathe*), *breath; pride; lofty airs.*

spontĕ, f. abl. [gen. spontĭs; no other cases found], *of free will*; suā sponte, *of his own free will.* SPONTANEOUS.

stătuo, stătuĕrĕ, stătuī, stătūtŭm (status *standing*), *set up; put; establish; decide.* STATUTE.

stĕrĭlĭs, ĕ, *unfruitful*, STERILE.

stīpendĭŭm, ĭ, n. (stips *contribution*, pendo *pay*), *tax, tribute.* STIPEND.

sto, stārĕ, stĕtī, stătŭm, *stand;* nobis sanguĭne stat, *it costs us blood.* STATE, STATION.

stŏlĭdŭs, ă, ŭm, *foolish.* STOLID.

strēnuŭs, ă, ŭm, *bold, brave.* STRENUOUS.

stŭdeo, stŭdērĕ, stŭduī, no sup., *be eager* or *zealous, desire.*

stŭdĭum, ĭ, n. (studeo *be eager*), *zeal, desire.* STUDY.

suādeo, suādērĕ, suāsī, suāsŭm, *advise*, PER-SUADE.

sŭb, prep. w. abl., *under, beneath; in the time of;* sub monte, *at the foot of a mountain.*

sub-dūco dūcĕrĕ, duxī, ductŭm (sub *from under*, duco *draw*), *draw from under; withdraw; take away.*

sub-eo, īrĕ, īvī and ĭī, ĭtŭm (sub *under*, eo *go*), *go under; endure.*

sŭbĭto, adv. (subĭtus *sudden*), *suddenly, quickly.*

sub-lĕvo, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm (sub *from beneath*, levo *lift up*), *raise up, support; help, aid.*

sub-rīdeo, rīdērĕ, rīsī, rīsŭm (sub *a little*, rideo *laugh*), *smile.*

sub-sĭlio, sĭlĭrĕ, sĭluī and sĭlĭī, no sup. (sub *up*, salio *leap*), *leap up, jump.*

sub-vĕho, vĕhĕrĕ, vexī, vectŭm (sub *from below*, veho *carry*), *bring up, transport.*

suc-cēdo, cēdĕrĕ, cessī, cessŭm (sub *behind*, cedo *come*). SUCCEED, *follow.* SUCCESSION.

Suēvī, ōrŭm, m. pl., *a powerful people of Germany.*

suī, *of himself, herself, itself, themselves* [see *112*]. SUICIDE. See caedo.

Sullă, ae, m., *Lucius Cornelius Sulla*, a celebrated Roman.

sŭm, essĕ, fuī, *be* [see *62*].

summă, ae, f. (summus *highest*), *amount, sum total.* SUM.

summŭs, ă, ŭm, *highest* [positive supĕrus, comparative superior, superlative suprēmus and summus].

sūmo, sūmĕrĕ, sumpsī, sumptŭm, *take*, AS-SUME. AS-SUMPTION.

sŭpĕr, prep. w. acc. and abl., *over, above, upon.* SUPER-.

sŭperbĭo, īrĕ, no perf. nor sup. (superbus *proud*), *be proud of.*

sŭperbŭs, ă, ŭm, *proud;* Superbŭs, ī, m., *the Proud,* a surname of the younger Tarquin, the last king of Rome.

sŭpĕrĭŏr, sŭpĕrĭŭs, *upper, higher; former.* SUPERIOR. See supĕrus.

sŭpĕrŭs, ă, ŭm [comp. superior, superl. suprēmus or summus] (super *over, above*), *above, on high, upper.*

sŭpĕro, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm (super *over*), *surmount, surpass, overcome, subdue.*

sŭper-sŭm, essĕ, fuī (super *over, beyond;* sum *be*), *be over; survive.*

supplĭcĭum, ī, n., *punishment.*

sus-cĭpĭo, cĭpĕrĕ, cēpī, ceptŭm (sub *under,* capio *take*), *undertake, take upon; engage in; receive;* sibi suscipĕre, *to take upon one's self.*

suspĭcĭo, ōnĭs, f. (suspĭcor *suspect*), SUSPICION.

suspĭcor, ārī, ātŭs sŭm (suspicio fr. sub *secretly,* specio *look at*), SUSPECT.

sus-tĭneo, tĭnērĕ, tĭnuī, tentŭm (sub *up,* teneo *hold*), *hold up,* SUSTAIN; *endure; withstand.*

suŭs, ă, ŭm (sui), *his, his own; her, her own; its, its own; their, their own.*

T.

T., abbreviation of *Titus,* a Roman praenomen.

tăbŭlă, ae, f., *board; writing-table; muster-roll.* TABLE.

tălentŭm, ī, n., *a* TALENT, a sum of money equal to about $1200.

tăm, adv., *so, so very.*

tămĕn, adv., *nevertheless; yet, still.*

tamquăm and tanquăm, adv. (tam *so,* quam *as*), *as much as; as if.*

Tănăquīl, īlĭs, f., wife of Tarquinius Priscus.

tandĕm, adv., *at length; at last.*

tantŭs, ă, ŭm, *so great, such, so large.*

tardĭtās, ātĭs, f. (tardus *slow*), *slowness,* TARDINESS; *heaviness.*

Tarpēiă, ae, f., *Tarpeia* [pronounced *Tar-pĕ-ya*], daughter of Spurius Tarpeius.

Tarpēiŭs, ă, ŭm, *Tarpeian* [pronounced *Tar-pĕ-yan*]; mons Tarpēius, *the Tarpeian Rock,* the name of a rock on the Capitoline hill from which criminals were thrown headlong; *the Tarpeian Mount.*

Tarquĭnĭī, ōrŭm, m. pl., an ancient town of Etruria.

Tarquĭnĭŭs, ī, m., *Tarquin,* the name of an illustrious Roman family, of which two, Priscus and Superbus, were kings.

tectŭm, I, n. (tego *to cover*), *roof.*

tēlŭm, I, n., *weapon, missile.*

tempĕro, āre, āvī, ātŭm (tempus *a piece cut off*), *abstain.* TEMPER, TEMPERATE.

tempestās, ātIs, f. (tempus *time*), *storm;* TEMPEST.

templŭm, I, n., TEMPLE.

tempŭs, tempŏrIs, n., *time.* TEMPORAL.

tĕneo, tĕnērĕ, tĕnuī, tentŭm, *hold; have, possess; keep; restrain;* mĕmŏriā tĕnērĕ, *to remember.*

tĕnĕr, tĕnĕrā, tĕnĕrŭm, TENDER, *delicate.*

tento, ārĕ āvī, ātŭm, *try.* TENTATIVE.

terră, ae, f., *earth, land, ground.* TERRACE.

terreo, ērĕ, uI, ItŭM, *frighten,* TERRI-FY.

terrIto, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm (terreo *frighten*), *terrify.*

terrItōriŭm, I, n. (terra *earth*), TERRITORY.

tertio, adv. (tertius *third*), *the third time.*

testIs, testIs, m. and f., *witness.* TESTIFY.

TI., abbreviation of *Tiberius*, a Roman praenomen.

TĭbĕrIs, Is [acc. Im, abl. I], m., *the Tiber*, a river in Italy on which Rome is situated.

TĭbĕrIŭs, I, m. See TI.

tImeo, ērĕ, uI, no supine, *to fear.*

tImIdŭs, ă, ŭm, (timeo *to fear*), TIMID ; *cowardly.*

tImŏr, tImŏrIs, m., *fear.* TIMOROUS.

tintinnābŭlŭm, I, n. (tintinno *to ring*), *bell.*

TītŭS, I, m. See T.

tollo, tollĕrĕ, sustŭlI, sublātŭm, *lift, raise; pick up; remove, take away; destroy.*

tŏnitrŭs, ūs, m., and tŏnitrŭ, n. indecl. (tono *to thunder*), *thunder.*

tŏno, tŏnārĕ, tŏnuī, tŏnItŭm, *thunder.*

tōtŭs, ă, ŭm, *whole, entire.*

trā-dūco and trans-dūco, dūcĕrĕ, duxī, ductŭm (trans *across*, duco *lead*), *lead across; lead from one place to another.* TRADUCE.

trans, prep. w. acc., *across, over; beyond.* TRANS-.

trans-eo, Irĕ, iI, Itŭm (trans *across, over;* eo *go*), *go across or over; cross.* TRANSIT, TRANSITIVE, TRANSIENT, TRANSITION.

trans-fĕro, ferrĕ, tŭlI, lātŭm (trans *across*, fero *bear*), *bear across;* TRANSFER. TRANSLATION.

trans-Igo, Igĕrĕ, ēgI, actŭm (trans *through to the end*, ago *bring*), *bring to an end; spend.* TRANSACT, TRANSACTION.

tran-sIlio or trans-sIlio, sIlIrĕ, sIlīvī, sIliI, or sIluI, sultŭm (trans *over*, salio *leap*), *leap over.*

trans-porto, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm
(trans *across*, porto *carry*),
carry across, TRANSPORT.
TRANSPORTATION.

trēs, triă [see *108*], *three.*

Trēvīrī, ōrŭm, m. pl., a people
of Northern Gaul.

trĭbūnŭs, ī, m. (tribus *tribe*),
TRIBUNE; trĭbūnī mīlĭtŭm,
military tribunes, of which offi-
cers each legion had six.

trĭbuo, trĭbuĕrĕ, trĭbuī, trĭbū-
tŭm, *give, grant, bestow.* TRIB-
UTE, CON-TRIBUTE, CON-TRI-
BUTION.

trĭcēsĭmŭs, ă, ŭm (triginta *thir-
ty*), *thirtieth.*

trĭduŭm, ī, n. (tres *three*, dies
day), *three days.*

trĭgĕmĭnī, ōrŭm, m. pl. (tres
three gignor *be born*), *three
brothers* born at a birth.

trĭgintā, num. adj. indecl., *thirty.*

tristĭs, tristĕ, *sad, sorrowful.*

triumpho, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm (tri-
umphus *a triumph*), *to triumph.*

Trōjă, ae, f., *Troy*, a city in the
northwestern part of Asia Mi-
nor.

Trōjānŭs, ă, ŭm, *Trojan.*

tū, pers. pron., *thou, you* [see *112*].

tŭbă, ae, f. (akin to tubus, *a
tube*), *trumpet.*

tŭbĭcĕn, ĭnĭs, m. (tuba *trumpet*,
cano *to sound*), *trumpeter.*

Tulingī, ōrŭm, m. pl., a people
of Southern Germany, neigh-
bors of the Helvetii.

Tulliŭs, ī, m. See **Servius.**

Tulliă, ae, f., daughter of Servius
Tullius, and wife of Tarquinius
Superbus.

Tullŭs, ī, m., *Tullus Hostilius*, the
third king of Rome.

tŭm, adv., *then; also.*

tŭmŭlŭs, ī, m. (tumeo *swell*),
mound.

turrĭs, turrĭs, f., *tower.* TUR-
RET.

tūtŏr, ōrĭs, m. (tueor *protect*),
guardian; TUTOR.

tūtŭs, ă, ŭm (tueor *protect*),
safe.

tuŭs, ă, ŭm, poss. pron. (tu *thou,
you*), *thy, thine; your, yours.*

tўrannŭs, ī, m., *monarch; tyrant.*

U.

ūbĕr, ūbĕrĭs, n , *udder; teat.*

ŭbĭ, adv., *when, where.*

ulciscor, ulciscī, ultŭs sŭm,
take revenge; avenge.

ullŭs, ă, ŭm, *any* [see *24*].

ultĕrĭŏr, ultĕrĭŭs (ulter *that is
beyond*), *farther* [see *85*]. UL-
TERIOR.

ultrā, prep. w. acc., *beyond.*
ULTRA-.

ūnā, adv. (unus *one and the
same*), *at the same time; in
company, together.*

undĕ, adv., *from which place,
whence.*

undĭque, adv. (undĕ, qŭe),
from all parts; on all sides.

ūnŭs, ă, ŭm, *one, single; one and
the same;* pl., *alone* [see *24*].

urbs, urbĭs, f., *city.* SUB-URBS.

ūsŭs, ūs, m. (utor *use*), USE; *advantage.*

usquĕ, adv., *even; till.*

ŭt and ŭtī, conj., *that, in order that; as.*

ŭtĕr, utră, utrŭm, *which of two, which* [see **24**].

ŭterquĕ, ŭtrăquĕ, ŭtrumquĕ; gen. utrīusquĕ, etc. [declined like ŭtĕr, see **24**], *each, both.*

ūtĭlĭs, ūtĭlĕ (utor *use*, suffix ĭlĭs denoting *capability*), *useful, beneficial, profitable.*

ūtor, ūtī, ūsŭs sŭm, USE, *make use of; adopt.*

utrŭm, adv. (uter *which of two*), *whether.*

ūvă, ae, f., *a grape; a bunch of grapes.*

uxŏr, uxŏrĭs, f., *wife.*

V.

văco, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm, *be unoccupied.* VACATE, VACANT, VACATION.

vădŭm, ī, n. (vado *go*), *ford, shallow.*

văgītŭs, ūs, m. (vagio *cry, squall*), *crying, squalling.*

văgor, ārī, ātŭs sŭm (vagus *roaming about*), *roam about, wander about.* VAGA-BOND.

văleo, ērĕ, uī, ĭtŭm, PRE-VAIL.

vallŭm, ī, n. (vallus the line of *palisades, stakes*, set about an intrenchment), *rampart, intrenchment.*

vasto, ārĕ, āvī, ātŭm (vastus *empty, desolate*), *lay waste,* DE-VASTATE.

vectīgăl, vectīgālĭs, n. (veho *carry*), *toll paid for carrying goods into a country; tax; revenue.*

vĕhĕmentĕr, vĕhĕmentiŭs, vĕhĕmentissĭmē, adv. (vehĕmens *violent*), *violently, severely; furiously;* VEHEMENTLY.

vĕl, conj., *or;* vĕl — vĕl, *either — or.*

vendo, vendĕrĕ, vendĭdī, vendĭtŭm (venum *sale*, do *give*), *sell.* VEND.

vĕnio, vĕnīrĕ, vēnī, ventŭm, *come; arrive at.*

verbĕr, ĕrĭs, n., *blow.* RE-VER-BER-ATE.

verbŭm, ī, n., *word.* VERB, VERBAL.

vĕreor, vĕrērī, vĕrĭtŭs sŭm, *fear.*

vērō, adv. (verus *true*), *in truth, truly; indeed; but.*

vescor, vescī, *fill one's self with; live upon; eat.*

Vĕsontio, ōnĭs, f., the chief town of the Sequăni.

vespĕr, vespĕrĭs and vesper, ī, m., *evening star; evening;* ad vespĕrŭm, *till evening.* VESPER, VESPERS.

Vestă, ae, f., *Vesta*, the goddess of the hearth, to whom a perpetual fire was kept burning.

Vestālĭs, ĕ, *of* or *belonging to Vesta, Vestal.*

vestĕr, vestră, vestrŭm, poss. pron., *your, yours.*

vĕtŭs, gen. vĕtĕrĭs, *old, long standing, ancient.* VETERAN, IN-VETER-ATE.

vexillŭm, ĭ, n. (velum *sail), standard; flag.*

vexo, ārĕ, āvĭ, ātŭm (veho *carry), trouble, annoy, harass.* VEX, VEXATION, VEXATIOUS.

viă, ae, f., *way, road; path; march.*

vīcēsĭmŭs, ă, ŭm (viginti *twenty), twentieth.*

victor, ōris, m., *conqueror.*

victōriă, ae, f., VICTORY.

vīcŭs, ĭ, m., *village*

vĭdeo, vĭdērĕ, vīdĭ, vīsŭm, *see.*

vĭdeor, vĭdērĭ, vīsŭs sŭm, pass. and deponent, *be seen; seem; seem good* or *proper.*

vĭgĭliă, ae, f. (vigĭlo *to watch), watch;* de tertia vigilia, *in the third watch.* See LN. LV., NOTE 5.

vīgintĭ, num. adj. indecl., *twenty.*

vinco, vincĕrĕ, vīcĭ, victŭm, *conquer.*

vincŭlŭm, ĭ, n. (vincio *bind), a chain;* in vincŭla conjicĕre, *to throw into prison.*

vindĭco, ārĕ, āvĭ, ātŭm, *claim.* VINDICATE, VINDICATION.

vĭr, vĭrĭ, m., *man; hero; husband.* See LN. XXV., NOTE 1.

virgŏ, ĭnĭs, f. (vireo *flourish, bloom),* VIRGIN.

virtūs, virtūtĭs, f. (vir *man, hero), valor, courage;* VIRTUE.

vīs, vīs, [acc. vĭm, dat. and abl. vī; pl., vīrēs, vīriŭm, vīrĭbŭs, etc.] f., *strength, power.*

vītă, ae, f. (vivo *live), life.* VITAL.

vītĭs, ĭs, f., *vine.*

vīto, ārĕ, āvĭ, ātŭm, *shun, avoid.*

vix, adv., *with difficulty; scarcely, hardly.*

vŏco, ārĕ, āvĭ, ātŭm, *call, summon, invite.* VOCATION, VOCATIVE.

vŏlo, vellĕ, vŏluĭ, *be* WILLING; *wish; desire* [see *125*].

vŏluntās, ātĭs, f. (volo *to wish), wish, consent.* VOLUNTARY.

vos, pers. pron. pl., *you* [see *112*].

vox, vōcĭs, f., VOICE. VOCAL.

vulnĕro, ārĕ, āvĭ, ātŭm (vulnus *wound), to wound.*

vulnŭs, vulnĕrĭs, *a wound.* VULNER-ABLE.

vulpes, ĭs, f., *fox.*

II. English-Latin.

The words given in this Vocabulary are more fully described in the preceding.
See that Vocabulary also for the Proper Names.

A.

able, be able, **possum.**
about, w. numerals, **ad, circĭter.**
abundance, **copia.**
accuse, **accūso.**
across, **trans.**
adopt, **utor.**
advancing, **veniens.**
advise, **moneo.**
affair, **res.**
after, prep. **post**; conj. **postquam.**
afterwards, **postea.**
against, **in, contra.**
aid, **auxĭlium**; *to aid,* **juvo.**
all, every, **omnis**; pl. **omnes**; *all, the whole,* **totus.**
ally, **socius.**
almost, **paene, prope.**
alone, **solus.**
also, **etiam.**
although, **quum, etsi.**
ambassador, **legātus.**
among, **apud, inter, in.**
and, **et, atque, que**; *both — and,* **et — et.**
animal, **animal.**
announce, **nuncio.**
any, **quis, ullus.**
anything, **quid, alĭquid (116, a).**
appoint, **creo.**

arms, **arma.**
army, **exercĭtus, agmen.**
around, **circum.**
arrive, **pervenio.**
arrival, **adventus.**
ascertain, **cognosco.**
as soon as, **postquam**; *as soon as possible,* **quam primum.**
ask, **quaero**; *ask for,* **rogo.**
assemble, **convenio.**
assembly, **concilium.**
assist, **adsum.**
at home, **domi.**
attack, **impĕtus**; *to attack,* **oppugno.**
attempt, **conor.**
at Caesar's feet, **Caesari ad pedes.**
auxiliaries, **auxilia.**
avoid, **vito.**
away, take away, **tollo.**

B.

bad, **malus.**
baggage, **impedimenta.**
bank, **ripa.**
battle, **proelium, pugna.**
be, **sum**; *be present,* **adsum**; *be from* or *distant,* **absum.**
beautiful, **pulcher.**

because, **quod, quia.**
become, **fio**; *become master of,* **po-**
   tior.
before, **ante, pro**; **priusquam.**
beg for, **peto.**
beginning, **initium.**
besiege, **oppugno.**
best, **optĭmus.**
betake myself, **me confero, me**
   recipio.
better, **melior.**
between, **inter.**
big, **magnus.**
bold, **audax.**
born, be born, **nascor.**
both, **uterque**; *both — and,* **et — et.**
boy, **puer.**
brave, **fortis.**
bravely, **fortĭter.**
break up (*camp*), **(castra) moveo.**
bridge, **pons.**
bring, **fero**; *bring upon,* **infĕro.**
broad, **latus.**
brother, **frater.**
building, **aedificium.**
burn, **incendo, cremo**; *burn up,*
   exūro, combūro.
but if, **sin.**
buy, **emo.**
by, **a, ab**; *by no means,* **minĭme.**

O.

call, summon, **voco**; *call, name,*
   appello; *call together,* **convŏ-**
   co; *call to mind,* **commemŏro.**
camp, **castra**; *pitch a camp,* **cas-**
   tra pono; *break up camp,* **cas-**
   tra moveo.

can, **possum.**
capture, **expugno.**
carry, carry on, **gero**; *carry on*
   war, **bellum gero**; **bello.**
cart, **carrus.**
cause, **causa.**
cavalry, **equitātus**; *of cavalry,*
   equester.
cavalryman, **eques.**
censure, **accūso.**
character, **natūra.**
chief, **princeps.**
choose, **creo.**
citadel, **arx.**
citizen, **civis.**
city, **urbs.**
cliff, **rupes.**
cold, **frigus.**
collect, **comporto, confĕro, con-**
   dūco.
come, **venio**; *come together,* **con-**
   venio; *come to,* **pervenio.**
comitium, **comitium.**
command, be in command of, **prae-**
   sum.
company, in company, **una.**
complain, **queror.**
conceal, **occulto.**
concerning, **de.**
confidence, **fides.**
congratulate, **gratŭlor.**
conquer, **vinco.**
consent, **voluntas.**
consider, **habeo, duco.**
conspiracy, **conjuratio.**
consul, **consul**; *in the consulship*
   of Caesar, **Caesare consule.**
continually, **continenter.**
corn, **frumentum.**

could, past tense of **possum.**
council. **concilium.**
counsel, **consilium.**
country, fatherland, **patria.**
cowardly, **ignāvus.**
cross, **transeo.**

D.

danger, **perĭcŭlum.**
dangerous, **periculōsus.**
daughter, **filia.**
dawn, at the earliest dawn, **prima luce.**
day, **dies;** *at daybreak,* **prima luce;** *on the day before,* **pridie.**
death, **mors.**
deceive, **decipio.**
decide, **statuo.**
decision, **judicium.**
deep, **altus.**
defend, **defendo.**
delay, **moror.**
deliberate, **delibĕro.**
demand, **postŭlo, posco.**
depart, **discēdo.**
departure, **profectio.**
describe, **designo.**
design, **consilium.**
desire, **studium, cupidĭtas.**
desirous, **cupĭdus.**
destroy, **deleo.**
destruction, **pernicies.**
determine, **judĭco.**
devastate, **vasto.**
die, **morior.**
differ, **diffĕro.**
difficulty, **angustiae;** *with difficulty,* **vix.**

dig, **fodio.**
direction, **pars.**
distance, **spatium.**
distant, be distant, **absum;** *most distant,* **extrēmus.**
distinguished, **nobĭlis.**
disturb, **commoveo.**
ditch, **fossa.**
divulge, **enuncio.**
do, **facio.**
draw, **duco.**
dwell, **incŏlo.**

E.

each, to each other, **inter se.**
easily, **facĭle.**
easy, **facĭlis;** *very easy,* **perfacĭlis**
either — or, **aut — aut.**
elect, **creo.**
embassy, **legatio.**
empire, **imperium.**
empty, **influo.**
encamp, **castra pono; consīdo**
encompass, **contĭneo.**
encourage, **confirmo.**
end, **finis.**
endeavor, **nitor.**
endure, **subeo.**
enemy, **hostis.**
enervate, **effemĭno.**
entire, **totus.**
entreat, **implōro, oro.**
equal, **par, aequus.**
establish, **confirmo.**
even, not even, **ne — quidem.**
excel, **praecēdo, praesto.**
exhort, **hortor.**
expectation, **spes.**

extraordinary, **incredibĭlis.**
eye, **ocŭlus.**

F.

far, by far, **longe**; *very far,* **lon-
gissĭme.**
farther, adj., **ulterior**; adv., **lon-
gius.**
father, **pater.**
father-in-law, **socer.**
fatherland, **patria.**
favor, **faveo.**
fear, **timor**; *to fear,* **timeo, ve-
reor.**
few, **pauci.**
field, **ager.**
fifteen, **quindĕcim.**
fifth, **quintus.**
fight, **pugno.**
find, **reperio.**
fire, **ignis**; *set on fire,* **incendo.**
first, **primus**; *in the first part of
the night,* **prima nocte.**
five, **quinque.**
flight, **fuga.**
flee, **fugio.**
flow, **fluo.**
follow, **sequor.**
fond, **cupĭdus.**
foot, **pes**; *at the foot of the moun-
tain,* **sub monte.**
for, **de** w. abl., **ad** w. acc.; *for
this reason,* **hoc, eo.**
foraging, **pabulatio.**
forest, **silva.**
forget, **obliviscor.**
former, **pristĭnus, vetus.**
forth, lead forth, **edūco.**

fortify, **munio.**
fortune, **fortūna.**
forward, send forward, **praemitto;**
move forward, **promoveo.**
free, **liber**; *of one's own free will,*
sua sponte.
friend, **amīcus.**
friendly, **amīcus.**
friendship, **amicitia.**
from, from near, **a, ab**; *from out
of,* **e, ex.**
furiously, **vehementer.**
furnish, **facio.**
furthermost, **extrēmus.**
future, in the future, **in relĭquum
tempus.**

G.

garrison, **praesidium.**
general, **imperātor.**
generosity, **liberalĭtas.**
get possession of, **potior.**
get rid of, **depōno.**
girl, **puella.**
give, **do**; *give orders,* **impĕro;**
give satisfaction, **satisfacio.**
glory, **gloria.**
go, **eo**; *go forth,* **exeo.**
god, **deus.**
goddess, **dea.**
gone, perf. part. of **exĭgo.**
good, **bonus.**
government, **imperium.**
grandfather, **avus.**
grant, **concēdo.**
great, **magnus**; *so great,* **tantus.**
grievous, **gravis.**
guard, **custos.**

H.

happen, accĭdo, fio.
happy, felix.
harass, vexo.
hasten, matūro, contendo, accurro.
have, habeo.
he says, dicit.
hear, audio.
height, altitūdo.
help, juvo.
hem in, contineo.
high, altus.
highest, summus.
hill, collis.
hindrance, impedimentum.
his, his own, suus.
hither, citerior.
hold, habeo, obtineo, teneo; *hold a conference*, collŏquor.
home, at home, domi; *homeward*, domum; *from home*, domo.
hope, spes.
horse, equus.
hostage, obses.
hour, hora.
house, domus.
hurl, conjicio.
husband, vir.

I.

I, ego.
if, si.
implore, implŏro.
import, importo.
in, into, in.
incite, facio.

influence, auctorĭtas.
influenced, adductus.
inform Caesar, Caesărem certiŏrem facio.
infuse, injicio.
inquire, quaero.
insult, contumelia.
intervene, intersum.
invite, arcesso.

J.

just, justus.

K.

keep, teneo; *keep from*, prohibeo.
kill, caedo, interficio.
kindness, beneficium.
king, rex.
know, scio; *know, find out*, cognosco; *not know*, nescio.

L.

land, terra.
language, lingua.
large, magnus.
late in the day, multo die.
law, lex, jus.
lay waste, vasto.
lead, duco; *lead forth*, edūco.
leader, dux.
leave, relinquo.
left, sinister.
legate, legātus.
legion, legio.
letter, epistŏla.

levy on, **impŏno.**
lieutenant, **legātus.**
like, **simĭlis.**
line of battle, **acies.**
little, **paulus ;** *a little,* **paulo.**
lofty airs, **spirĭtus.**
long, for a long time, **diu ;** *longer,* **diutius.**
look at, **intueor ;** *look out for,* **prospicio.**
love, **amor ;** *to love,* **amo.**

M.

make, **facio ;** *make* or *deliver a speech,* **oratiōnem habeo ;** *make haste,* **matūro ;** *make upon,* **infĕro.**
man, **vir, homo.**
manner, in such a manner, **ita.**
many, **multi.**
march, **iter ;** *to march,* **iter facĕre.**
marriage, **matrimonium ;** *to give in marriage,* **in matrimonium dare.**
master, become master of, **potior.**
means, by no means, **minĭme ;** *by means of,* see **54.**
memory, **memoria.**
mile, **mille passuum.**
mind, **anĭmus, mens.**
misfortune, **incommŏdum.**
missile, **telum.**
month, **mensis.**
more, **magis, amplius ;** *be more willing,* **malo.**
mother, **mater.**
mountain, **mons.**

move, **moveo ;** *move forward,* **promoveo.**
much, **multus.**
multitude, **multitŭdo.**
murder, **caedes ;** *to murder,* **caedo, occīdo.**
my, my own, **meus.**

N.

narrow pass, **angustiae.**
nature, **natūra.**
near, **circum, ad.**
nearest, **proxĭmus.**
nearly, **fere.**
neighbors, **finitĭmi.**
neither — nor, **neque — neque.**
nine, **novem.**
no, none, **nullus.**
nobility, **nobilĭtas.**
noble, **nobĭlis.**
not, **non ;** *not — even,* **ne — quidem.**
none the less, **nihĭlo minus.**
nothing, **nihil.**
notice, **animadverto.**
number, **numĕrus.**

O.

obtain, **obtineo, consĕquor.**
occupy, **occŭpo.**
often, **saepe.**
old, **vetus, natus.**
on, upon, **in.**
on account of, **propter.**
on all sides, **undĭque.**
on the day before, **pridie.**
one, **unus.**

one by one, **singŭli.**

one party — the other, **altĕri — altĕri.**

opinion, **sententia.**

opportunity, **potestas, facultas.**

or, **aut, vel, an.**

order, give orders, **impĕro.**

other, **alius;** *to each other, from each other,* **inter se.**

ought, **oportet, debeo.** See also Ln. LXX.

our, our own, **noster.**

out, set out, **proficiscor;** *out of,* **e, ex.**

overcome. **supĕro.**

own, his own, **suus;** *my own,* **meus;** *your own,* **tuus, vester;** *their own,* **suus.**

P.

pace, **passus.**

part, **pars.**

party, one party — the other, **altĕri — altĕri.**

pass the winter, **hiĕmo.**

peace, **pax.**

people, **popŭlus.**

peril, **pericŭlum.**

persist, **persevēro.**

persuade, **persuadeo.**

pitch a camp, **castra pono.**

place, **locus;** *place, put,* **pono.**

plan, **consilium.**

please, **placeo.**

pledge, **fides.**

poor, **pauper.**

possession, **possessio;** *get possession of,* **potior.**

power, royal power, sovereign power, **regnum.**

practicable, **facĭlis.**

practice, **exercitatio.**

praetor, **praetor.**

prepare, **compăro.**

present, be present, **adsum.**

press, press upon, **premo.**

prevail upon, **permoveo.**

prevent, **retineo.**

price, **pretium.**

private, **privātus.**

proceed, **procēdo.**

promise, **polliceor.**

protection, **praesidium.**

province, **provincia.**

provisions, **commeātus.**

pursue, **persĕquor.**

put off, **confĕro.**

R.

ready, **parātus.**

rear of an army, **agmen novissĭmum.**

reason, **causa.**

recall to mind, **reminiscor.**

recent, **recens.**

refinement, **humanĭtas.**

reign, **regno.**

rejoice, **laetor.**

relief, **subsidium.**

remain, **maneo.**

remaining, **relĭquus.**

remember, **memĭni; memoriā teneo.**

remembrance, **memoria.**

remove, **moveo, removeo.**

reply, **responsum** ; *to reply,* **re-spondeo.**

report, **enuncio.**

resolve, **constituo.**

rest, the rest, **cetĕri** ; *rest of,* **relĭquus.**

restrain, **retineo, prohibeo**

return, **revertor, reverto.**

revenue, **vectīgal.**

reward, **praemium.**

rich, **dives.**

ridge, **jugum.**

right, **dexter.**

ripe, **matūrus.**

river, **flūmen.**

road, **via.**

rout, **pello.**

route, **iter.**

royal power, **regnum.**

ruin, **pernicies.**

S.

sad, **tristis.**

sake, for the sake of, **causā.**

same, the same, **idem.**

satisfaction, give satisfaction, **satisfacio.**

satisfy, **satisfacio.**

say, **dico** ; *he says,* **dicit.**

sea, **mare.**

see, **video.**

seem, **videor** ; *it seems good,* **vidētur.**

seize, **occŭpo.**

select, **delīgo.**

sell, **vendo.**

senator, **senātor.**

send, **mitto** ; *send forward,* **praemitto.**

separate, **divĭdo.**

set on fire, **incendo.**

set out, **proficiscor.**

severely, **gravĭter, vehementer.**

ship, **navis.**

short, **brevis** ; *shortest way* or *route,* **proxĭmum iter.**

show, **probo.**

shun, **vito.**

side, this side of, **citra.**

sides, on all sides, **undĭque.**

sight, **conspectus.**

signal, **signum.**

since, **quum.**

single, **unus.**

sister, **soror.**

skilful, **perĭtus.**

slave, **servus.**

slavery, **servĭtus.**

small, **parvus.**

so, **ita** ; *with adjectives,* **tam** ; *so great,* **tantus.**

soldier, **miles.**

some, some one, **alĭquis.** See *116, a.*

son, **filius** ; *son-in-law,* **gener.**

soon, **matūre.**

sovereignty, sovereign power, **regnum.**

Spain, **Hispania.**

speak, **loquor.**

speech, **oratio** ; *make, deliver a speech,* **oratiōnem habeo.**

stand, **sto.**

state, **civĭtas.**

station, **collŏco, constituo.**

stay, **maneo.**

storm, **expugno.**

strengthen, **confirmo.**

strive, **nitor**.

such, **tantus**.

sufficient, sufficiently, **satis**; *with sufficient ease*, **satis commŏde**.

suitable, **idoneus, commŏdus**.

summer, **aestas**.

summon, **voco, convŏco**.

sunset, **occāsus solis**.

supply, **copia**; *supplies*, **res frumentaria, commeātus**.

surround, **cingo**.

survive, **supersum**.

suspicion, **suspicio**.

swiftly, **celerĭter**.

T.

take, capture, **capio, expugno**; *take away*, **tollo**; *take to one's self*, **sumo**.

tarry, **moror**.

teach, **doceo**.

ten, **decem**.

tend, **pertineo**.

territory, **ager, fines**.

than, **quam**.

that, **ille**.

that, in order that, **ut**; *after verbs of fearing*, **nĕ**.

that not, **nĕ**; *after verbs of fearing*, **ut**.

the same, **idem**.

there, in that place, **ibi**.

their, their own, **suus**.

they, them, see LN. LVIII., NOTE 2.

thing, **res**.

think, **puto, abĭtror**.

third, **tertius**.

this, **hic**.

those, **illi**.

three days, **triduum**.

three hundred, **trecenti**.

through, **per**.

throw one's self, **se projicĕre**.

till evening, **ad vespĕrum**.

time, **tempus**; *for a long time*, **diu**.

to, **ad**.

to-day, **hodie**.

together, come together, **convenio**.

tongue, **lingua**.

top of the mountain, **summus mons**.

towards, **ad**; *towards the north*, **sub septemtrionĭbus**.

tower, **turris**.

town, **oppĭdum**.

trader, **mercātor**.

train up, **instituo**.

tribute, **stipendium**.

troops, **copiae**.

try, **conor**.

twenty, **viginti**.

two days, **biduum**.

U.

under, **sub**.

unoccupied, be unoccupied, **vaco**.

until, **dum**.

unwilling, be unwilling, **nolo**.

upon, **in**.

upper, **superior**.

urge, **hortor**.

use, **utor**; *make use of*, **utor**.

useful, **utĭlis**.

V.

valor, **virtus.**

very, **valde**; *very easy,* **perfacĭlis**; *very great,* **maxĭmus**; *very is often rendered by* **ipse** : *e. g. the very city,* **urbs ipsa.**

vicinity, *in* or *into the vicinity of,* **ad** w. *name of town in* acc.

victory, **victoria.**

W.

wage, **gero.**

wages, **merces.**

wagon, **carrus.**

wait, **exspecto.**

walled town, **oppĭdum.**

wanting, *be wanting,* **desum.**

war, **bellum.**

waste, *lay waste,* **vasto.**

watch, **vigilia**; *in the third watch,* **de tertia vigilia.**

way, **via.**

we, **nos.** See LN. LVII.

wealthy, **copiōsus.**

weapon, **telum.**

weep, **fleo**; *weeping,* **flens.**

what? **quid?**

what sort of a? **qui?** See LN. LX.

when, **quum.**

where, **ubi.**

whether, **utrum**

which, **quod.**

while, **dum.**

who, **qui**; *who?* **quis?**

whole, **totus.**

why? **quid?**

wide, **latus.**

willing, *be willing,* **volo.**

win, **concilio.**

wing *of an army,* **cornu.**

winter, *pass the winter,* **hiěmo.**

winter-quarters, **hiberna.**

wish, **volo.**

with, **cum.**

withdraw, **se recipěre.**

without, **sine.**

withstand, **sustineo.**

witness, **testis.**

woman, **mulier.**

word, **verbum.**

worthy, **dignus.**

wound, **vulnus**; *to wound,* **vulněro.**

write, **scribo.**

wrong, **injuria.**

Y.

year, **annus.**

yet, **tamen.**

yoke, **jugum.**

you, **tu, vos.** See LN. LVII.

your, **tuus, vester.**

youth, **adolescens.**

EDUCATIONAL PUBLICATIONS

OF

S. C. GRIGGS & CO., CHICAGO.

———◆———

MAILING PRICE.

———◆———

BOISE — FIRST LESSONS IN GREEK. A new edition.
Revised by J. G. PATTENGILL. Adapted to Goodwin's, and to Hadley-Allen's
Grammar, and intended as an Introduction to Xenophon's Anabasis. $1.25.

BOISE — FIRST THREE BOOKS OF HOMER'S ILIAD.
With Explanatory Notes, and References to the Grammars of Goodwin, Hadley, and
Hadley-Allen. By JAMES R. BOISE, Ph.D., LL.D. 12mo. Cloth. $1.00.

BOISE — FIRST SIX BOOKS OF HOMER'S ILIAD. With
Explanatory Notes, and References to the Grammars of Goodwin, Hadley, and
Hadley Allen. Revised Edition. By J. R. BOISE, Ph.D., LL.D. 12mo. Cloth.
$1.50.

BOISE—EXERCISES IN GREEK SYNTAX. Being Exercises
in some of the more difficult Principles of Greek Syntax; with References to the
Grammars of Crosby, Curtius, Goodwin, Hadley, Hadley-Allen, and Kühner. A
Sequel to " Jones's Greek Prose Composition." By J. R. BOISE, Ph.D. $1.25.

**BOISE AND FREEMAN — SELECTIONS FROM VARI-
OUS GREEK AUTHORS.** For the First Year in College. With Explanatory
Notes, and References to Goodwin's Greek Grammar and to Hadley's Larger and
Smaller Grammars. By J. R. BOISE, Ph.D., LL.D., and J. C. FREEMAN, M.A.
12mo. Cloth $2.00.

**CHITTENDEN — ELEMENTS OF ENGLISH COMPOSI-
TION.** A Preparation for Rhetoric. By LUCY A. CHITTENDEN. 12mo. Cloth.
60 cents.

   " Progressive, suggestive, and thoroughly practical." — *Prof. E. E. Smith, Purdue
University, Ind.*
   " After thorough trial in the class I unhesitatingly commend it." — *F. S. Hotaling,
Prin. High School, Framingham, Mass.*
   " As an elementary book, I know no work equal to it." — *A. Martin, LL.D.,
Pres. of De Pauw University, Ind.*
   " It ought to be used in every high school." — *A. V. Jewett, Supt. of Schools,
Abilene, Kan.*
   " Between 600 and 700 copies will be required for immediate use." — *E. A. Paul,
Prin. of High School, Washington, D.C.*

CROSS — ECLECTIC SHORT-HAND. Writing by Principles
instead of Arbitrary Signs, for General Use and Verbatim Reporting. By J. GEO.
CROSS, A.M. Complete in one volume. 12mo. Cloth. $2.00.

D'OOGE — DEMOSTHENES ON THE CROWN. With Ex-
tracts from the Oration of Æschines against Ctesiphon, and Explanatory Notes. By
M. L. D'OOGE, Ph.D. Professor of Greek, University of Michigan. Cloth. $1.50.

**JONES — EXERCISES IN GREEK PROSE COMPOSI-
TION.** With References to the Grammars of Hadley and Allen, Goodwin, and
Kühner and Taylor, and a full English-Greek vocabulary. By ELISHA JONES, M.A.,
Professor in the University of Michigan. 12mo. Half leather. $1.00.

JONES — FIRST LESSONS IN LATIN. Adapted to the Latin
Grammars of Allen and Greenough, Andrews and Stoddard, Bartholomew, Bullions
and Morris, Chase, Gildersleeve, and Harkness. By ELISHA JONES, M.A. 12mo
Half leather. $1.25.

JONES — EXERCISES IN LATIN PROSE COMPOSITION.
With References to the Grammars of Allen and Greenough, Andrews and Stoddard,
Bartholomew, Bullions and Morris, Gildersleeve, and Harkness. By ELISHA JONES.
M.A. $1.00.

MORRIS — MANUAL OF CLASSICAL LITERATURE.
Comprising biographical and critical notices of principal Greek and Roman authors,
illustrative extracts from their works, etc. By CHARLES MORRIS. 12mo. Cloth.
$1.50.

**PETERSON — NORWEGIAN-DANISH GRAMMAR AND
READER.** With a Vocabulary designed for American Students of the Norwegian-
Danish language. By Rev. C. I. P. PETERSON, Professor of Scandinavian Literature.
12mo. Cloth. $1.25.

STEVENS — SELECT ORATIONS OF LYSIAS. With Intro-
ductions and Explanatory Notes. By W. A. STEVENS, A. M. 12mo. Cloth. $1.25.

WELSH — ESSENTIALS OF GEOMETRY. By A. H. WELSH,
Professor in Ohio State University. 8vo. Cloth. $1.50.

**WELSH — DEVELOPMENT OF ENGLISH LITERATURE
AND LANGUAGE.** By Prof. A. H. WELSH. University Edition. Complete
in 1 vol., unabridged. Crown 8vo. Cloth. $3.00.

" It is a work greatly needed. In plan and execution it seems to me all that could
be asked for." — *John G. Whittier.*

" Welsh' 'English Literature' is unsurpassed for usefulness." — *J. Ernest Whit-
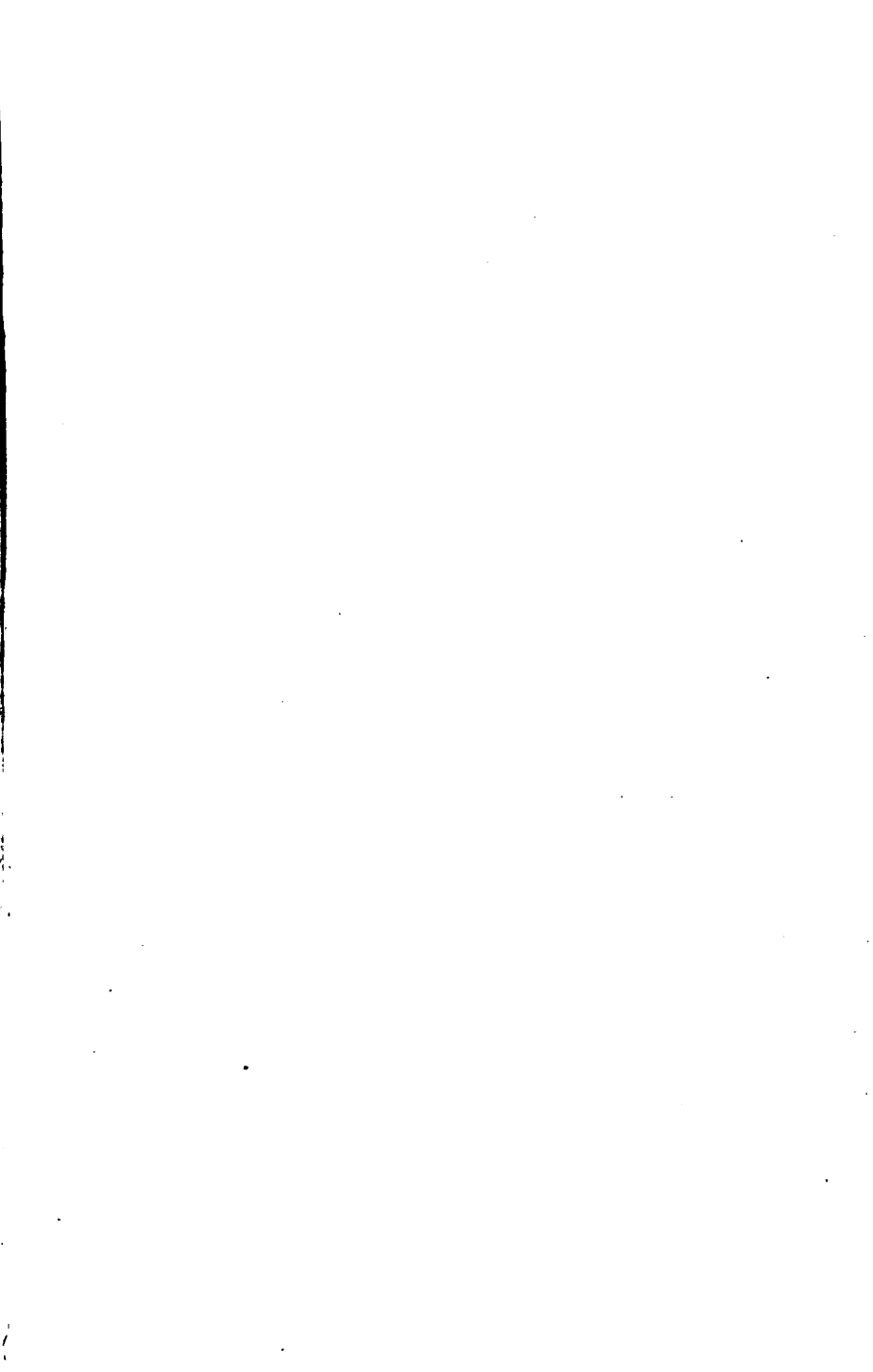ney, Instructor in English in Yale College.*

**WINCHELL — GEOLOGICAL EXCURSIONS; or, The Rudi-
ments** of Geology for Young Learners. By ALEXANDER WINCHELL, LL. D., Profes-
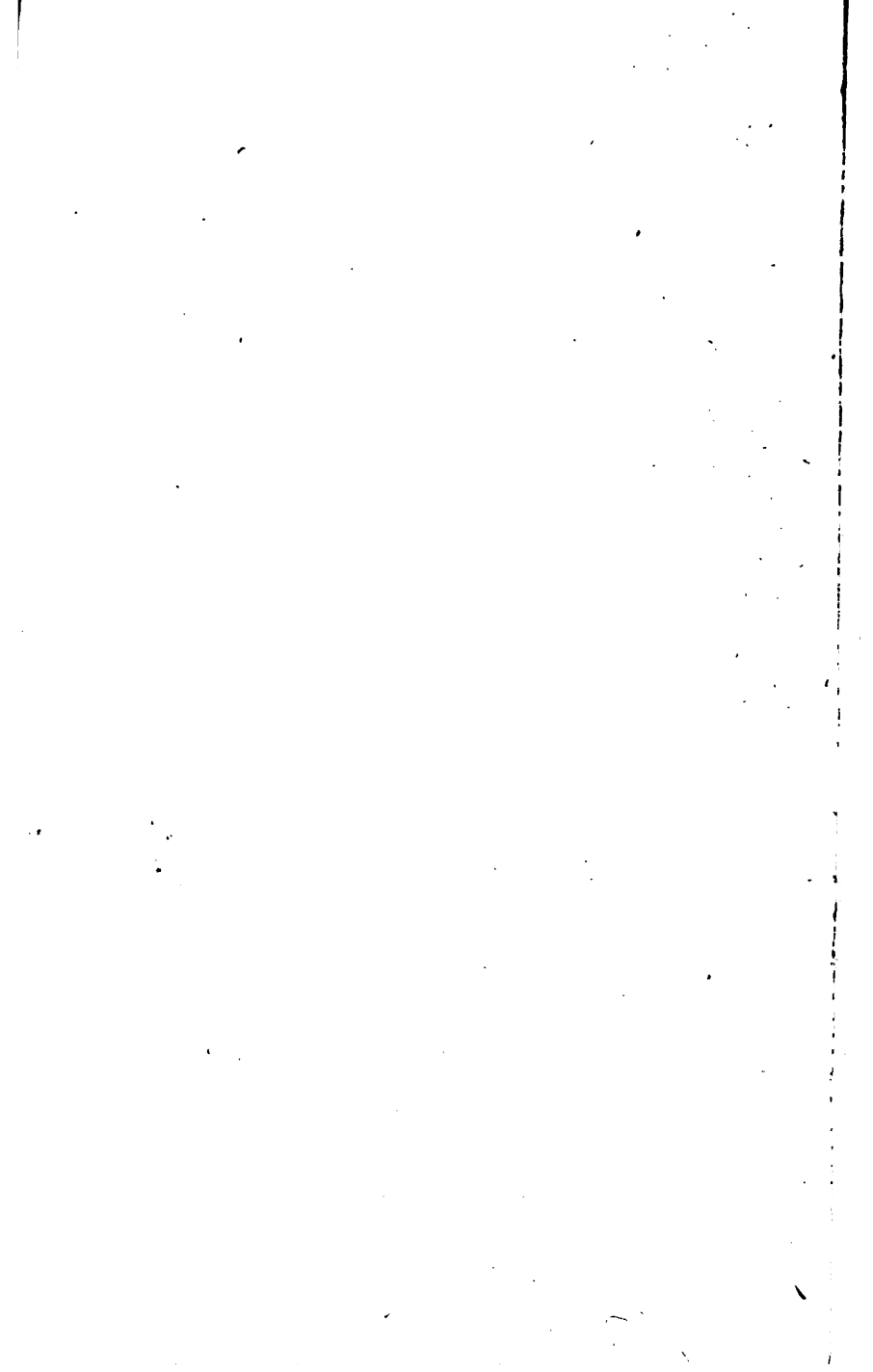sor of Geology, etc., University of Michigan. Illustrated. 12mo. Cloth. $1.25.

**WINCHELL — GEOLOGICAL STUDIES; or, Elements of Ge-
ology** for High Schools, Colleges, Normal and other Schools. By ALEXANDER
WINCHELL, LL.D. One vol. 12mo. 540 pages, with 367 fine illustrations. $3.00.

" It abounds with most excellent points and valuable information, and seems an
American book beyond any other I have seen." — *Prof. A. P. Kelsey, Hamilton
College, N. Y.*

" I find it full of admirable suggestions in the way of conducting instruction, and of
presenting the topics of geology to a class." — *H. S. Williams, Prof. of Nat. Sci.,
Cornell University.*

───────◆───────

*Descriptive Circulars sent on application. Books will be mailed, postage
paid, on receipt of price.*